

# New Hello!

## ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors



GUIDE



طبعة  
جديدة  
طبعة المصنف تحديثات  
كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٥

2<sup>nd</sup>  
Prep.  
2025  
FIRST TERM

**A Listening (4 Marks)**

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (4 Marks)**

Students listen to a text from (30 – 35) words. Topics should be related to the Set Books. Students listen and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(One mark each)**

**B Language Functions (2.5 Marks)**

**2 Complete the following dialogue : (2.5 Marks)**

A dialogue of **TEN (10)** exchanges with **FIVE (5)** deletions (3 responses & 2 stimuli) is provided. Students are asked to complete the deletions completely without providing them with any guidance. The situation should be provided and clear. The first sentence is given in full.

**(Half a mark each)**

**C Reading Comprehension (4.5 Marks)**

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions : (4.5 Marks)**

An unseen text of about **ONE HUNDRED and TWENTY-FIVE (125)** words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, a timetable or a letter. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. Students are required to answer **THREE (3)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each **(Half a mark each)** and **THREE (3)** open-ended questions **(One mark each)**.

These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills :

- Giving the main idea (1 question)
- Extracting information (2 questions)
- Understanding reference (1 question)
- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context (1 question)
- Critical thinking skill (1 question)

**D Vocabulary & Structure (7 Marks)**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (5 Marks)**

**TEN (10)** multiple-choice items (7 vocabulary & 3 structures) based on the Set Books are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. **(Half a mark each)**

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

(2 Marks)

**FOUR (4)** structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given word(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs ... etc. related to what students have studied. **(Half a mark each)**

**E Writing (6 Marks)**

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on ... :**

(6 Marks)

Students are asked to write a paragraph from **EIGHTY-FIVE (85) to NINETY-FIVE (95)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books.

**(One mark for organization-One mark for relevance of ideas - One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)**

**OR**

**Write an email of about NINETY (90) words on ... :**

(6 Marks)

Students are asked to write an email from **EIGHTY-FIVE (85) to NINETY-FIVE (95)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books. Students must write who the email is to and from, as well as the subject of the e-mail. Names and addresses are provided.

**(One mark for organization-One mark for relevance of ideas. One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)**

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثاني الإعدادي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٤/٢٠٢٥ First Term

Months	New Hello! English for Preparatory Schools Year Two (SB+WB)
October	Unit 1 + Unit 2
November	Unit 3 + Review A + Unit 4
December	Unit 5 + Unit 6
January 2025	Review B + General Revision

# Contents

## Module 1: Meeting people

Unit 1	Coming home	11
Unit 2	How are you feeling ?	65
Unit 3	Great jobs	121
Review A		176

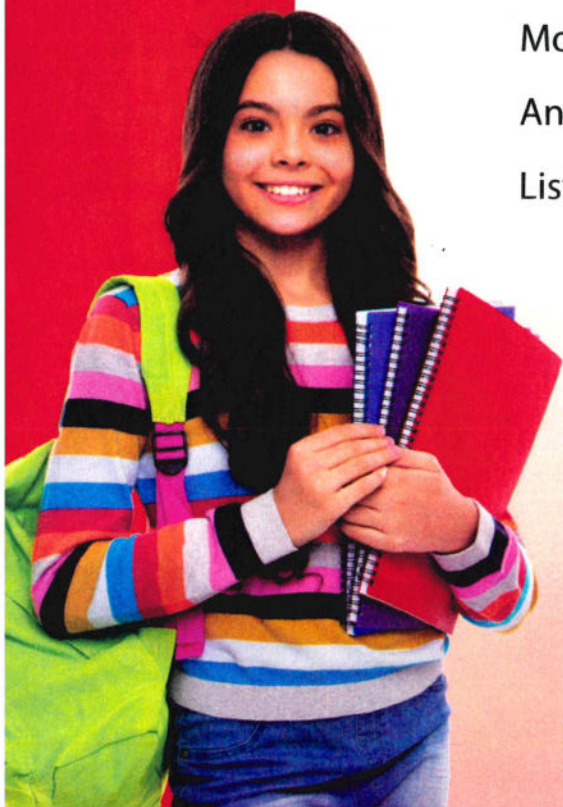
## Module 2: Different places

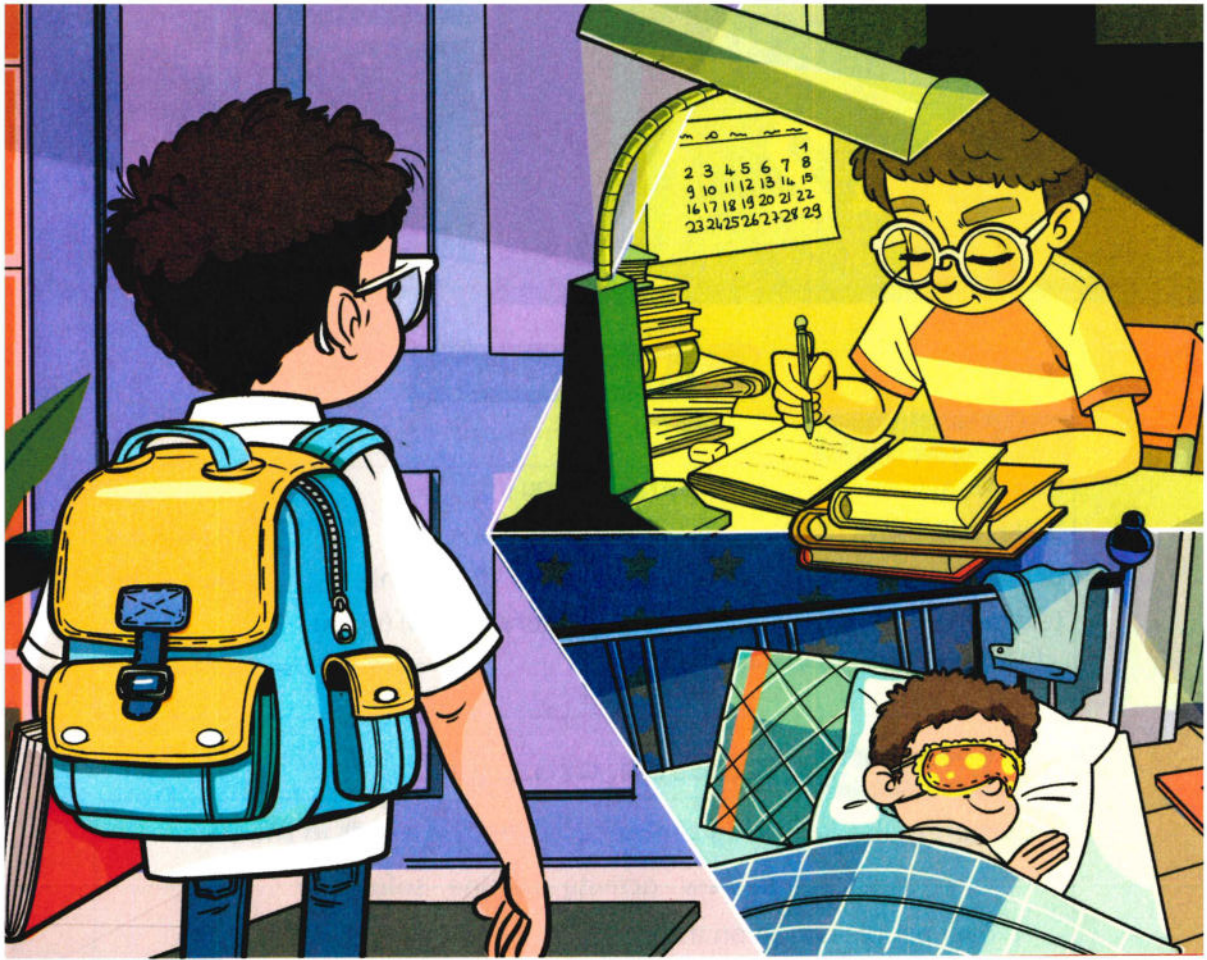
Unit 4	Into the past	179
Unit 5	Helping you, helping me	234
Unit 6	Different environments	286
Review B		336

Monthly assessments 339

Answers of Topics 345

Listening Texts 349





# UNIT ONE

## Coming home

SB pages 2 : 11

WB pages 72:78

### Unit Objectives :

- **Reading :**  
A text about daily routines; a blog about routines; a website article about children in India; The Railway Children
- **Writing :**  
A text message; an email to a penfriend
- **Listening :**  
A description of a bedroom
- **Speaking :**  
Discussing daily routines; describing bedrooms and furniture
- **Language :**  
Present simple questions
- **Life Skills :**  
Self-management
- **Values :**  
Coexistence values
- **Issues :**  
Citizenship



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

routine (n)	روتين [عمل متكرر]	way (n)	طريق
daily (adj), (adv)	يومي - بشكل يومي	sofa (n)	كنبة [أريكة]
activity (n)	نشاط	block of flats (n)	عمارة سكنية
text (ed) (v), (n)	يرسل رسالة نصية [لشخص على هاتفه المحمول] - رسالة نصية	interview (ed) (v), (n)	يحاوِر [شخص] - حوار - مقابلة شخصية



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

interview - activity - routine - sofa

- Four people can sit on this .....
- Ali is having a/an ..... for the job of the engineer.
- Going to school is a daily ..... for me.

### Lesson 1

SB pages 2 & 3 WB page 72

best friend	أفضل صديق	person (n)	شخص
guess (ed) (v)	يخمن / يتوقع	lesson (n)	درس / حصة
school day (n)	يوم دراسي	weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
prefer (red) (v)	يفضل	school work (n)	العمل الدراسي / الواجب المدرسي
baker's = bakery (n)	مخبز	partner (n)	شريك
cook (ed) (v), (n)	يطبخ - طبّاخ	country (n)	دولة / بلد

### Lesson 2

SB pages 4 & 5 WB page 73

blog (n)	مدونة [على الأنترنت]	computer games (n)	ألعاب الحاسوب
everyone (pron)	كل واحد / شخص	fun (n)	متعة

school subjects (n)	مواد دراسية	interests (n)	اهتمامات
break (n)	راحة / فسحة	somewhere (adv)	مكان ما
topic (n)	موضوع	sleeping (n)	النوم
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	chess (n)	لعبة الشطرنج

### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
read يقرأ	read	read
come يأتي	came	come
leave يغادر / يرحل	left	left
spend يقضي [وقت]	spent	spent

### Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>block of flats</b>	a tall building with more than one floor with flats for people to live in عمارة سكنية
<b>interview</b>	a formal meeting in which someone asks you questions about yourself and your life مقابلة شخصية
<b>routine</b>	your usual way of doing things, especially when you do them in a fixed order at the same time روتين [عمل متكرر]

### Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

<b>have</b>	breakfast / lunch / dinner يتناول وجبة [الإفطار / الغداء / العشاء]	<b>read</b>	on the sofa يقراً وهو جالس على الأريكة
	a routine لديه نظام يومي ثابت	<b>play</b>	chess يلعب لعبة الشطرنج
	coffee يشرب مشروب قهوة		computer games يلعب ألعاب الحاسوب
<b>text</b>	fun يستمتع	<b>take</b>	the bus يستقل الأتوبيس
	friends يرسل رسائل نصية لأصدقائه على الهاتف المحمول	<b>spend</b>	time يقضي وقتاً
<b>get</b>	up يستيقظ		money ينفق مالاً
	to school يصل للمدرسة		

## UNIT ONE

<b>do</b>	activities	يؤدي أنشطة	<b>make</b>	breakfast	تعد وجبة الإفطار
	homework	يقوم بأداء الواجب المنزلي		dinner	تعد وجبة العشاء
	the same things	يقوم بنفس الأشياء			
	exercise	يتدرب			
	sports	يمارس الرياضة			

### Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات		
Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
late متأخر	–	early مبكر
the same as مطابق	identical	different to / from مختلف عن
leave يغادر	move – exit	stay يبقى - يقيم
start يبدأ	begin	finish ينهى
important هام	necessary – vital	unimportant غير هام

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة ونهاية		
Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
–ly	يكون الصفة والظرف من الاسم	daily يومي / يوميًا



### Exercise

#### on Vocabulary Study

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Ahmed and Alaa are exactly the same. This means that they are .....  
a. different      b. identical      c. important      d. lazy
- Adel didn't come to work early. He came .....  
a. later      b. lately      c. late      d. latter
- It's necessary to clean your teeth every day. This means it's .....  
a. unimportant      b. important      c. happy      d. terrible
- The antonym of "begin" is ".....".  
a. finish      b. state      c. study      d. start
- I go to school every day. This means I go to school .....  
a. daily      b. monthly      c. yearly      d. weekly



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 routine - habit - custom

#### \* routine

روتين يومي (عمل متكرر)

- My daily **routine** is the same every school day.

(SB page 2)

#### \* habit

عادة (شخصية)

- Skipping breakfast is a bad **habit**.

#### \* custom

عُرف - عادة (مجتمعية)

- It's the **custom** for bride to wear a white dress in wedding.

### 2 home لاحظ أن كلمة (home) بعد هذه الأفعال (come - get - leave) لا يأتي قبلها حرف جر

- What time do students **come home** from school in that country? (SB page 2)

- They **get home** late. (SB page 3)

- My dad **leaves home** before we get up. (SB page 4)

### 3 on - in - by

#### \* on

يستخدم قبل أيام الأسبوع والتواريخ

- **On Saturdays**, I always get up at 11 o'clock.

(SB page 3)

- I was born **on 7<sup>th</sup> December, 2000**.

#### \* by

يستخدم قبل وسائل المواصلات

- I go to school **by bus** with my friend, Dina.

(SB page 2)

#### \* in

يستخدم قبل بعض فترات اليوم

- **In the evening**, I do my homework, read on the sofa, watch TV and text my friends.

(SB page 2)

### 4 help

يساعد

#### \* help + مفعول + (to + inf.) / (inf.)

- - I often **help** mum make dinner.

= I often **help** mum to make dinner.

(SB page 2)

### Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
go to bed	يذهب للنوم	study hard for	يذاكر بجد لأجل
listen to music	يستمتع إلى الموسيقى	at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
on her way to	في طريقها إلى	on holiday	في إجازة
on the right	على اليمين	come home from	يأتي إلى المنزل من
That's why	لهذا السبب	help....with	يساعد....في



## Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

### Lesson (1) SB page 2

1. Mariam's **daily routine**<sup>(1)</sup> is the same every school day!
2. She always gets up at 6 : 30 in the morning.
3. Mum makes her breakfast.
4. She goes to school by bus with her friends.
5. They sometimes listen to music.
6. Mariam's parents work at the hospital.
7. They **get home**<sup>(2)</sup> late.
8. She often helps to make dinner.
9. In the evening, she does her homework, reads on the **sofa**<sup>(3)</sup>, watches TV and **texts her friends**<sup>(4)</sup>.
10. After that, she goes to bed.

### Lesson (2) SB page 4

1. Today's **interview**<sup>(5)</sup> is with my best friend Sherifa and her family.
2. There are five people in Sherifa's family.
3. Sherifa usually gets up at 6 : 30.
4. She helps her mum make breakfast.
5. Her father starts work early.
6. He doesn't have breakfast with them.
7. He eats when he gets to work.
8. Sherifa walks to school with her brothers.
9. Sherifa likes studying and her **favourite**<sup>(6)</sup> subject is English.
10. In the evening, Sherifa **listens to**<sup>(7)</sup> music.
11. She sometimes plays **chess**<sup>(8)</sup>.

(1) يوفين يومى	(2) يصل للمنزل	(3) كنية	(4) ترسل رسائل نصية لاصديقاتها (على الهاتف)
(5) مقابلة شخصية - حوار	(6) مفطر	(7) يستمع الى	(8) الشطرنج

### تنويه :

الجميل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:  
 \* An interview with your friend \* A typical day

\* Your daily routine \* Helping at home \* Your daily life

## II

## Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening



## Reading

## Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الفهم  
ونصوص الاستماع

## • on Lesson 1 SB page 2

I'm Mariam. My daily routine is the same every school day! I always get up at 6.30 in the morning. My mum always **makes my breakfast** <sup>(1)</sup>. I go to school by bus with my friend, Dina. Sometimes we **listen to music** <sup>(2)</sup>. My parents work at the hospital. They **get home** <sup>(3)</sup> late, so I often help to make dinner. In the evening, I do my homework, **read on the sofa** <sup>(4)</sup>, watch TV and **text my friends** <sup>(5)</sup>. Then I **go to bed** <sup>(6)</sup>!



**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

## Extracting information

استخراج معلومات

## Learn

1. How does Mariam go to school ?

- She goes to school by bus.

## Practise

2. Does Mariam do the same thing every school day ? .....

(1) تعد / تصنع إفطاري

(2) يستمع إلى الموسيقى

(3) يصل المنزل

(4) يقرأ جالساً على الأريكة

(5) أرسل رسائل نصية لأصدقائي

(على الهاتف)

(6) يذهب للنوم

## • on Lesson 1 SB page 3

Mariam doesn't get up at 7 am. She gets up at 6.30. Mariam doesn't make breakfast. Her mum always makes it. Her parents don't work at a school. They work at a hospital. They don't get home early. They get home late.

## • on Lesson 2 SB page 4

## My best friend's family

Hi everyone. Today's interview is with my best friend Sherifa and her family. Here's a photo of <sup>(1)</sup> us. Sherifa's **on the right** <sup>(2)</sup>! How many people are in your family, Sherifa ? There are five people : me, Mum, Dad and my two brothers.



(1) صورة لـ (2) على اليمين

## UNIT ONE

### When do you get up ?

I usually get up at 6.30 and help Mum make breakfast. My brothers help, too. My dad starts work very early, so he **leaves home**<sup>(3)</sup> before we get up. That's why he doesn't have breakfast with us. He eats when he **gets to work**<sup>(4)</sup>. I walk to school with my brothers.

### Do you like to study ?

Yes, I do. My favourite subject is English.

### What do you do in the evening ?

I listen to music every day. My dad and I sometimes **play chess**<sup>(5)</sup>. My brothers always watch TV and my mum usually reads.

(3) يغادر المنزل

(4) يصل إلى العمل

(5) يلعب شطرنج



## Exercise

## on Vocabulary

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### ► Key vocabulary

- Many people in the city live in a ..... of flats.  
a. house      b. black      c. block      d. chest
- Come and sit on this comfortable ..... : four people can sit on it.  
a. armchair      b. cupboard      c. sofa      d. chair
- I always ..... my friends. I don't phone them.  
a. text      b. mix      c. fix      d. try
- Hassan has a/an ..... today with the manager for the new job.  
a. routine      b. class      c. interview      d. way

#### SB , WB & Previous Exams

- SB** My mum always ..... my breakfast.  
a. makes      b. gives      c. does      d. deletes
- WB** She doesn't like football. She ..... tennis.  
a. buys      b. spends      c. prefers      d. goes
- Drawing and writing short stories are my favourite .....  
a. sports      b. subjects      c. interests      d. messages  
(Qalyoubia - West Shubra 2024)
- Can you ..... my mother for me because my phone isn't working ?  
(Alexandria - El - Montazah 2023)  
a. text      b. send      c. speak      d. talk
- " ..... " is the opposite of the word "end".  
a. Continue      b. Get      c. Spend      d. Begin  
(Beheira - Shoubrakeit 2023)

10. My daily ..... is the same every school day. (Fayoum - Itsa 2022)  
 a. root      b. routine      c. sofa      d. carpet

### El-Moasser Exercises

11. Al Akhbar is a ..... newspaper. We can buy it every day.  
 a. weekly      b. yearly      c. monthly      d. daily
12. .... much time with my family is my best hobby.  
 a. Guessing      b. Spending      c. Texting      d. Helping

### Definitions

13. .... is the fixed and usual way of doing things.  
 a. Protein      b. Weekend      c. Routine      d. Interview
14. A/An ..... is a formal meeting in which someone asks you questions about yourself and your life.  
 a. activity      b. interview      c. review      d. view

### Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. He couldn't finish his work. .... he looks worried.  
 a. By      b. That's why      c. Because      d. When
16. What sports does he like to ..... regularly بانتظام ؟  
 a. make      b. give      c. do      d. put

## 2. Speaking

### مهارة التحدث

#### 1. Discussing daily routine.

١. مناقشة الروتين اليومي

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. Do you have the same routine every day of the week ? ١. هل لديك نفس الروتين كل يوم في الأسبوع ؟	- Yes, I do. - نعم لدى نفس الروتين.
2. What do you do when you get up ? ٢. ما الذي تفعله عندما تستيقظ ؟	- I always make breakfast. - أنا دائماً أعد وجبة الإفطار.
3. What do you often do on your way to school ? ٣. ماذا تفعل غالباً وأنت في طريقك إلى المدرسة ؟	- I often listen to music. - استمع غالباً إلى الموسيقى.
4. What do you do in the evenings ? ٤. ماذا تفعل في أوقات المساء ؟	- I usually text my friends. - عادة ما أرسل رسائل نصية لأصدقائي على هواتفهم المحمولة.
5. What do you usually do at the weekend ? ٥. ماذا تفعل عادة في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	- Sometimes I go to my friend's flat and we play computer games. - أحياناً أذهب إلى شقة صديقي ونلعب ألعاب الحاسوب.

## UNIT ONE

### 2. Talking about the family.

٢. الحديث عن العائلة

#### Questions



1. Do you have any brothers or sisters ? هل لديك أي أخوة أو أخوات ؟
2. How many people are there in your family ? كم عدد الأشخاص في عائلتك ؟

#### Answers



- Yes, I do. I have two brothers. - نعم. لدى أخوين.
- There are 5 people : me, my dad, my mum and two brothers. - هناك خمسة أشخاص : أنا وأبي وأمي وأخوين.

### III

## Language

### Remember تذكر

#### 1. Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار



#### Usage الاستخدام

١. تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار فعل ما :  
**ex.** - I **always** do my homework before I have my dinner.
٢. تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي وبعد (verb to be) :  
**ex.** - My cousins **sometimes** text me.  
- We **are never** late for school.
٣. تستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار في بداية الجملة :  
**ex.** - **Sometimes**, we go to the club on Sundays.

٤. تستخدم ظروف التكرار للإجابة على سؤال مبدوء بـ (How often) بمعنى كم مرة ... ؟

How often + [do / does] + subj. الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ؟

ex. - How often do you walk to school ?

\* I **never** walk to school.

- How often does he do his homework in the evening ?

\* He **always** does his homework in the evening.

## 2. The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

### Formation التكوين

1

#### Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة

I / You / We / They / + inf.  
فاعل جمع المصدر

ex. - We **usually play** tennis on Friday.

He / She / It / + inf. + s/es/ies  
فاعل مفرد المصدر

ex. - Rodina **sometimes listens** to the radio.

• لاحظ أن :

١. يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).

ex. - Marwa usually **plays** tennis on Fridays.

٢. يضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهياً بـ (ss , ch , sh , o , x) :

ex. - My brother often **watches** TV after lunch.

٣. يضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهياً بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y) :

ex. - Amal always **studies** hard for her exams.

2

#### Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المنفية

I / You / We / They / + don't + inf.  
اسم جمع المصدر

ex. - I **don't get up** early on Fridays.

He / She / It / + doesn't + inf.  
فاعل مفرد المصدر

ex. - She **doesn't walk** to school.

• لاحظ أن :

- ◀ حرف (s) يحذف من الفعل عند النفي بـ (doesn't) مع المفرد الغائب.  
**ex.** - He **doesn't** play football every Thursday.  
 ◀ (never) تستخدم في النفي مع عدم حذف (s) مع المفرد الغائب.  
**ex.** - The bus **never** stops near my house.

(أ) السؤال بـ "هل" : (A) Yes / No question :

3  
 Interrogative  
 صيغة  
 الاستفهام

Do + I / we / you / they / + inf. ... ?  
 فاعل جمع المصدر

**ex.** - Do you **speak** English ?  
 \* Yes, I **do**. \* No, I **don't**.

Does + he / she / it / + inf. ... ?  
 فاعل مفرد غائب المصدر

**ex.** - Does she **cook** well ?  
 \* Yes, she **does**. \* No, she **doesn't**.

• لاحظ أن : حذف حرف (s) من الفعل عند السؤال بـ (Does):

(ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام : (B) Wh-question :

Question word + do + I / we / you / they + inf. ... ?  
 كلمة الاستفهام does he / she / it المصدر

**ex.** - What **do** you study ? - Where **does** she go ?

3. Making questions تكوين الأسئلة

1. Yes / No questions : أولًا : الأسئلة التي يجاب عليها بـ Yes أو No :

"V. to Be" (am - is - are - was - were)

"V. to Have" (have - has - had)

"V. to Do" (do - does - did)

Will, Can .... etc. الخ

+ subject + verb + ..... ?  
 + الفاعل + الفعل

ويمكن أن يجاب عن هذا النوع من الأسئلة باستخدام الصيغة المختصرة وهي الضمير والفعل المساعد فقط.

**ex.** - **Do** you have any brothers or sisters ? - Yes, I **do**. - No, I **don't**.  
 - **Does** Mariam do the same routine every school day ?  
 \* Yes, she **does**. \* No, she **doesn't**.

• **لاحظ أن :** يمكن استخدام (V. to Be) كفعل رئيسي في السؤال دون أن يتبعه فعل آخر.

ex. - Are you happy about the result of the match ?

\* Yes, I am.

\* No, I am not.

## 2. Wh-questions : ثانيًا : الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام :

Question word	+	v. to be	+	subject	+	verb	+	..... ?
كلمة الاستفهام	+	v. to have	+	الفاعل	+	الفعل	+	..... ?
		v. to do						
		will, can .... etc.		الخ				

### Question words كلمات الاستفهام

Whose ...?	ملك من ... ؟	How many ...?	كم للعدد ... ؟
When ...?	متى ... ؟	How high ...?	كم للإرتفاع ... ؟
What ...?	ما - ماذا ... ؟	How deep ...?	كم للعمق ... ؟
Who ...?	من (العاقل) ... ؟	How wide ...?	كم للعرض / الاتساع ... ؟
Whom ...?	من (للمفعول العاقل) ... ؟	How far ...?	كم للبعد ... ؟
Why ...?	لماذا ... ؟	How tall ...?	كم للطول ... ؟
Where ...?	أين ... ؟	How heavy ...?	كم للوزن ... ؟
Which ...?	أيهما ... ؟	How long ...?	كم للمدة / للطول ... ؟
How ...?	كيف ... ؟	How old ...?	كم للعمر ... ؟
How much ...?	كم للثمن / للكمية ... ؟	How fast ...?	كم للسرعة ... ؟
How often ...?	كم مرة ... ؟	Who ... with ?	مع من ... ؟

• **لاحظ الآتي :-** عندما لا يوجد فعل مساعد في الجملة نستخدم :

(s)	do	→	إذا كان الفعل في المضارع البسيط بدون	I, we	تحويل	→	you
(s)	does	→	إذا كان الفعل في المضارع البسيط وينتهي بـ	my, our	تحويل	→	your
(ies)	(es)	أو		I am	تحويل	→	are you
	did	→	إذا كان الفعل في الماضي البسيط مع كل الضمائر.	I was	تحويل	→	were you



## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### SB , WB & Previous Exams

- SB** On Saturdays, I always ..... up at 11 o'clock.  
a. gets                      b. get                      c. getting                      d. am getting
- SB** Mariam often ..... TV in bed.  
a. watch                      b. watches                      c. watching                      d. is watching
- WB** I ..... my homework before I have my dinner.  
a. usually do                      b. do usually                      c. usually does                      d. does usually
- WB** ..... you live in a block of flats, or somewhere else ?  
a. Does                      b. Are                      c. Do                      d. Have
- The sun ..... in the east. *(Fayoum – Itsa 2024)*  
a. rise                      b. rises                      c. rose                      d. is rising
- He ..... a sports car. *(Cairo - West Cairo 2023)*  
a. don't drive                      b. drives never                      c. never drives                      d. aren't driving
- How often do you ..... dinner ? - Once a week. *(Cairo - New Cairo 2022)*  
a. made                      b. makes                      c. making                      d. make

#### El-Moasser Exercises

- ..... ready for the exam ? - Yes, I am.  
a. Are we                      b. Do you                      c. Are they                      d. Are you
- She ..... speaks English well. She needs more practice  
a. don't                      b. doesn't                      c. never                      d. didn't
- How ..... do you go to school ? - Five times a week.  
a. many                      b. much                      c. often                      d. long

### 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

#### SB , WB & Previous Exams

- SB** My dad and I ..... (play sometimes) chess. *(Beni Suef - Beba 2022)*
- WB** Hamdi ..... (not drink) coffee for breakfast.
- ..... (Never) tell the truth. *(Behira - Damanhour 2024)*
- WB** What ..... (you do) to have fun ?
- Ali never ..... (come) late to school. *(Ismailia 2023)*

#### El-Moasser Exercises

- A :** ..... (When) does Youssef go to school ? - **B :** By bus.
- How often ..... (Waleed visit) his uncle ?
- ..... (Salma play) tennis ? - No, she doesn't.

# Speaking & Writing Corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة  
Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues إل  
قم بإستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

Step 1 Vocabulary	Step 2 Speaking	Step 3 Writing
<p>اختر إقتانك للمفردات اللغوية</p> <p><b>Read and complete :</b></p> <p>1. What time do you usually ..... ? - I usually get up at 6.30 a.m. <i>يستيقظ</i></p> <p>2. Who do you ..... with ? - I live with my family. <i>يعيش</i></p> <p>3. Do you ..... ? - Yes. I like listening to music. <i>يستمتع إلى الموسيقى</i></p>	<p>اختر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث</p> <p><b>Complete the following dialogue :</b></p> <p>Mona is asking Dina about her daily routine.  <b>Mona :</b> Can I ask you some questions ?  <b>Dina :</b> (1) .....  <b>Mona :</b> (2) .....  <b>Dina :</b> I usually get up at 6 : 30 a.m.  <b>Mona :</b> (3) .....  <b>Dina :</b> I live with my family.  <b>Mona :</b> Do you listen to music ?  <b>Dina :</b> (4) .....  <b>Mona :</b> How often do you listen to music ?  <b>Dina :</b> (5) .....  <i>(Albadary - Assuit 2024)</i></p>	<p>اختر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة</p> <p><b>Write a paragraph on :</b></p> <p>"Your daily routine"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>
<p>اختر إقتانك للمفردات اللغوية</p> <p><b>Read and complete :</b></p> <p>1. Who is your ..... ? - Aziz is my best friend. <i>أفضل صديق</i></p> <p>2. What does he do in his ..... ? - He likes to do sport. <i>وقت الفراغ</i></p> <p>3. Does he live in a ..... or somewhere else ? - He lives in a house. <i>عمارة سكنية</i></p>	<p>اختر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث</p> <p><b>Hamza asks Amir about his best friend.</b>  <b>Hamza :</b> Who is your best friend, Amir ?  <b>Amir :</b> (1) .....  <b>Hamza :</b> (2) .....  <b>Amir :</b> There are four people in his family.  <b>Hamza :</b> What's Aziz's favourite subject ?  <b>Amir :</b> (3) .....  <b>Hamza :</b> (4) .....  <b>Amir :</b> He likes to do sport in his free time.  <b>Hamza :</b> Does he live in a block of flats or somewhere else ?  <b>Amir :</b> (5) .....</p>	<p>"Your best friend"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 1 & 2

● Understand

● Apply

● Create

### 1 Complete the following dialogue :

Sarah is asking Huda about her daily routine.

Sarah : Do you have a daily routine, Huda ?

Huda : (1) .....

Sarah : (2) ..... ?

Huda : I get up at six thirty in the morning.

Sarah : Can you prepare your breakfast ?

Huda : (3) .....

Sarah : (4) ..... ?

Huda : My mum always prepares it for me.

Sarah : How do you go to school every day ?

Huda : (5) .....

(Qalyobia - Benha 2024)

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I am Mona. My daily routine is the same every school day. I always get up early at 6 : 30 in the morning. My mum also gets up early and makes my breakfast. We always have breakfast together. I go to school by bus with my friend Maha. I like music very much and we sometimes listen to it. My parents work at the hospital. Their work is very hard and they get home late, so I often help to make dinner in the evening. I do my homework and read my books on the sofa. I watch TV and text my friend. Then I go to bed at 10 o'clock.

(Luxor - Luxor 2022)

#### a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....  
a. work                      b. music                      c. breakfast                      d. bus
- Mona gets up at .....  
a. 6 : 30                      b. 7 : 30                      c. 8 : 30                      d. 9 : 00
- The underlined word "daily" means .....  
a. yesterday                      b. tomorrow                      c. every day                      d. now

#### b. Answer the following questions :

- What is the main idea of the passage ?  
.....
- How does Mona go to school ?  
.....
- Do you think that Mona enjoys her daily routine ?  
.....

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. On Saturday, I usually ..... time with my cousins.  
a. cook                      b. knock                      c. spend                      d. stay  
(Cairo - New Cairo 2024)
2. Last week, I had a/an ..... with Dr Magdi Yacoub.  
a. subject                      b. email                      c. interview                      d. poster
3. .... my friends every evening is one of my interests.  
a. Doing                      b. Texting                      c. Reading                      d. Playing
4. **WB** What do you do to ..... fun ? - I play chess.  
a. make                      b. have                      c. try                      d. cry
5. Egypt is the most important ..... in Africa.  
a. village                      b. city                      c. country                      d. island
6. I prefer sitting on the ..... . It's more comfortable than the chair.  
a. sofa                      b. door                      c. table                      d. map
7. At ....., we have our sandwiches and play in the playground.  
a. break                      b. class                      c. timetable                      d. lesson
8. They usually ..... their homework in the evening.  
a. does                      b. do                      c. are doing                      d. doing  
(Damietta - El-Roda 2024)
9. People ..... usually work on Fridays.  
a. don't                      b. aren't                      c. haven't                      d. doesn't
10. **SB** What do Sherifa and her dad ..... in the evenings ?  
a. did                      b. does                      c. doing                      d. do

### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. It never ..... (rain) in summer. (Sharkia - Hehia 2024)
2. **SB** ..... (Does) you like to study ?
3. **WB** ..... (Where) often do you play tennis ?
4. She ..... (always go) to work by bus. (Beheira - Hosh Issa 2023)

### 5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"What do you usually do on holidays?"

.....

.....

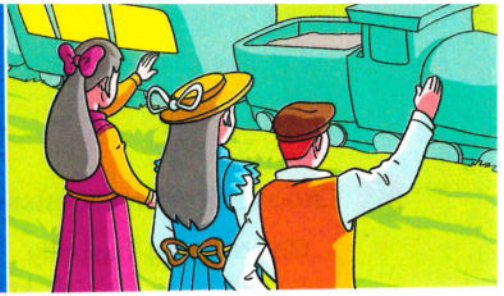
.....

.....

.....

.....

(Giza - Al-Haram 2024)



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

attractive (adj)	جذاب / فائن	profile (n)	الملف الشخصي (لمحة عن حياة شخص)
large (adj)	كبير (الحجم)	feed (v)	يُطعم
terrible (adj)	مفزع - رهيب - فظيع	share (d) (v)	يشارك / يتقاسم
poor (adj)	فقير	tap (n)	صنبور المياه [حنفية]
railway line (n)	خط سكك حديدية	typical (adj)	نمطي / نموذجي
prison (n)	السجن	village (n)	قرية



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

tap - prison - profile - typical - attractive

1. Yesterday, it was a ..... day in my life.
2. Thieves are taken to .....
3. The new house was very .....
4. Don't forgot to turn off the .....

### Lesson 3

SB pages 6 & 7 WB page 74

article (n)	مقال	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح
text message (n)	رسالة نصية	carry (ied) (v)	يحمل
research (n)	بحث [علمي]	life - lives (n)	حياة - حيوات
clear (adj)	واضح	garden (n)	حديقة [خاصة]
picnic (n)	نزهة خلوية	goats (n)	ماعز
watermelon (n)	بطيخ	borrow (ed) (v)	يستعير
knife (n)	سكين	include (d) (v)	يشمل - يتضمن

### Lesson 4

SB page 8 WB page 75

adventures (n)	مغامرات	beginning (n)	بداية
train (ed) (v), (n)	يتدرب - قطار	travel (led) (v)	يسافر
together (adv)	معا	road (n)	طريق
move (d) (v)	ينقل - ينقل	ending (n)	نهاية
change (d) (v), (n)	ينغير - يغير / تغيير	describe (d) (v)	يصف

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
know يعرف	knew	known
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten
bring يحضر / يجلب	brought	brought
feed يطعم	fed	fed

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>prison</b>	a place where people go when they do something wrong or bad	سجن
<b>railway line</b>	the metal "road" that a train travels on	خط سكك حديدية
<b>poor</b>	not having enough money to live well	فقير
<b>attractive</b>	beautiful / nice to look at	جذاب
<b>large</b>	big	كبير (الحجم)
<b>terrible</b>	very bad	مفزع / رهيب
<b>feed</b>	give food to a person, group or animal	يطعم
<b>tap</b>	something you turn on or off to get water	صنبور مياه (حنفية)

## Vocabulary Study

## Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
attractive جذاب	beautiful	ugly قبيح
large كبير (الحجم)	big	small صغير (الحجم)
near قريب	close	far from بعيدًا عن
outside خارج	outdoor	inside / indoor داخل
terrible فظيع - رهيب	bad	good جيد

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ive	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	attractive جذاب
-ful	تكوّن الصفة من الاسم أو الفعل	beautiful جميل careful حريص
-ing	تكوّن الاسم من الفعل	beginning بداية



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 2 suggest

\* suggest + (inf. + ing)

▶ I suggest going to the beach.

يقترح

(SB page 7)

\* suggest that + فاعل + inf. المصدر .....

يقترح أن

▶ I suggest that she go to the beach.

### 4 little

\* little (adj)

تستخدم بمعنى صغير السن أو الحجم

▶ - I lived in America when I was little.

- I saw a little girl in the street.

\* little (adj)

تستخدم بمعنى قليل ويأتي بعدها اسم لا يعد

▶ She has got a little milk in her glass.

(SB page 8)

### 5 six - year - old هذه الصفة المركبة تستخدم كصفة قبل الاسم بمعنى ذا / ذات الست سنوات

\* My six - year - old cousin is here and he wants to play a game with me.

(SB page 7)

### Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
do something wrong	يفعل شيء ما خطأ	at the beginning of	في بداية
at the end of	في نهاية	at last	أخيرًا
take .... away from	يأخذ .... بعيدًا عن	come home	يأتي للمنزل
Prepositions			
careful with	حريص بشأن	ask for	يطلب
move from ... to ...	ينتقل من ... إلى ...	around the world	حول العالم
full of	مليء بـ	in many ways	بعده طرق
share with	يتشارك - يتقاسم مع	find out about	يكشف عن



## Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

### Lesson [3] SB page 6

1. Shahana is from India.
2. She lives in a **village**<sup>(1)</sup> with her family.
3. She **shares**<sup>(2)</sup> a room with her sister.
4. Mum gets water from the **tap**<sup>(3)</sup>.
5. The tap is at the end of the street.
6. They all have breakfast.
7. They have bread with a cup of tea.
8. When she gets home from school, she **feeds**<sup>(4)</sup> the chickens.
9. She helps her mum make dinner.
10. After dinner, she does her homework.
11. She sometimes helps her brother and sister.
12. Finally, she goes to bed.

### Lesson [4] SB page 8

1. The **Railway**<sup>(5)</sup> Children is a story by E. Nesbit.
2. Roberta and her family live in London in the 1900s.
3. They have a big **attractive**<sup>(6)</sup> home with a large garden.
4. On a **terrible**<sup>(7)</sup> day, two men take her father away from home.
5. Roberta moves from the city with her mother, brother and sister.
6. They move to a small house near a railway line.
7. The family are **poor**<sup>(8)</sup> and life is very different for them now.
8. The children have lots of **adventures**<sup>(9)</sup> near the railway line.
9. A kind old man who travels on the train becomes their friend.
10. The old man helps them and finds their father who is in **prison**<sup>(10)</sup>.
11. Finally, their father comes home.
12. They become happy to be **together**<sup>(11)</sup> again.

يذهب (6)	سكة حديد (5)	يطعم (4)	يشارك (3)	صنوبر (2)	قرية (1)
معا (11)	السجن (10)	منازل (9)	فقير (8)	مقطع (7)	

تأليفه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية أخرى:

\* Your friend's daily life      \* Helping others      \* A short story of a poor family      \* Living a hard life

## 1. Reading and Listening



### Reading

#### Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الفهم  
ونصوص الاستماع

• on Lesson 3 SB page 6

### Lives around the World

Tell us about your life !

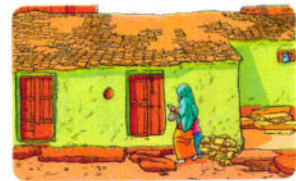
- What are your hobbies and interests ?
- What is a typical day in your life ?
- What job do you want to do one day ?

My name's Shahana. I'm from India.

I live in a village with my parents, my brother and my sister.

I **share a room with**<sup>(1)</sup> my sister. We all get up early. There is an outside tap **at the end of**<sup>(2)</sup> street where we live. My mum **gets water from**<sup>(3)</sup> the tap every morning. Then we all have breakfast. We have bread with a cup of tea. My dad works in a shop.

I have two jobs to do when I get home from school. I **feed the chickens**<sup>(4)</sup>, then I help my mum make dinner. After dinner, I do my homework. Sometimes I help my brother and sister to do their homework, too. Then I **go to bed**<sup>(5)</sup>.



**Choose  
the correct  
answer from  
a, b, c or d**

#### Extracting information

##### Learn

1. Shahana helps her mother make .....

- a. lunch    b. dinner    c. breakfast    d. supper

##### Practise

2. There are ..... people in Shahana's family.

- a. four    b. five    c. three    d. six

إستخراج المعلومات

(1) يتشارك في حجرة مع

(2) في نهاية

(3) يحصل على الماء من

(4) يطعم الدجاج

(5) يذهب للفرش

• on Lesson 3 SB page 7

Yunis : Grandma, have you got a **watermelon**<sup>(1)</sup> ?

Grandma : Yes, I have. It's on the table.

Yunis : Can I have some, please ? I like watermelon.

Grandma : Yes, of course. We need a **knife**<sup>(2)</sup> to **cut**<sup>(3)</sup> it !

Yunis : Shall I help you to cut it ?

Grandma : Thank you, Yunis, but be **careful**<sup>(4)</sup> with the knife!



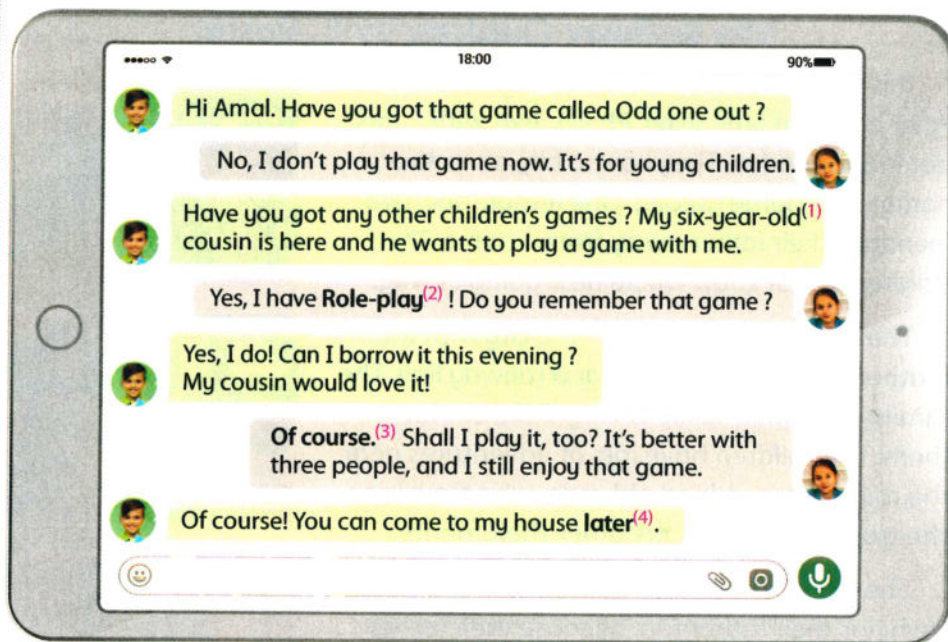
(1) بطيخة

(2) سكين

(3) يقطع

(4) حريص

## • on Lesson 3 SB page 7



(1) ذو الست سنوات (2) تبادل الأدوار (3) بالطبع (4) فيما بعد

## • on Lesson 3 WB page 74

Ali : This is a nice restaurant<sup>(1)</sup>.

Shall we eat here, Hassan ?

Hassan : Yes, that's a good idea<sup>(2)</sup>.

Waiter<sup>(3)</sup> : Good evening. Where would you like to sit ?

Ali : Can we sit next to the window ?

Waiter : Of course. What would you like to eat ?

Hassan : Have you got any fish today ?

Waiter : Yes, we've got fish with rice or fish with potato chips<sup>(4)</sup>.

Ali : We'd like fish with rice, please.

Waiter : Shall I bring<sup>(5)</sup> you some water ?

Hassan : Thank you.



(1) مطعم (2) فكرة جيدة (3) جرسون (4) شرائح البطاطس المقلية (5) يحضر

## The Railway Children by E. Nesbit

It is the 1900s. Roberta, her younger brother Peter and their little sister, Phyllis, **live with**<sup>(1)</sup> their parents in London. They have a big, attractive home with a large garden. One terrible day, two men take their father **away from**<sup>(2)</sup> home. The children do not know where he is going or why.



The children **move from**<sup>(3)</sup> the city with their mother to a small house near a railway line. The family are poor and life is very **different for**<sup>(4)</sup> them. The children have lots of adventures near the railway line. A kind old man, who travels on **the train**<sup>(5)</sup> every day, becomes their friend.



The old man helps the family **in many ways**<sup>(6)</sup>. He helps their father too, because their father is in prison for something he did not do. Finally, their father comes home. The family is so happy to be together again **at last**<sup>(7)</sup>.



### Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

**Choose**  
the correct  
answer from  
a, b, c or d

- تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص
- Learn** 1. The word "....." in the first paragraph means very bad.  
a. attractive b. terrible c. large d. close
- Practise** 2. The word "near" in the second paragraph is the opposite of .....  
a. close b. ugly c. far from d. beautiful

- (1) يعيش مع  
(2) يأخذ بعيداً عن  
(3) ينتقل من  
(4) مختلف بالنسبة لـ  
(5) يسافر على متن قطار  
(6) بعدة طرق  
(7) أخيراً



## Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

### ► Key vocabulary

1. I can't eat this meal. It's so .....  
a. typical b. delicious c. terrible d. careful

2. This family do not have much money, so they are .....  
a. rich                      b. tall                      c. poor                      d. fat
3. Our new house is in the country near a railway .....  
a. line                      b. letter                      c. number                      d. house
4. I live in a city but my grandparents live in a small ..... in the country.  
a. village                      b. island                      c. playground                      d. court
5. I do the same things at the same time every day in my ..... day.  
a. terrible                      b. attractive                      c. intelligent                      d. typical

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

6. **SB** She helps her mother ..... the chickens on the farm.  
a. train                      b. change                      c. suggest                      d. feed
7. **WB** Shall I help you ..... your books ? - No, thanks.  
a. carry                      b. try                      c. cry                      d. hurry
8. The police took three people to ..... because they stole the car.  
*(Gharbia - East Mahala 2024)*  
a. school                      b. cinema                      c. prison                      d. hospital
9. I like your dress. It's .....  
*(Qalyubia - Tukh 2023 / Damietta - Zarka 2024)*  
a. attractive                      b. ugly                      c. bad                      d. terrible
10. I ..... the same room with my brother at home.  
*(Multidisciplinary - Gharbia - Santa 2021)*  
a. dive                      b. deliver                      c. share                      d. drive

### El-Moasser Exercises

11. Can you ..... the man who stole your bag ?  
a. search                      b. describe                      c. help                      d. feed
12. We travel to many countries to have a lot of .....  
a. adventures                      b. gardens                      c. roads                      d. trains

### ► Definitions

13. A ..... is something you turn on or off to get water.  
a. tape                      b. tap                      c. lab                      d. cab
14. The ..... is the metal road that a train travels on.  
a. station                      b. railway line                      c. profile                      d. tap

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. Dad suggested ..... to the beach in summer.  
a. go                      b. to go                      c. going                      d. goes
16. It's polite to say sorry when you ..... something wrong.  
a. have                      b. help                      c. make                      d. do

## 2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

### ► Asking and answering questions about moving to a new house :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الانتقال لمنزل جديد :

#### Questions



1. How did you feel when you moved to a new house ? Why ?

١ . كيف شعرت عندما انتقلت إلى منزل جديد ؟ ولماذا ؟

2. How did you feel when things changed ? Was it easy or difficult at first ?

٢ . كيف شعرت عندما تغيرت الأمور ؟ هل كان الأمر سهلاً أم صعباً في البداية ؟

#### Answers



I felt happy and excited because the new house was comfortable.

- شعرت بالسعادة والحماس لأن المنزل الجديد مريح.

I felt strange. In fact it was difficult at first when I left my old friends.

- شعرت بالغربة. ففي الواقع كان الأمر صعباً في البداية عندما تركت أصدقائي القدامى.

## 3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

### ► Writing tips :

نصائح للكتابة :

#### • Use short and clear sentences in text messages.

استخدم جمل قصيرة وواضحة في الرسائل النصية.

#### Your new house

منزلك الجديد

1. We have just moved to our new house.

لقد انتقلنا مؤخرًا إلى منزلنا الجديد.

2. It is a big, attractive home with a large garden.

إنه منزل كبير وجذاب ذو حديقة فسيحة.

3. It consists of three floors and a large basement.

يتكون من ثلاث طوابق علوية وطابق أرضي فسيح.

4. My grandparents live with us on the first floor.

يعيش أجدادي معنا في الطابق الأول.

5. My father made a large room for reading books.

قام والدي بتشييد غرفة فسيحة لقراءة الكتب.

6. It has a lot of books in all fields.

يوجد بالغرفة العديد من الكتب في كل المجالات.

### III Language

#### Asking questions with Have / Has got ... / Can ... ? & Shall ... ?

##### 1. Have / Has got ... ?

Has (he/she/it / اسم مفرد) → got ..... ?

**ex.** - Has your father got a blue car ?

\* Yes, he **has**. or \* Yes, he **has got** a blue car.

\* No, he **hasn't**. or \* No, he **hasn't got** a blue car.

Have (I / we / you / they / اسم جمع) → got ..... ?

**ex.** - Have you got any cousins ?

\* Yes, I **have**. or \* Yes, I **have got** five cousins.

\* No, I **haven't**. or \* No, I **haven't got any** cousins.

##### 2. Can ... ?

**A**  
Asking  
about ability  
السؤال عن  
القدرة

Yes / No question

السؤال بـ[هل]

**a** Can + subject الفاعل + inf. ?

**ex.** - Can you climb a tree ?

\* Yes, I **can**.

\* No, I **can't**.

Wh-question

السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام

**b** Question word + can + subject الفاعل + inf. ?

**ex. A :** What **can** you do, Ahmed ?

**B :** I **can** lift these heavy bags.

**B**  
Asking for  
something  
طلب شيئاً ما

Can + (I / you) + inf. .... ?

**ex.** - Can I have ice cream, please ?

\* No, you **can't**. Ice cream is not good for you.

## 3. Shall ... ?

### A

#### Making suggestions

تقديم اقتراحات

Shall I / we + inf. ....?

- Hi! **Shall** we play a game next weekend ?

Agreeing

الرد بالموافقة

\* **Yes**, that's a good idea. Let's play tennis next weekend.

Disagreeing

الرد بعدم الموافقة

\* **No, I can't**. I'm busy.\* **No, I'm sorry**. I have a lot of homework.

### B

#### Offering help

تقديم المساعدة

Shall I + inf. ....?

- **Shall** I help you to cut the watermelon ?

Accepting the offer

قبول عرض المساعدة

- Thank you, Yunis, but be careful with the knife !

Refusing the offer

رفض عرض المساعدة

- Thanks, I can do it myself (on my own).

- Thanks, I don't need any help.



## Exercises

## on Language

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB &amp; Previous Exams

1. .... she got a blue pen ?

(Damietta - Al-Roda 2024)

a. Does

b. Is

c. Has

d. Have

2. **SB** Have you ..... a watermelon, Grandma ?

a. get

b. gets

c. got

d. getting

(Alexandria - Al Agmai 2023 / Sharkia - Menia El-Qamh 2024)

3. **WB** ..... I have a glass of water, please ?

a. Can

b. Have

c. Did

d. Had

4. **SB** ..... you got that game called "Odd one Out" ?

a. Do

b. Can

c. Have

d. Did

5. **WB** Shall I ..... you some water ?

a. brought

b. bring

c. bringing

d. brings

6. **SB** Of course ! You can ..... to my house later.

a. comes

b. came

c. coming

d. come

**El-Moasser Exercises**

7. .... we eat here, Hassan ? - Yes, that's a good idea.  
a. Shall                      b. Were                      c. Are                      d. Have
8. Has he got an umbrella ? - No, he .....  
a. can't                      b. hasn't                      c. doesn't have                      d. doesn't
9. .... you help him with his homework ?  
a. Have                      b. Can                      c. Does                      d. Are
10. Can you answer this question ? - No, I .....  
a. mustn't                      b. can't                      c. shouldn't                      d. haven't

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

**SB , WB & Previous Exams**

1. Can you ..... (driving) the car ? (Minia - Samalut 2024)
2. .... (Do) we go to the park tomorrow ? - No. I'm not very keen on that. (Giza - Al Warraq 2024)
3. **WB** Can we sit next to the window ? - No, you ..... (not can). (Menofia - Al-Shohadaa 2022)
4. **SB** Shall I ..... (helps) you to cut it ? (Gharbia - West Mahall 2022)

**El-Moasser Exercises**

5. .... (Have) your father got a computer ?
6. .... (I shall) get you a drink ?
7. .... (Did) Abdullah play chess ? - Yes, he can.
8. What ..... (you have) got in your bag ?

# El Moasser

## Homework Interactive

- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي
- تمكّنك من إتقان المفردات اللغوية ( التسميع )
- القواعد اللغوية وتدريبات على الوحدات



Step 1 Vocabulary	Step 2 Speaking	Step 3 Writing
<p>اختر اتفاقك للمفردات اللغوية</p> <p><b>Read and complete :</b></p> <p>1. Why do you like your house ? - Because it is large and ..... جذاب- فانس</p> <p>2. Do you have a big bedroom ? - Yes, I ..... a big bedroom with my brother. يشارك- يتقاسم</p> <p>3. Is there a ..... in your house ? - Yes, there is. حديقة [خاصة]</p>	<p>اختر مدى اتفاقك لمهارة التحدث</p> <p><b>Complete the following dialogue :</b> Bilal asks Hakim about his house. <b>Bilal :</b> Where is your house ? <b>Hakim : (1) .....</b> <b>Bilal :</b> Do you like your house ? <b>Hakim : (2) .....</b> <b>Bilal : (3) .....</b> ? <b>Hakim :</b> Because it is large and attractive. <b>Bilal : (4) .....</b> ? <b>Hakim :</b> Yes, I share a big bedroom with my brother. <b>Bilal :</b> Is there a garden in your house ? <b>Hakim : (5) .....</b></p>	<p>اختر مدى اتفاقك لمهارة الكتابة</p> <p><b>Write a paragraph on :</b> "Your house"</p>
<p>اختر اتفاقك للمفردات اللغوية</p> <p><b>1. What books do you like to read ?</b> - I like to read children's ..... قصص</p> <p><b>2. What is the story about ?</b> - It is about three children who like ..... قطارات</p> <p><b>3. What happened in the story ?</b> - They had a lot of ..... مغامرات</p>	<p>Yara and Nihal are talking about children's stories.</p> <p><b>Yara :</b> What books do you like to read ? <b>Nihal : (1) .....</b> ? <b>Yara : (2) .....</b> ? <b>Nihal :</b> Yes, I read the Railway Children Story. <b>Yara : (3) .....</b> ? <b>Nihal :</b> The story is about three children who like the trains. <b>Yara :</b> What happened in the story ? <b>Nihal : (4) .....</b> . <b>Yara :</b> I like adventures ! Can I borrow it ? <b>Nihal : (5) .....</b> .</p>	<p>"A children's story"</p>

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3 & 4

● Understand

● Apply

○ Create

### 1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali tells Tamer about his new house.

Ali : I moved to a new house, Tamer.

Tamer : A new house! (1) ..... ?

Ali : It's in Alexandria by the sea.

Tamer : Fantastic! When did you move there ?

Ali : (2) ..... .

Tamer : (3) ..... ?

Ali : Yes, it's a large house with a garden full of flowers.

Tamer : Do you like flowers ?

Ali : (4) ..... My favourite hobby is planting flowers.  
And you ?

Tamer : (5) ..... .

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My name is Dina. I live with my family in a nice house with a **beautiful** garden. It is in a small village. I share a room with my sister. We all get up early. My father works on a farm. He grows vegetables and fruits. My brother sometimes helps him. I like to water the plants and flowers in the garden. I get water from an outside tap. My sister is ten years old. **She** usually feeds the chickens and collects eggs. I always help my mum with the housework. I do homework after dinner. In the evening, we usually watch TV together. We always go to bed early to get up early.

(Cairo - El-Mostaqbal 2024)

#### a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The underlined word "**beautiful**" means .....  
a. ugly                      b. weak                      c. attractive                      d. bad
- The underlined word "**She**" refers to .....  
a. Dina                      b. her sister                      c. her mother                      d. her aunt
- They keep ..... in the garden.  
a. goats                      b. cows                      c. sheep                      d. chickens

#### b. Answer the following questions :

- What is the passage about ?  
.....

5. What is Dina's father's job ?

6. Do you think Dina is helpful ? Why ?

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ayman ..... the room with his brother. (Ismaili 2024)  
a. shares                      b. stays                      c. plants                      d. spends
2. Can I ..... this story for two days, Miss Ola ? (Cairo - Ain Shams 2023)  
a. buy                      b. lend                      c. borrow                      d. feed
3. Camping in the desert was a very exciting .....  
a. road                      b. adventure                      c. line                      d. message
4. How did you feel when you ..... to the new house ?  
a. saw                      b. moved                      c. carried                      d. told
5. Thieves are always taken away to .....  
a. prison                      b. hospital                      c. school                      d. factory
6. They bought a ..... house as their old one was very small.  
a. tiny                      b. large                      c. bad                      d. funny  
(Gharbia - East Tanta 2022)
7. This food is bad. It tastes ..... (Qalybia - West Shobra 2024)  
a. delicious                      b. terrible                      c. beautiful                      d. sweet
8. Has Ahmed ..... a lot of water ? - Yes, he has.  
a. get                      b. gets                      c. getting                      d. got
9. Has Habiba got a pen ? - No, she .....  
a. didn't                      b. doesn't                      c. can't                      d. hasn't
10. **WB** Shall we ..... to the beach tomorrow ?  
a. went                      b. go                      c. going                      d. goes

### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. .... (Can) we go shopping tomorrow ? - Yes, that's a good idea.  
(Sharkia - East Zagazig 2024)
2. .... (I can) ask you some questions, please ? (Fayoum - Abshwy 2022)
3. **SB** Hi ! Shall we ..... (played) a game next weekend ?
4. **WB** Have you ..... (get) any cousins ?

### 5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"A description of your new house"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(Cairo - West Nasr City 2024)



## I

## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

armchair (n)	كرسي بمسند	lamp (n)	مصباح [لمبة]
basin (n)	حوض	mirror (n)	مرآة
carpet (n)	سجادة	wardrobe (n)	دولاب ملابس
curtains (n)	ستائر	bookshelf (n)	رف للكتب
chest of drawers (n)	خزانة ذات أدراج	cushions (n)	وسائد / مخدات
nature reserves (n)	محميات طبيعية	practise (d) (v)	يمارس



## Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

## • Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

nature reserves - carpet - practise - wardrobe - mirror

1. Pupils should ..... English outside school.
2. My sister has many dresses in her .....
3. We should protect ..... to help the environment.
4. There was a beautiful ..... on the floor.

## Lesson 5

SB page 9 WB page 76

match (ed) (v)	يتلائم / يتماشى / ينسجم مع	compare (d) (v)	يقارن
floor (n)	الأرضية / طابق	sunlight (n)	ضوء الشمس
cupboard (n)	دولاب	belong (ed) (v)	يخص - ينتمي

## Lesson 6

SB page 10 WB page 77

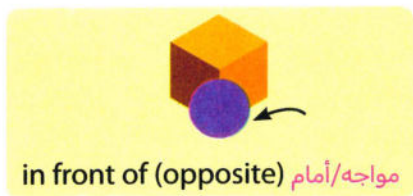
penfriend (n)	صديق مراسلة	absent (adj)	غائب - غير موجود
downstairs (n)	الطابق السفلي	Cambridge	مدينة كامبريدج [إنجلترا]
nationality (n)	جنسية	Oxford	مدينة أوكسفورد [إنجلترا]
language (n)	لغة	Germany (n)	دولة ألمانيا

## UNIT ONE

### Remember تذكر

#### Prepositions of place

#### حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



#### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

#### تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sleep ينام	slept	slept
write يكتب	wrote	written
send يرسل	sent	sent

#### Study these definitions

#### ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>lamp</b>	something that gives light	مصباح (لمبة)
<b>basin</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>you can wash your face in this</li> <li>a bowl for washing, usually with taps, in a bathroom, bedroom, etc.</li> </ul>	حوض
<b>curtains</b>	they are next to your windows and you close them at night	ستائر
<b>wardrobe</b>	It is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes	دولاب ملابس
<b>chest of drawers</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It has drawers where you can put your clothes</li> <li>a piece of furniture with drawers (boxes with handles on them) to put things in</li> </ul>	خزانة ذات ادراج
<b>mirror</b>	a piece of special glass in which you can see yourself and what is behind you	مرآة
<b>carpets</b>	these are on the floor	سجاد
<b>armchair</b>	a large comfortable chair with parts to put your arms on	كرسي بمسند

## Vocabulary Study

### Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
open يفتح	unlock	close / lock يغلّق
downstairs الطابق السفلي	–	upstairs الطابق العلوي
nearby بالقرب من	close	far away بعيداً - على بعد

### Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-ity	يكون الاسم من الصفة	nationality جنسية
-able	تكوّن الصفة من الاسم	comfortable مريح



## Exercise

### on Vocabulary Study

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- "Open" and "....." have the same meaning.  
a. lock      b. close      c. unlock      d. use
- To turn the adjective "national" into a noun, we add ".....".  
a. -tion      b. -al      c. -ity      d. -ment
- To change the verb "comfort" into an adjective, we add to suffix ".....".  
a. -able      b. -ive      c. -ful      d. -ness
- I can't go..... My leg hurts, I'll use the lift المصعد.  
a. uptown      b. upstairs      c. the stairs      d. the stars



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 wardrobe / cupboard

\* wardrobe

دولاب (خاص بالملابس)

- - Put your clothes in the wardrobe.

\* cupboard

دولاب (خاص بتخزين الأشياء)

- - Go and see how much sugar we have in the cupboard in the kitchen.

(SB page 8)

### 2

لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر on مع الكلمات التالية :

on television

on the radio

on computer

- - **SB** I watch videos on my computer.

(SB page 9)

## UNIT ONE

### 3 would ('d) love / like to + inf.

يود أن

- ▶ - **WB** I would love to visit the nature reserves near Al Fuyoum.

(WB page 77)

- ▶ - I would like to help you with your English.

### 4 furniture (n)

الأثاث (اسم لا يعد) (يعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد)

- ▶ - **SB** Wooden furniture is not usually very expensive.

(SB page 9)

### 5 Thank + مفعول + for + (inf. + ing) / اسم

يشكر .... ل ....

- ▶ - **SB** Thank you for being my penfriend.

- ▶ - **SB** Thank you for your email.

(SB page 11)

### 6 reserve (v) / (n)

يحجز (مكان - تذكرة) / محمية

- ▶ - Can I reserve (book) a ticket to Alex., please ?

- ▶ - There is a natural reserve near El Fayoum.

(SB page 10)

### 7 penfriend - keypal

\* penfriend (BrE)

صديق مراسلة

- ▶ - I've a British penfriend to practise my English.

\* keypal (AmE)

صديق الإنترنت

- ▶ - Emad is my keypal. We chat only online.

(SB page 11)

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
a breakfast break      فترة استراحة لوجبة الإفطار	hear from      يتلقى أخباراً من
get dressed      يرتدى ملابسه	look out of      ينظر من
a short walk from      تمشية قصيرة من	tell .... about      يخبر (شخص) عن
Nice to meet you      سررت بلقائك	on the front      في المقدمة
Best wishes      أطيب التمنيات	belong to      يخص / ينتمي إلى



## Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

### Lesson (5) SB page 9

#### A boy describes<sup>(1)</sup> his room.

1. My room is small, but it's attractive.
2. I have a **lamp**<sup>(2)</sup> on the **bookshelf**<sup>(3)</sup>.
3. I have a **wardrobe**<sup>(4)</sup> with a mirror on the front.
4. The colour of the **curtains**<sup>(5)</sup> matches the carpet.

#### A girl describes her room.

1. My bed is under the window and there are **cushions**<sup>(6)</sup> on it.
2. I sleep with the curtains open to look out of the window.
3. I like to sit and read in the big armchair.
4. I keep some clothes in the chest of drawers.

### Lesson (6) SB page 10

1. Judy is writing an email to her **penfriend**<sup>(7)</sup> Rebecca.
2. She tells her that she is from Al Fayoum in Egypt.
3. Al Fayoum is a large city with beautiful **nature reserves**<sup>(8)</sup> nearby.
4. Judy lives with her parents in a flat.
5. On Saturdays, Judy usually gets up early and helps her grandmother with her shopping.
6. Then, she reads and does her homework.

\* Description of your favourite room.

\* Your penfriend

7. Judy's favourite subjects are maths and English.
8. Judy thanks Rebecca for being her penfriend.
9. Judy is happy to be able to practise her English.

### Lesson (7) SB page 11

1. Dan is from England and is writing an email to Alex.
2. Dan thanks Alex for being his penfriend.
3. Dan gets up at half past seven.
4. Dan walks to school with his brother.
5. After school, Dan sometimes does sport or plays music.
6. Dan asks Alex to tell him about his typical daily routine.

### Lesson (7) SB page 11

1. Alex is from Germany and is **replying**<sup>(9)</sup> to Dan's email.
2. Alex **thanks**<sup>(10)</sup> Dan for his email.
3. Alex says that school in Germany starts very early in the morning.
4. Alex doesn't have breakfast at home.
5. He has a breakfast break after the first lesson.

(1) يصفه	(2) مصباح	(3) رف كتب	(4) دولاب	(5) ستار
(6) وسائد	(7) صديق مراسلة	(8) محميات طبيعية	(9) يرد	(10) يشكر

### تدويع :

الجمال السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

\* Your penfriend's hobbies





## Skills

# Reading and Listening



## Listening

### Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الفهم  
ونصوص الاستماع



#### on Lesson 5 SB page 9

#### 1 Boy :

My room is small, but it's really attractive. I have a lamp on a **bookshelf** <sup>(1)</sup> next to my bed so I can read **at night** <sup>(2)</sup>.

I have a wardrobe with a mirror **on the front** <sup>(3)</sup>, and my desk is **under the window** <sup>(4)</sup>.

Do you like my curtains? The colour matches the carpet. The best thing about my room is the sofa. I can sit there and read or **watch videos** <sup>(5)</sup> on my computer.



- (1) على رف الكتب
- (2) ليلاً
- (3) في المقدمة
- (4) أسفل النافذة
- (5) يشاهد فيديوهات
- (6) ينام والستائر مفتوحة
- (7) ينظر من



#### 2 Girl :

My bed is under the window. There are cushions on it! Sometimes I **sleep with the curtains open** <sup>(6)</sup> because I like to **look out of** <sup>(7)</sup> the window! I've got lots of books, and I like to sit and read in the big armchair. I keep some clothes in the chest of drawers. Our bathroom is downstairs, but I have a basin in my room, where I can wash my face before I go to bed.



### Answer Listening skill

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### Practise

I have a ..... with a mirror on the front.

- a. bookshelf      b. wardrobe      c. sofa      d. carpet

#### on Lesson 5 WB page 76

I like my parents' bedroom. When they open the curtains, there is always lots of **sunlight** <sup>(1)</sup> in the room. Their bed is under the window. In front of the bed they have a big wardrobe.

- (1) ضوء الشمس

My mum puts her **dresses**<sup>(2)</sup> in there. There is also an armchair next to the window. My dad sometimes reads his book here. He puts his **clothes**<sup>(3)</sup> in a big chest of drawers. This is behind the door. They don't have a basin in their room because the bathroom is next to their room, but they have a big mirror. My sister always likes to look at herself in it!

(2) فساتين

(3) ملابس

### Answer Listening skill

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

## Practise

- In front of the bed, they have a big .....

a. mirror

b. wardrobe

c. window

d. door



## Reading

### on Lesson 6 SB page 10

#### Dear Rebecca,

It is very **nice to meet you**<sup>(1)</sup>. My name is Judy.

I'm from Al Fayoum, in Egypt. It's a large city, with beautiful nature reserves **nearby**. I live with my parents and my brother in a flat. My grandparents live in a flat downstairs.



On Saturdays, I usually get up early and help my grandmother with her shopping, then I read or do my homework. In the afternoons, I visit my friends or **play computer games with**<sup>(2)</sup> my brother.

My favourite subjects are maths and English. **Thank you for**<sup>(3)</sup> being my penfriend. I am happy to be able to **practise my English**<sup>(4)</sup>!

I hope to **hear from**<sup>(5)</sup> you soon,

Judy

(1) سررت بلقائك

(2) يلعب ألعاب حاسوب مع

(3) يشكر على

(4) يمارس اللغة الإنجليزية

(5) يسمع من

#### Critical thinking skill

## Learn

1. Do you think it's a good idea to have a penfriend ? Why ?

- **Yes, I think so. Because it helps me to practise English.**

#### Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

## Practise

2. The word (**nearby**) in the first paragraph is the opposite of .....

a. beautiful

b. open

c. nice

d. far

### Answer the following questions :

مهارة التفكير النقدي

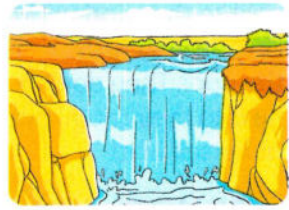
## UNIT ONE

### • on Lesson 6 WB page 77

**Hi Tamer**

Thank you for your email. I would love to visit the nature reserves near Al Fayoum. There are no nature reserves where I live in Cambridge, but there are some nice parks nearby. I would love to help you with your English. Please write to me again soon.

**Yours,  
Oliver**



### • on Lesson 6 WB page 77

**Hi Leila**

**b (1)** Thank you for your email. Here is some **information**<sup>(1)</sup> about me. I live with my parents and my two sisters in Oxford. We live in a house but we don't have a **garden**<sup>(2)</sup>. Does your home have a garden?

**a (2)** **Without**<sup>(3)</sup> a garden, I often go to the park at the weekends. I love taking photos of the birds there. Do you have many birds where you live?

**d (3)** I enjoy my school and I have many friends there. The school is a **short walk**<sup>(4)</sup> from my house. Is your school nearby, or is it far from your home?

**c (4)** I hope you can write to me again soon and please answer my questions!

**Best wishes**

**Mariana**



(1) معلومات

(2) حديقة خاصة

(3) بدون

(4) تمشية لمسافة قصيرة

### • on Lesson 7 SB page 11

**Hi Alex!**

Thanks for being my penfriend. I'm from England. I get up at about half past seven, and then my mum makes breakfast for the family. I walk to school with my brother. Our school finishes at three o'clock. After school, we sometimes **do sport**<sup>(1)</sup> or **play music**<sup>(2)</sup>. I do not watch TV when I **get home**<sup>(3)</sup>. I always do my homework first.

Can you tell me about your typical daily routine in Germany?



(1) يمارس رياضة

(2) يعزف موسيقى

(3) يصل المنزل

• on Lesson 7 SB page 11

**Hi Dan!**

Thanks for your email. In Germany, school starts very early in the morning. So I do not have breakfast before school. There is a "breakfast break<sup>(1)</sup>" after the first lesson<sup>(2)</sup>. How many lessons does your school have every day ?



(1) فترة استراحة لتناول وجبة الإفطار

(2) حصّة / درس

• on Lesson 7 SB page 11

I love my bedroom! I have a big white wardrobe in the corner<sup>(1)</sup>. Next to it, there is a mirror. I look at myself in it in the mornings. I also have a small bookshelf where I put my books.

Next to this, there is a big window. I have blue curtains on it. I close<sup>(2)</sup> them at night. I also have a red lamp next to my bed. I use it to read before I go to sleep.

Also in my bedroom, there is a grey<sup>(3)</sup> armchair. I sit and read my book there sometimes. There is also a chest of drawers. I put my T-shirts, socks<sup>(4)</sup> and other clothes in it. Finally, there is a big carpet on the floor<sup>(5)</sup>!



(1) في الركن

(2) يغلق

(3) رمادي اللون

(4) جوارب

(5) الأرضية



**Exercise**

**on Vocabulary**

☉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► Key vocabulary

- I have a big ..... in my bedroom to keep my clothes.  
a. sofa                      b. carpet                      c. wardrobe                      d. basin
- ..... are used on windows to keep out the light.  
a. Carpets                      b. Curtains                      c. Mats                      d. Bells
- She likes to look at the ..... after she wears her clothes.  
a. lamp                      b. mirror                      c. basin                      d. carpet
- We use ..... to cover the floors.  
a. carpets                      b. curtains                      c. drawers                      d. clothes

## UNIT ONE

5. Please, turn on the ..... I want to read the story in bed.  
a. lamb                      b. lamp                      c. carpet                      d. mirror
6. You can put some of your clothes in this chest of .....  
a. windows                      b. armchairs                      c. basins                      d. drawers

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

7. I washed my face in the ..... after getting up. *(Qena 2024)*  
a. cupboard                      b. armchair                      c. basin                      d. mirror
8. **SB** Al Fayoum is a large city, with beautiful nature reserves .....  
a. nearby                      b. near                      c. next                      d. up  
*(Giza – Al Warraq 2022)*
9. **WB** When they open the curtains, there is always lots of ..... in the room.  
*(Multidisciplinary - Fayoum 2021)*  
a. moon                      b. sunlight                      c. darkness                      d. study

### El-Moasser Exercises

10. There is a colourful carpet on the .....  
a. flood                      b. reserve                      c. hall                      d. floor
11. What's your ..... ? - I'm Egyptian.  
a. nationality                      b. address                      c. subject                      d. birthday

### ► Definitions

12. A large comfortable chair with parts to put your arms on is called a/an .....  
a. curtain                      b. carpet                      c. basin                      d. armchair
13. A ..... is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes.  
a. carpet                      b. sofa                      c. bookshelf                      d. wardrobe

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. We always talk online, but we have never met. He is my .....  
a. classmate                      b. keypad                      c. partner                      d. brother
15. There is a breakfast ..... after the first lesson.  
a. lesson                      b. break                      c. class                      d. play
16. I like to sleep with the curtains ..... The air is fresh.  
a. happy                      b. closed                      c. open                      d. lively

## 2. Speaking

### مهارة التحدث

1. Describing your bedroom and furniture. ا. وصف غرفة النوم والأثاث الخاص بك :

#### Questions

• Can you describe your bedroom ?

- هل يمكنك أن تصف غرفة النوم الخاصة بك ؟

#### Answers

- Yes, I can. I share a room with my sister. There are two beds. I have a big white wardrobe in the corner.

نعم يمكنني. أشارك في غرفة مع أختي. هناك سريرين كما أنني أمتلك دولايب للملابس ذو لون أبيض كبير الحجم في الركن.

2. Asking and answering about penfriends. ٢. أسئلة والرد عليها عن أصدقاء المراسلة :

#### Questions

1. Do you think it is a good idea to have penfriends ? Why / Why not ?

١. هل تعتقد أنه من الجيد أن يكون لديك أصدقاء مراسلة ؟ لم / لم لا ؟

2. What can you learn from writing to people from different countries ?

٢. ما الذي يمكنك تعلمه من مراسلة أشخاص من بلاد مختلفة ؟

#### Answers

- Yes, I think it's a good idea to have penfriends because it is good to practise a new language.

- نعم، أعتقد إنها لفكرة جيدة أن يكون لدى أصدقاء مراسلة لأن ذلك مفيد لممارسة لغة جديدة.

- I learn about their different habits and traditions.

- أتعلم عن عاداتهم وتقاليدهم المختلفة.



### Pop Quiz on Speaking

• Complete the following dialogue :

Hussein and Marwan are talking about penfriends.

**Marwan :** What are you doing, Hussein ?

**Hussein :** (1) .....

**Marwan :** Who are you sending an email to ?

**Hussein :** (2) .....

**Marwan :** (3) .....

**Hussein :** Mark is my penfriend.

**Marwan :** (4) .....

**Hussein :** He is from Canada.

**Marwan :** Do you think it is a good idea to have penfriends ?

**Hussein :** (5) .....

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5 & 6

● Understand

● Apply

○ Create

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- Ahmed is a/an .....  
a. student      b. dentist      c. teacher      d. engineer
- Ahmed is from .....  
a. Al Fayoum      b. Luxor      c. Cairo      d. Qena
- He has .....  
a. one brother      b. no brothers      c. one sister      d. two brothers
- In summer, they go to .....  
a. Luxor      b. Alexandria      c. Al Fayoum      d. Cairo

(Fayoum-Senorous 2023)

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My name is Haytham and this is my house. My house is quite big. It has got two floors - a ground floor and a first floor. **It** has also got an attic and a basement **بدروم**. On the ground floor there is a hall, a kitchen, a living room, a big dining room and a toilet. On the first floor there are three bedrooms, one bathroom and a big corridor. My bedroom is between my parents' bedroom and the bathroom. My sister's bedroom is in front of mine.

I love my bedroom, but I also like the attic. In the attic, I keep some of my books and my old toys. I like to spend my time there because it is **large** and there is a big sofa there where I sometimes take a nap.

In the basement, we keep the washing machine, the drying machine and old things. At the back of the house, there is also the garage, where my parents park the family car, and a lovely garden, with many green spaces, flowers, two swings and a swimming pool. I love my house so much! It's very comfortable.

#### a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The opposite of the underlined word "**large**" is ".....".  
a. wide      b. long      c. small      d. sad
- The toilet is on the .....  
a. hall      b. ground floor      c. second floor      d. basement
- There are two ..... in the garden.  
a. slides      b. bathrooms      c. swings      d. pools

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What is the best title for this passage ?

.....

5. Why do you think Haytham likes the attic ?

.....

6. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to ?

.....

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- 1. A ..... is something that gives light. (Fayoum - East Fayoum 2024)  
 a. baish                      b. lamb                      c. lamp                      d. curtain
- 2. I ..... a room with my sister. There are two beds. (Menofia - Quesna 2022)  
 a. do                      b. cry                      c. play                      d. share
- 3. **WB** You can see yourself in the .....  
 a. sofa                      b. bookshelf                      c. mirror                      d. carpet
- 4. Most countries are interested in ..... to keep and protect animals.  
 a. rivers                      b. nature reserves  
 c. mirrors                      d. bookstores
- 5. The colour of the curtains ..... the carpets.  
 a. deals                      b. treats                      c. plays                      d. matches
- 6. I have blue ..... on the window. I close them at night. (Giza - Omraniya 2023)  
 a. sofas                      b. chairs                      c. curtains                      d. carpets
- 7. **SB** I play computer games ..... my brother.  
 a. at                      b. from                      c. with                      d. to
- 8. Ahmed gets up early and ..... his homework. (Cairo - Ain Shams 2024)  
 a. do                      b. is doing                      c. does                      d. did
- 9. There is a lamp ..... to the desk.  
 a. next                      b. behind                      c. back                      d. front
- 10. This bag is mine. It ..... to me.  
 a. works                      b. brings                      c. treats                      d. belongs

**4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

- 1. **SB** Thank you for ..... (be) my penfriend.
- 2. **WB** Dalia ..... (gets up always) at 6:30 in the morning.
- 3. Has Sama ..... (get) a mobile phone ? (Gharbia - Samanod 2022)
- 4. Ali often ..... (go) to school by bus. (Minya - El Edwa 2024)

## Skills

## Reading Comprehension

## Critical thinking

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة التفكير النقدي (Critical thinking) وهنا تحتاج لقراءة النص جيداً لإعطاء رأي مناسب.

اقرأ وقيم بالإجابة.

▶ Read and answer the question :

My name's Shahana, I'm from India. I live in a village with my parents, my brother and my sister. I share a room with my sister. We all get up early. There is an outside tap at the end of the street where we live. My mum gets water from it every morning. Then we all have breakfast. We have bread with a cup of tea. My dad works in a shop. I have two jobs to do when I get home from school. I feed chickens, then I help my mum make dinner. After dinner, I do my homework. Sometimes, I help my brother and sister to do their homework, too. Then I go to bed.

• Do you think that Shahana is happy to help her brother and sister with their homework ? Why ?

Or Why do you think Shahana is happy to help her brother and sister with their homework ?

التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في إبداء الرأي.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تستطيع أن تبدي رأيك حسب الفكرة المذكورة.

## 2

## Speaking

## Your daily routine

تختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) معرفتك لقدر كاف من (language functions) والتي غالباً ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

اقرأ وقيم بالإجابة.

▶ Complete the following dialogue :

Amal is talking about her daily routine.

**Mona:** Do you have a daily routine, Amal ?

**Amal :** (1) .....

**Mona:** (2) .....

**Amal :** I get up at 7 o'clock in the morning.

**Mona:** Do you prepare your breakfast ?

**Amal :** (3) .....

**Mona:** (4) .....

**Amal :** My mum makes it for me.

**Mona:** How do you go to school ?

**Amal :** (5) .....

التحدي تريد (التحدث عن الروتين اليومي) وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

# 3

## Correction notes

### الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

#### Review

#### ◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

Subj. فاعل → inf.+s / inf. النفي → doesn't / don't + inf.	في المضارع البسيط مع (He / She / It) يضاف للفعل ies / es / s وينفى بـ (doesn't) وتحذف الـ ies / es / s ومع (I / You / We / They) الفعل بدون إضافات وينفى بـ (don't).
Do → (I / you / we / they/ جمع) → inf. Does → (he / she / it / مفرد) → inf.	في حالة السؤال نستخدم الفعل المساعد (Do / Does).
always / usually / often / never / sometimes	تستخدم الظروف مع المضارع البسيط قبل الفعل الرئيسي وتستخدم بعد am / is / are وبعض ظروف التكرار تستخدم في أول الجملة!

#### Learn

#### ◀ تعلم

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 Hany never ..... [play] football	plays	يضاف للفعل (s) مع الاسم المفرد
2 I ..... [tell always] the truth.	always tell	ظرف التكرار قبل الفعل الرئيسي
3 Salma doesn't ..... [goes] to school by bus.	go	نستخدم المصدر بعد (doesn't)

#### Practise

#### ◀ تدرب

#### ◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة Write the reason :

1 They ..... [doesn't] play sports on Sundays.	don't	.....
2 She ..... [visits always] her grandma.	always visits	.....
3 ..... [Do] your father drive to work ?	Does	.....
4 How ..... [does] you usually go to school?	do	.....

#### ◀ Write the correction :

#### ◀ اكتب التصحيح

1 What time ..... [do] your brother go to bed?	.....	نستخدم فعل مساعد does مع الاسم المفرد في المضارع البسيط
2 I love apples. I ..... [never] eat them.	.....	الجملة تدل أنه دائماً يأكل تفاح
3 Sometimes, I ..... [going] to my friend's flat.	.....	مضارع بسيط لوجود sometimes
4 ..... [Do] he speak English? - Yes, he does.	.....	نستخدم الفعل المساعد Does مع he في المضارع البسيط



# Review

## on unit 1

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

### مراجعة عامة على Unit 1 في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
الروتين اليومي يحاور - حوار text friends يرسل رسائل لأصدقائه على هواتفهم المحمولة يطمع جذاب رهيب / فظيع خط سكة حديد prison فقير كرسي بمسند حوض (للانقباض) رف الكتب سجادة خزانة ذات أدراج ستائر لمبة / أياچورة مرآة كنب دولاب ملابس	<b>1- Adverbs of frequency</b> ظروف التكرار أحياناً - sometimes دائماً - always عادة - usually أبداً - never غالباً - often • تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما : - She always studies hard for her final exams. <b>2- The Present Simple Tense</b> زمن المضارع البسيط • يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من : <b>Affirmative statement :</b> المصدر / I / They / We / You / فاعل جمع + فاعل مفرد / He / She / It + المصدر / Inf. / (s/es) <b>Negative statement :</b> المصدر / I / They / We / You / فاعل جمع + فاعل مفرد / He / She / It + المصدر / Inf. / doesn't / don't + فاعل - He drives an old car. <b>الجملة المنفية :</b> المصدر / I / They / We / You / فاعل جمع + فاعل مفرد / He / She / It + المصدر / Inf. / doesn't / don't + فاعل - We don't go to school on Friday. <b>الجملة الاستفهامية :</b> المصدر / I / They / We / You / فاعل جمع + فاعل مفرد / He / She / It + المصدر / Inf. / Do / Does + فاعل - Does Mariam listen to music on the bus ?	<b>1. Discussing daily routine</b> مناقشة الروتين اليومي : 1. What time do you get up ? - I get up at ..... 2. How often do you play tennis ? - I usually play tennis. 3. Who do you usually talk to at break time ? - I usually talk to my friends at break time. <b>2. Describing your bedroom and furniture</b> وصف غرفة النوم والأثاث الخاص بك : - Can you describe your bedroom ? - Yes, I can. There are two beds and a big white wardrobe in the corner.

## Questions collected from previous exams

تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Can you tell me about your typical ..... routine ?  
(Dakahlia - West Mansoura 2024)  
a. dairy    b. diary    c. daily    d. deal
- My grandparents live in a ..... of flats.  
(Cairo - East Nasr City 2024)  
a. house    b. black    c. block    d. chest
- He was sent to ..... as he did something wrong.  
(Beni Suef 2024)  
a. school    b. prison    c. garden    d. bank
- There is a grey ..... in my bedroom. I sit on it and read books.  
(Qena - Qena 2024)  
a. bookshelf    b. wardrobe    c. armchair    d. basin
- People put ..... on the windows to keep out the light.  
(Cairo - New Cairo 2024)  
a. carpets    b. floors    c. curtains    d. maps
- Her family were so ..... They couldn't buy her new clothes.  
(Aswan - Nasr El Nuba 2024)  
a. attractive    b. poor    c. beautiful    d. rich
- Can you ..... my mother for me because my phone isn't working ?  
(Alexandria - El Montazah 2024)  
a. text    b. send    c. speak    d. talk
- My brother ..... polite and clever.  
(Cairo - Ain Shams 2024)  
a. always is    b. is always    c. does always    d. always does

- ..... Gamal got a new car ?  
(Ismailia 2023)  
a. Has    b. Does    c. Have    d. Do
  - On Saturday, I usually ..... time with my cousins.  
(Luxor - Toud 2023)  
a. spends    b. spend    c. am spending    d. spending
- ### 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :
- ..... (Do) Ahmed play chess ?  
(Menoufia - Menouf 2024)
  - Soha ..... (never is) late.  
(Gharbia - West Tanta 2024)
  - How often ..... (do) Hassan go to the park ?  
(Suez 2023)
  - I ..... (not have) breakfast before school.  
(Kafr El Sheikh 2023)
  - He ..... (come sometimes) late for school.  
(Sharkia - Abu Kebeer 2023)
  - They ..... (be) usually late.  
(Ismailia 2023)
  - Does Omar usually ..... (comes) to school late ?  
(Sharkia - Qareen 2023)
  - Have you ..... (get) a mobile phone ?  
(Sharkia - Qareen 2023)
  - I ..... (get usually) up late at weekends.  
(Port Said 2023)
  - My sister ..... (don't) helps me with my school work.  
(Qena - Nage Hamadi 2023)

Coming home

# Test

## on unit 1

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه  
يمكنك حل الاختبار  
إلكترونياً وتصويبه

### A. Listening

قم بحل اختبار تراكمي في الملحق

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :



استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Dina is ..... years old.  
a. eleven                      b. twelve                      c. thirty                      d. thirteen
2. Dina is from .....  
a. Egypt                      b. England                      c. USA                      d. France
3. Dina's mother is a/an .....  
a. teacher                      b. doctor                      c. footballer                      d. engineer
4. There are ..... people in Dina's family.  
a. ten                      b. five                      c. eight                      d. three

(Qena-Nage-Hamadi 2023)

### B. Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Jana is describing her house to her friend Judy.

Judy : Do you live in a flat or a house ?

Jana : (1) .....

Judy : (2) ..... ?

Jana : We've got three rooms, a bathroom and a kitchen.

Judy : Have you got a special bedroom in your house ?

Jana : (3) .....

Judy : (4) ..... ?

Jana : I share it with my sister.

Judy : Are there curtains in your room ?

Jana : (5) .....

(Beni Suef-Naser 2023 / Assuit - Manfaloat 2024)

### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My name is Nada. I always get up at half past six. I usually have a shower before I get dressed. I have breakfast with my family. My house is not far from school, so I go to school on foot. I always arrive before the

bell rings. At break, I have some sandwiches and talk to my friends. I play with **them** in the playground. I come back home at about three o'clock. My parents come from work at about three o'clock. I like to help my mum make lunch. After lunch, I do my homework. I usually go to bed at nine o'clock.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Nada's house is not far from her school. It means that her school is ..... the house.  
a. near      b. far      c. big      d. opposite
2. Nada's parents come home at ..... o'clock.  
a. one      b. two      c. three      d. four
3. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to .....  
a. Nada's parents      b. Nada's family  
c. Nada's friends      d. sandwiches

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title to the passage.  
.....

5. What does Nada do at break ?  
.....

6. What do you think of Nada ? Why ?  
.....

(Cairo-West Cairo 2023)

## D. Vocabulary & Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- 1. He washed his face in the ..... after getting up. (Minia - Samalut 2024)  
a. cupboard      b. armchair      c. basin      d. mirror
- 2. This ..... helps me to read in bed at night. (Giza-Hawamdia 2023)  
a. lamb      b. lamp      c. basin      d. curtain
- 3. Doing the same thing every day is called a daily .....  
a. meal      b. routine      c. road      d. threat
- 4. There's a brown ..... on the floor in our living room.  
(Alexandria - East 2020 / Giza - Al Warraq 2023)  
a. window      b. carpet      c. mirror      d. curtain
- 5. My friend is sending me a ..... message on my phone.  
a. research      b. street      c. picnic      d. text

## UNIT ONE

● Understand

● Apply

● Create

- 6. Criminals **المجرمون** must be sent to .....  
 a. university      b. hospital      c. prison      d. school
- 7. The word "attractive" means " ..... "  
 a. ugly      b. beautiful      c. dirty      d. terrible
- 8. **SB** Where does Shahana ..... ?  
 a. lives      b. living      c. to live      d. live
- 9. **WB A** : ..... your father got a computer ? - **B** : Yes, he has.  
 a. Has      b. Have      c. Does      d. Do
- 10. Mona ..... write her lessons at home. *(Cairo - Heliopolis 2024)*  
 a. never      b. doesn't      c. don't      d. isn't

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- 1. Shahana ..... (not live) in the city. *(Alexandria - West Alexandria 2024)*
- 2. **SB** Alex ..... (walk) to school with his brother every day.
- 3. **WB** We have ..... (get) fish or chicken with rice.
- 4. It doesn't ..... (rains) in summer. *(Beheira - Itay El Barud 2023)*

## E. Writing

### 6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Tamer to describe your bedroom. Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is tamer@gmail.com.

*(Sharkia - Awlad Sakr 2024)*

I go to school by bus with my friend Maha. I like music very much and we sometimes listen to it. My parents work at the hospital. Their work is very hard and they get home late, so I often help to make dinner in the evening. I do my homework and read my books on the sofa. I watch TV and text my friend. Then I go to bed at 10 o'clock. (Al-Azhar - Assiat Zone 2024)

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?  
.....
2. How does Mona go to school ?  
.....
3. Do you think that Mona enjoys her daily routine ?  
.....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....  
a. work    b. music    c. breakfast    d. bus
5. Mona gets up at .....  
a. 6:30    b. 7:30    c. 8:30    d. 9:00

**5. Reorder the words to make correct sentences :**

1. get - to - does - How - she - school ?  
.....
2. bookshelf - his - has - on - He - a lamp.  
.....
3. your - people - How many - in - are - family - there ?  
.....
4. bed - the - My - is - window - under.  
.....

**6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about :**

"Your bedroom"

.....  
.....  
.....

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Shahana is from .....  
a. China    b. India    c. Italy    d. England
2. She lives with her .....  
a. aunt    b. brother    c. parents    d. uncle

**2. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :**

Mona is asking Huda about her daily routine.

Mona : Can I ask you some questions ?

Huda : (1) ..... ?

Mona : (2) ..... ?

Huda : I get up at 6 o'clock in the morning.

Mona : What do you do when you get up ?

Huda : (3) ..... .

**3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The ..... is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes.  
a. basin    b. curtain    c. carpet    d. wardrobe
2. People write information about themselves on their .....  
a. profiles    b. lines    c. picnics    d. lives
3. What do you call the ..... who repairs cars ?  
- A mechanic.  
a. research    b. person    c. activity    d. way

4. A : ..... dress is this ? B : - Mariam's.

a. Who    b. How    c. Whose    d. Where

5. He ..... got three children.

a. have    b. has    c. having    d. has to

**4. Read the following, then answer the questions :**

I am Mona. My daily routine is the same every school day. I always get up early at 6:30 in the morning. My mum also gets up early and makes my breakfast. We always have breakfast together.

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Maged : Hi Saleh. Do you have the same routine every day of the week ?

Saleh : (1) .....

- a. No, I won't
- b. Yes, I do
- c. Yes, he does
- d. No, I didn't

Maged : (2) ..... ?

- a. How do you go to school
- b. Where are you
- c. When do you get up
- d. What time do you go to school

Saleh : I go to school at 7:00 am.

Maged : What do you do after school ?

Saleh : (3) .....

- a. I have lunch
- b. We like music
- c. He plays chess
- d. They are at the school

Maged : (4) ..... ?

- a. What do you do in your free time
- b. When are you free
- c. Do you have free time
- d. How often do you go swimming

Saleh : I like to listen to music in my free time.

Maged : Do you like basketball ?

Saleh : (5) .....

- a. No, I didn't
- b. Yes, they do
- c. No, we haven't
- d. Yes, I do

• Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

6. Has ..... (you) got a new bag ?

- a. he
- b. we
- c. they
- d. I

7. How often ..... (are) she go shopping ?

- a. do
- b. have
- c. is
- d. does

8. A : ..... (Where) is your shirt ? B : 100 pounds.

- a. How much
- b. When
- c. How
- d. Who

6. The cat is sitting in the sun ..... (lazy).

- a. lazily
- b. laziness
- c. lazier
- d. laziest



# UNIT TWO

## How are you feeling ?

SB pages 12 : 21    WB pages 79:85

### Unit Objectives :

- **Reading :**  
A text about night workers; descriptions of weekend activities; an article about happiness for teenagers; an informal email
- **Writing :**  
A text to describe a place or a photo; an email to a friend
- **Listening :**  
People talking about learning new skills; descriptions of photos
- **Speaking :**  
Describing weekend activities; describing photos; responding to news
- **Language :**  
Adverbs of manner
- **Life Skills :**  
Empathy
- **Values :**  
Patience
- **Issues :**  
Social participation



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

ward (n)	جناح / عنبر (فى مستشفى)	calligraphy (n)	فن الخط
food stall (n)	كشك لبيع الطعام [مكان لبيع الطعام فى الهواء الطلق]	sewing (n)	الخباطة / الحياكة
park (ed) (v) , (n)	يركن (سيارة) - حديقة عامة	sign language (n)	لغة الإشارة
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل / يتصل	deaf (adj)	أصم [لا يسمع]
		repair (ed) (v)	يصلح



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

communicate - repair - sign language - food stall - ward

1. Samar works as a doctor in the children's ..... in El Salam Hospital.
2. I bought some biscuits from a ..... on the street corner.
3. My car broke down. Can you ..... it, please ?
4. Deaf people use ..... to communicate together.

### Jobs وظائف

call-centre worker (n)	موظف مركز اتصالات	shop worker (n)	عامل / بائع فى محل
computer engineer (n)	مهندس كمبيوتر [حاسبات]	street-food seller (n)	بائع طعام متجول [فى الشارع]
nurse (n)	ممرضة / ممرضة	cook (n)	طباخ
police officer (n)	ضابط شرطة	artist (n)	فنان / رسام

### Lesson 1

SB pages 12 & 13    WB page 79

school trip (n)	رحلة مدرسية	climb (ed) (v)	يتسلق
patients (n)	المرضى	tired (adj)	مُتعب
tourists (n)	سائحون	wave (d) (v)	يلوح [بيده]

happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	fountain (n)	نافورة
tonight (adv)	الليلة	keyboard (n)	لوحة مفاتيح

**Lesson 2**

SB pages 14 &amp; 15 WB page 80

quite (adv)	إلى حد ما	imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل
surprise (n)	مفاجأة	sail (ed) (v)	يبحر [بالقارب]
traditional (adj)	تقليدي	painting (n)	دهان / تلوين - لوحة فنية
neighbour (n)	جار	art club (n)	نادي الفنون
falafel (n)	فلافل [طعمية]	lovely (adj)	جميل
skill (n)	مهارة	dance (d) (v)	يرقص

**Conjugation of Irregular Verbs**

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

<b>Present</b> المضارع	<b>Past</b> الماضي	<b>P.P.</b> التصريف الثالث
drive يقود [سيارة]	drove	driven
understand يفهم	understood	understood
sew يخط	sewed	sewn
stand يقف	stood	stood
catch يلحق بـ / يصطاد	caught	caught

**Study these definitions**

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>park</b>	put a car, lorry, van, etc. in a place where it can stay for a period of time يركن [سيارة]
<b>sign language</b>	a way of talking to people who cannot hear, using hands instead of words لغة الإشارة
<b>ward</b>	a large room in a hospital for people who need to stay in the hospital for one night or more عنبر في مستشفى
<b>street-food seller</b>	a person who prepares or sells food in the street, sometimes from a van or stall بائع طعام متجول [في الشارع]
<b>police officer</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>this person helps to keep people safe in the streets</li> <li>a male or female member of the police ضابط شرطة</li> </ul>
<b>call-centre worker</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a person who works in a big office in which people speak to customers on the phone</li> <li>this person speaks to people on the phone. He or she helps them with their problems موظف في مركز اتصالات</li> </ul>

## UNIT TWO

<b>shop worker</b>	this person helps in a place which sells things	عامل في محل
<b>computer engineer</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• you call this person if there is a problem with your computer system</li> <li>• a person who mends or works with computers</li> </ul>	مهندس كمبيوتر [حاسبات]
<b>calligraphy</b>	beautiful writing using special pens or brushes	فن الخط
<b>communicate</b>	share information with others by speaking, writing or in other ways	يتواصل / يتصل
<b>deaf</b>	not able to hear anything or not able to hear well	أصم [لا يسمع]
<b>food stall</b>	a large table or open shop in the street where people cook and sell food	كشك طعام [في الشارع]
<b>look forward to</b>	feel pleased and excited about something that is going to happen	ينتظر إلى / يتمنى
<b>make sure</b>	take special care and attention to do something	يتأكد من

### Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms		مترادفات ومتضادات
Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
busy مشغول / مزدحم	crowded	empty فارغ
safe آمن	protected	dangerous خطير
lazy كسول	inactive غير نشط	active نشيط
bored شاعر بالملل	uninterested	excited منفعل / متحمس

Prefixes & Suffixes		مقاطع بادئة ونهاية
Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	أمثلة Examples
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	building بناء
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم فاعل	seller بائع worker عامل
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	traditional تقليدي
-ly	تحول الاسم أو الفعل إلى صفة	lovely جميل - محبوب
-ous	تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	dangerous خطير



## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- To turn the verb "love" into an adjective, we add ".....".  
a. -ity      b. -al      c. -le      d. -ly
- The antonym of the word "safe" is ".....".  
a. protected      b. secure      c. dangerous      d. useful
- The words "bored" and "uninterested" are .....  
a. antonyms      b. synonyms      c. opposites      d. pronouns
- The place is very busy. This means it is .....  
a. free      b. crowded      c. distant      d. far



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 feel + صفة

▶ **SB** I'm feeling tired tonight.

يشعر ويتبعها صفة

(SB page 13)

### 2 look forward to + (noun / inf. + ing)

▶ - **SB** I'm looking forward to going home and having a rest.  
- Sara is looking forward to her weekend.

يتطلع إلى / يتمنى أن

(SB page 13)

### 3 quite - quiet

\* quite (adv)

▶ **SB** At the weekend, Ziad's usually quite lazy.

تماماً / إلى حد ما

(SB page 14)

\* quiet (adj)

▶ Please, be quiet during the lesson.

هادئ

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
go on a school trip      يذهب في رحلة مدرسية	drive around the city يتجول حول المدينة [بالسيارة]
make sure      يتأكد	sit by      يجلس بجانب
have a rest      يأخذ قسطاً من الراحة	stay at      يملك / يظل بـ
have a big dinner      يتناول وجبة عشاء دسمة	make for      يصنع من أجل ...
give a surprise      يفاجئ	communicate with [شخص]      يتواصل مع [شخص]
catch fish      بصطاد سمكاً	tins of      علب من
get everything ready      يجهز كل شيء	look for      يبحث عن



## Main points on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## on Lesson 1 SB page 13

1. Amal is a nurse. She is looking after **patients**<sup>(1)</sup> at a hospital.
2. She is looking after children in the children's **ward**<sup>(2)</sup>.
3. She is feeling tired tonight, so she is looking forward to having a rest.
4. Emad and Adel are police officers.
5. They are driving around the city.
6. They are making sure that people are safe in the streets.
7. Kamal is a **street food seller**<sup>(3)</sup>.
8. He is parking his food stall in the best place in the city.
9. Lots of people and **tourists**<sup>(4)</sup> come this way.
10. He is getting everything ready for people to buy their breakfast.

## on Lesson 2 SB page 14

## Ziad

1. Ziad lives with his parents.
2. They live in a small flat in Minya.

3. On Friday evening, Ziad and his parents usually have a big dinner with grandparents.

4. On Saturday morning, Ziad often stays in bed.

5. Ziad's grandmother is a fantastic **cook**<sup>(5)</sup>!

6. In the afternoon, Ziad does his homework.

## Injy &amp; Aya

7. Injy and her sister Aya live near the sea.

8. Their father and uncle are repairing their old **boat**<sup>(6)</sup>.

9. On Saturday, they spend time with their father and uncle on their boat.

## on Lesson 2 SB page 15

## Tamer, Eman &amp; Manal

1. Tamer is learning a new skill.
2. He is learning sign language to communicate better with his cousin.
3. Sami is deaf - he can't hear.

4. On Saturday morning, Tamer is having **sign language**<sup>(7)</sup> lessons.

5. Tamer wants to give his cousin Sami a **surprise**<sup>(8)</sup>.

6. At the weekend, Eman is learning to do lots of new things.

7. Mr Osman is Eman's **neighbour**<sup>(9)</sup>.

8. Mr Osman is in the hospital now.

9. Eman and some other neighbours are repairing Mr Osman's flat, painting the kitchen and **sewing**<sup>(10)</sup> new curtains.

10. Manal is starting a **calligraphy**<sup>(11)</sup> and art club at school.

11. Manal's uncle is an artist and he is coming to the school to teach them.

12. They are studying traditional Arabic calligraphy.

13. Manal is making a calligraphy book for her uncle as a present.

(1) المرضي	(2) جناح/عنبر	(3) بائع طعام مشدول
(4) سياح	(5) طباط	(6) قارب
(7) لغة إشارة	(8) مفاجأة	(9) جار
(10) خيط/خيطك	(11) فن الخط	

## تتوية :

الجمال السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية أخرى:

\* Learning new skills \* Night workers \* The job of (a nurse - street food seller - police officer) \* Your family's daily routine

## II

## Skills

## ? Reading and Listening

## Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الفهم  
ونصوص الاستماع



## Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 13

## 3 am in Cairo

**A:** I'm **looking after**<sup>(1)</sup> patients at a hospital.  
It's very busy. I'm looking after children in  
the children's ward. I like my job, but I'm  
feeling tired tonight. I'm **looking forward**  
**to**<sup>(2)</sup> going home and **having a rest**<sup>(3)</sup>.

**Amal**

**B:** We're **driving around the city**<sup>(4)</sup> and making  
**sure**<sup>(5)</sup> that people are safe in the streets.  
We aren't very busy tonight. It's cold so  
everyone is staying at home. Adel's **feeling**  
**a bit bored**<sup>(6)</sup> and I'm feeling hungry.  
I'm looking forward to having breakfast!

**Emad and Adel**

**C:** I'm parking my food stall here because it's the best place  
in the city. Lots of people and tourists come this way.  
People start to buy their breakfast at 6 am. I'm **getting**  
**everything ready**<sup>(7)</sup>. I'm feeling cold and I'm looking  
forward to drinking some hot coffee!

**Kamal**



(1) يعتني بـ

(2) يتطلع إلى

(3) يستريح

(4) يتجول حول  
المدينة (بالسيارة)

(5) يتأكد من

(6) يشعر بالملل قليلاً

(7) يجهز كل شيء

## Answer

the following  
questions :

## - Extracting information

## Learn

1. Why is Kamal parking his food stall at this place ?

- Because it is the best place in the city, lots of people  
and tourists come this way.

## Practise

2. What is Kamal looking forward to ?

استخراج معلومات



## Listening



on Lesson 1 WB page 79

1

**Man 1** : I'm sorry, sir, but you can't leave your car here.

2

**Woman 1** : There seems to be a **problem with**<sup>(1)</sup> the keyboard, but it won't take me long.

3

**Woman 2** : Good morning, this is Dina speaking, how can I help you ?

4

**Man 2** : Are you **looking for**<sup>(2)</sup> **tins of**<sup>(3)</sup> beans ? You can find them **on the top shelf**<sup>(4)</sup>, over there.

**Answers** : 1. police officer  
2. computer engineer  
3. call-centre worker  
4. shop worker



(1) مشكلة بـ (2) يبحث عن (3) علب من (4) على الرف الأعلى



## Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 14



Hi, I'm Ziad. I live with my mum and dad in a small flat in Minya. **At the weekend**<sup>(1)</sup>, I'm usually quite lazy. **b d**



Hello, I'm Injy and this is my sister Aya. We live near the sea. **a c**

(1) في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

**b** On Friday evening, my parents and I usually **have a big dinner with**<sup>(2)</sup> my grandparents and we sometimes stay at their house. It's bigger than our flat.

**d** On Saturday morning, I often **stay in bed**<sup>(3)</sup> and then I have a late breakfast with my grandmother - she's a fantastic cook! In the afternoon, I do my homework.

**a** My father and my uncle have an old boat which they are repairing. I am learning to sail but Aya doesn't like the water very much!

**c** At the weekend, we do our homework and on Saturday we sometimes **spend time with**<sup>(4)</sup> our father and uncle **on their boat**<sup>(5)</sup>.

(2) يتناول وجبة عشاء دسمة مع (3) يبقى في الفراش (4) يقضي وقتاً مع (5) في القارب



## Listening

• on Lesson 2 SB page 15

**Tamer :** I'm Tamer. At the moment I'm learning a new **skill**<sup>(1)</sup>. I'm learning **sign language**<sup>(2)</sup> so I can **communicate**<sup>(3)</sup> better with my cousin Sami. Sami is **deaf**<sup>(4)</sup> - he can't hear. He's learning sign language at school, too. I'm having sign language lessons on Saturday morning so I can give Sami a **surprise**<sup>(5)</sup>!

**Eman :** I'm Eman. At the weekend, I'm learning to do lots of new things. Our **neighbour**<sup>(6)</sup>, Mr Osman, is in hospital at the moment. With some other neighbours in our **building**<sup>(7)</sup>, we're **repairing**<sup>(8)</sup> his **flat**<sup>(9)</sup>. He lives in a lovely flat, but he can't look after it at the moment. My sisters and I are **painting**<sup>(10)</sup> the kitchen and I am also **sewing**<sup>(11)</sup> some new curtains.



مهارة (1)	لغة الإشارة (2)	يتواصل (3)	أصم (لا يسمع) (4)	مفاجأة (5)	جار (6)
مبنى (7)	يصلح (8)	شقة (9)	يدهن (10)	يخطط / يديك (11)	

## UNIT TWO

**Manal** : I'm Manal. Mona and I are starting a **calligraphy**<sup>(12)</sup> and **art club**<sup>(13)</sup> at school. We're very excited about it. My uncle is an **artist**<sup>(14)</sup> and he's coming to the school to teach us. We're studying **traditional**<sup>(15)</sup> Arabic calligraphy and we're enjoying it very much. I'm making a calligraphy book for my uncle as a **present**<sup>(16)</sup>.



(12) فن الخط (13) نادى الفنون (14) فنان / رسام (15) تقليدى (16) هدية



### Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### Key vocabulary

- The ..... use sign language to communicate with each other.  
a. blind                      b. deaf                      c. young                      d. rich
- If there is a problem with my computer system, I call a .....  
a. nurse                      b. shop worker  
c. computer engineer                      d. police officer
- The street-food seller sells his food in the street in a food .....  
a. stool                      b. stall                      c. stick                      d. stock
- Our computer doesn't work so we need a computer engineer to ..... it.  
a. prepare                      b. repair                      c. stay                      d. park
- Sama wants to improve her handwriting so she is learning .....  
a. history                      b. geography                      c. calligraphy                      d. science

#### SB , WB & Previous Exams

- Some ill people need to stay in a/an ..... in hospital for one night or more.  
a. word                      b. ward                      c. stall                      d. fountain  
(Suez - North Suez 2024)
- SB** My grandmother is a fantastic ..... Her food is delicious.  
a. teacher                      b. doctor                      c. cook                      d. nurse

8. **WB** It is usually easy to ..... with people in other countries if you can speak English. *(Multidisciplinary - Cairo - New Cairo 2021)*

- a. correct      b. communicate      c. sweep      d. clean

### El-Moasser Exercises

9. There's a lovely ..... in the middle of our garden. Its water sounds clear.

- a. food stall      b. sewing machine  
c. fountain      d. keyboard

10. You can learn calligraphy at the ..... club.

- a. art      b. tools      c. sports      d. circus

11. There are four ..... in the English language : reading, writing, speaking and listening.

- a. skills      b. presents      c. clubs      d. awards

### ► Definitions

12. A ..... is a person who helps people in a place which sells things.

*(Fayoum - East Fayoum 2024)*

- a. cell-centre worker      b. computer engineer  
c. shop worker      d. street food seller

13. A ..... prepares food for people to eat in the street.

- a. computer engineer      b. street - food seller  
c. shop worker      d. police officer

14. A/An ..... usually drives around the city to keep people safe in the streets.

- a. shop worker      b. police officer      c. teacher      d. engineer

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. If you are tired, why don't you ..... a rest ?

- a. make      b. do      c. have      d. are

16. Mona ..... forwards to visiting Al-Azhar Park next week.

- a. takes      b. looks      c. gives      d. makes

## 2. Speaking

### مهارة التحدث

#### 1. Asking and answering questions about the weekend

١. توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. What do you usually do at the weekend ? ١. ماذا تفعل عادة في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	- At the weekend, I usually get up early. - في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع عادة ما أستيقظ مبكراً.
2. How do you feel at the weekend ? ٢. كيف تشعر في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	- I feel excited and active. - أشعر بالحماس والنشاط.
3. Whose weekend activities would you prefer to do, Ziad's or Injy's ? Why ? ٣. أى من أنشطة عطلة نهاية الأسبوع تفضلها، أنشطة زياد أم أنشطة إنجي ؟ ولماذا ؟	- I'd prefer to do Injy's activities because I don't like to be lazy. - أفضل أن أقوم بأنشطة إنجي لأنني لا أحب أن أكون كسولاً.

#### 2. Describing weekend activities

٢. وصف أنشطة عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

1. On Friday evening, my parents and I usually have a big dinner with my grandparents. ١. في مساء يوم الجمعة، أنا ووالداي عادة ما نتناول وجبة عشاء دسمة مع أجدادي.
2. At the weekend, I'm learning to do lots of new things. ٢. في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، أتعلم أن أقوم بالعديد من الأشياء الجديدة.
3. At the weekend, we sometimes spend time with my uncle at his house. ٣. في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، نقضي أحياناً الوقت مع عمي بمنزله.

## 3. Writing

### مهارة الكتابة

أشخاص مختلفة في أسرتك "Different people in your family"

1. Dad is looking after patients at a hospital. He is busy. He is feeling tired.  
١. مربية.
2. Mum is cooking in the kitchen. She's wearing an apron.
3. My brother is a policeman. He is wearing a uniform.
4. My sister is helping mum at home.

## III

## Language

## Remember تذكر

## 1. The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

## Formation التكوين

1

## Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة

I am  
He / She / It / فاعل مفرد + is + inf. المصدر + ing  
We / You / They / فاعل جمع are

- ex. - Manal and Mona **are studying** calligraphy.  
- Sami **is learning** sign language at school.  
- I'm **sitting** in my English class now.

2

## Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المنفية

I am  
He / She / It / فاعل مفرد + is + not + (inf. المصدر + ing)  
We / You / They / فاعل جمع are

- ex. - She **is not learning** English at the moment.  
- They **are not playing** tennis now.

3

## Interrogative

صيغة  
الاستفهام

## (A) Yes/No question : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

Am I  
Is + he / she / it / فاعل مفرد + inf. المصدر + ing ..?  
Are we / you / they / فاعل جمع

- ex. - **Is she helping** sick people at present ?  
\* Yes, she is. \* No, she isn't.  
ex. - **Are they growing** potatoes now ?  
\* Yes, they are. \* No, they aren't.

## (B) Wh-question : (ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word + is + subject  
+ (inf. المصدر + ing) ...?  
كلمة الاستفهام are الفاعل

- ex. - Where **are you working** now ?  
\* I'm working in Cairo.

## Usage الاستخدام

يعبر هذا الزمن عن حدث يقع أثناء التحدث [لحظة الكلام].

ex. - They **are designing** a new library now.

يستخدم هذا الزمن أيضًا لوصف أحداث مخطط لها في المستقبل.

ex. - We **are going** to Aswan tomorrow.

- They **are having** a party tonight.

## ملاحظات على إضافة (ing) للفعل

عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف الـ [e] غير منطوق [قبلة حرف ساكن] تحذف [e] قبل إضافة [ing] أما إذا كان حرف [e] منطوقًا لا تحذف ويضاف [ing].

write → writing

practise → practising

see → seeing

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبقًا بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة [ing] [بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد].

swim → swimming

sit → sitting

لاحظ أنه لا نضاعف الحرف الأخير إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف ساكن مسبقًا بحرفين متحركين.

feed → feeding

wait → waiting

إذا انتهى الفعل بـ [ie] تحول إلى [y] قبل إضافة [ing].

lie → lying

die → dying

## Key words كلمات دالة

غالبًا تأتي مع الزمن :

now	الآن	Take care !	احذر!	at the moment	في تلك اللحظة
Look !	انظر!	still	مازال	at present	في الوقت الحاضر
Listen !	انصت!	tonight	في هذه الليلة	Look out ! / Watch out !	احترس !

ex. - Listen! She's singing.

- He is working now.

## 2. The present simple tense : زمن المضارع البسيط :

تم شرحه في الوحدة الأولى

ex. - We **usually stay** at home when it's cold.

- She **sometimes listens** to the radio.

- **Do** you **like** milk ? - No, I don't.

- **Does** she **go** to school early ? - Yes, she **does**.

### 3. The difference between the present continuous and the present simple : الاختلاف بين زمن المضارع المستمر وزمن المضارع البسيط :

We use the present simple for :

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط في :

1. **habits** العادات  
- I always **drink** milk for breakfast.
2. **routines and repeated actions** الروتين والأحداث المتكررة  
- We **go** to school every day.
3. **things that are always true.** الأشياء التي دائماً ما تكون صحيحة [معلومة صحيحة]  
- My aunt **lives** in Cairo.
4. **facts** الحقائق خاصة الحقائق العلمية والقوانين المرتبطة بالكون والطبيعة  
- The sun **rises** in the east.

We use the present continuous for :

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر في :

1. **things happening now** الأشياء التي تحدث الآن  
- I **am sitting** in my English class.
2. **unfinished actions in progress around now.** أحداث غير منتهية ومستمرة حتى الآن  
- My sister **is learning** to swim.
3. **temporary situations or actions.** أحداث أو مواقف مؤقتة  
- They **are painting** the school this week.



## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. They are still ..... the story. (Cairo - Ain Shams 2024)  
a. read                      b. reading                      c. to read                      d. reads
2. When ..... she doing her homework ? (Cairo - Heliopolis 2024)  
a. is                      b. are                      c. am                      d. were
3. I ..... English at the moment. (Beni Suef - Ahnasea 2023)  
a. study                      b. am studying                      c. will study                      d. studied
4. **WB** How often do you ..... dinner ?  
a. makes                      b. make                      c. making                      d. made

## UNIT TWO

5. **SB** What is Manal ..... for her uncle ?  
a. make                      b. makes                      c. made                      d. making

### El-Moasser Exercises

6. I always go to school on foot, but now I ..... the bus.  
a. takes                      b. take                      c. taking                      d. am taking
7. What game ..... at the moment ?  
a. did you play                      b. are you playing  
c. are playing                      d. do you play
8. We usually ..... up early every day.  
a. get                      b. getting                      c. gets                      d. are getting
9. Look ! They ..... fast.  
a. ran                      b. running                      c. are running                      d. runs
10. Listen ! Sama ..... the piano.  
a. is playing                      b. played                      c. plays                      d. play

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. Watch out ! The car ..... (come) fast. *(Beheira - Kom Hamada 2024)*
2. **SB** Who are ..... (drive) around the city ?
3. **WB** I can't come to the park because I'm cleaning my room ..... (yesterday).
4. **WB** On Saturday, I usually ..... (spending) time with my cousins.
5. It's ..... (rain) now. I advise you to take an umbrella.

*(Beni Suef - Sumusta 2023)*

### El-Moasser Exercises

6. I can't help you now. I'm ..... (do) my work.
7. My mother ..... (not cook) at the moment.
8. They never ..... (walks) to school.
9. Dalia ..... (not study) on Fridays.
10. What ..... (you do) now ?

## Speaking & Writing Corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة  
Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues  
قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

**80 Dialogues    80 Paragraphs & E-mails**

Step 1	Vocabulary	Step 2	Speaking	Step 3	Writing
<p>اختر اتفاقاً للمفردات اللغوية</p> <p><b>Read and complete :</b></p> <p>1. What do you usually do at the weekend ? - I usually ..... at the weekend. <i>يرسم</i></p> <p>2. Do you go to the ..... ? - Yes, I do. <i>نادي الفنون</i></p> <p>3. How do you feel when you paint ? - I feel ..... when I paint pictures. <i>متحمس</i></p>	<p>اختر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة</p> <p><b>Write a paragraph on :</b></p> <p>"Your weekend activities"</p>	<p><b>Complete the following dialogue :</b></p> <p>Marwa asks Dareen about her weekend activities.</p> <p><b>Marwa :</b> How was your last weekend ?</p> <p><b>Dareen :</b> (1) .....</p> <p><b>Marwa :</b> What do you usually do at the weekend ?</p> <p><b>Dareen :</b> (2) .....</p> <p><b>Marwa :</b> (3) ..... ?</p> <p><b>Dareen :</b> I usually like to paint flowers.</p> <p><b>Marwa :</b> Do you go to the art club ?</p> <p><b>Dareen :</b> (4) .....</p> <p><b>Marwa :</b> (5) ..... ?</p> <p><b>Dareen :</b> I feel excited when I paint pictures.</p>	<p><b>Hatem interviews a street-food seller.</b></p> <p><b>Hatem :</b> What do you do ?</p> <p><b>Iyad :</b> (1) .....</p> <p><b>Hatem :</b> What do you cook ?</p> <p><b>Iyad :</b> (2) .....</p> <p><b>Hatem :</b> (3) ..... ?</p> <p><b>Iyad :</b> I park my food stall in Maadi.</p> <p><b>Hatem :</b> (4) ..... ?</p> <p><b>Iyad :</b> I cook traditional Egyptian food because tourists there like it.</p> <p><b>Hatem :</b> Do you like your job ?</p> <p><b>Iyad :</b> (5) ..... I like to cook food for people.</p>	<p><b>"Night workers"</b></p>	

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 1 & 2

● Understand    ● Apply    ○ Create

### 1 Complete the following dialogue :

Youssif is asking Mohammed about his father's job.

Youssif : Hi, Mohammed. What does your father do ?

Mohammed : (1) .....

Youssif : (2) .....

Mohammed : He works in a big hospital in Cairo.

Youssif : (3) .....

Mohammed : He examines patients and gives them medicine.

Youssif : Does he like helping the poor ?

Mohammed : (4) .....

Youssif : Do you like to be a doctor, too ?

Mohammed : (5) .....

(Kafr El-Sheikh - Sidi Salim 2024)

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

All of us should respect night workers. There are many hard jobs that the workers have to stay all the night without sleeping, such as nurses, call center workers and policemen.

Nurses stay late at night without sleeping in hospitals to look after their patients. They treat sick people kindly to get better. Call center workers also have to stay all the night on phones. If anyone has a problem, the call center worker receives the phone call **kindly** trying to solve the problem. Policemen are very important for our life. They stay all the night standing in streets to make sure that we are safe in our beds. All thanks and respect to night workers for their great effort.

(Giza - El Haram 2024)

#### a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The call center workers receive our problems by .....  
a. letters      b. phones      c. e-mails      d. presents
- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to .....  
a. nurses      b. teachers      c. doctors      d. engineers
- The word of "**kindly**" means in a/an ..... way.  
a. friendly      b. ugly      c. tasty      d. badly

#### b. Answer the following questions :

- What is the main idea of the passage ?  
.....
- Why do nurses stay late at night without sleeping ?  
.....
- Do you think that night worker's jobs are hard ? Why ?  
.....

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Deaf people use ..... language to communicate with each other. *(The New Valley - Al-Kharga 2024)*  
 a. song                      b. signal                      c. sign                      d. English
2. I want to ..... my phone. It is broken. *(Assiut - Monfloat 2023)*  
 a. wave                      b. drive                      c. meet                      d. repair
3. He is ..... , so he can't hear you.  
 a. blind                      b. deaf                      c. tired                      d. lazy
4. Please, ..... sure that you answer your questions correctly.  
 a. take                      b. make                      c. stay                      d. spend
5. There is a beautiful ..... in my uncle's garden.  
 a. fountain                      b. temple                      c. museum                      d. calligraphy
6. Mum is a fantastic ..... ! She prepares delicious food for us to eat every day.  
 a. doctor                      b. nurse                      c. cook                      d. farmer
7. She's a/an ..... . Her painting is very lovely. *(Qena - Nag Hammadi 2024)*  
 a. cook                      b. singer                      c. engineer                      d. artist
8. **SB** Why is Kamal ..... his food stall at this place ?  
 a. park                      b. parks                      c. parking                      d. parked
9. **WB** Nabila feels ill, so she ..... in bed this morning.  
 a. stay                      b. stays                      c. is staying                      d. to stay
10. **WB** The police officer ..... a school today, but he usually drives around the street.  
 a. visits                      b. is visiting                      c. visited                      d. visit

### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The mechanic ..... (repair) the car at the moment. *(Menofia - Menouf 2024)*
2. It ..... (not rain) outside now. *(Giza - Agooza 2023)*
3. **SB** At the weekend, I usually ..... (getting up) early.
4. **WB** What is Emad ..... (eat) ?

### 5 Write an email of about NINETY(90) words on :

محباب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Ahmed to tell him about night workers. Your name is Hady and your email address is hady@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ahmed@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

guest (n)	ضيف / نزيل	alone (adv)	بمفرده
port (n)	ميناء	striped (adj)	مخطط / مُقَلَّم
airport (n)	مطار	pattern (n)	نموذج / شكل مرسوم
suitcase (n)	حقيرة سفر	hanging (adj)	معلق
wedding (n)	حفل زفاف	teenager (n)	مراهق
suit (ed)(v), (n)	يناسب - يلائم / بدلة	grateful (adj)	ممتن / شاكر
weeding (n)	إزالة الأعشاب الضارة [من الأرض الزراعية]	skin (n)	جلد [بشرى أو حيوانى]
<b>Adverbs ظروف</b>			
excitedly	بحماس / بانفعال	quietly	بهدهوء
happily	بسعادة	quickly	بسرعة
hungrily	بشراهة	lazily	بكسل
loudly	بصوت عالٍ	easily	بسهولة
slowly	ببطء	carefully	بحرص / بعناية
<b>Famous places أماكن مشهورة</b>			
Al Azhar Park (n)	حديقة الأزهر	Umm al-Sultan Shaban Mosque (n)	مسجد أم السلطان شعبان



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

wedding - airport - teenagers - grateful

1. We are very ..... to you for your help.
2. Soha's ..... party was great. We enjoyed a lot.
3. People whose ages are from 13 to 19 are called .....

### Lesson 3

SB pages 16 & 17

WB page 81

treat (ed) (v)	يعامل - يعالج	crowds (n)	زحام من الناس - حشد
sharp (adj)	حاد	rocks (n)	صخور

invite (d) (v)	يدعو	shopping bags (n)	أكياس التسوق
husband (n)	زوج	sweet (adj)	لطيف / جميل / حلو [المذاق]
playground (n)	ملعب / فناء	foreground (n)	مقدمة
football team (n)	فريق كرة القدم	background (n)	خلفية

**Lesson 4**

SB page 18 WB page 82

happiness (n)	سعادة	magazine (n)	مجلة
worried (adj)	قلق	continue (d) (v)	يستمر
pleased (adj)	مسرور	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح

**Conjugation of Irregular Verbs**

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

<b>Present</b> المضارع	<b>Past</b> الماضي	<b>P.P.</b> التصريف الثالث
speak يتحدث / يتكلم	spoke	spoken
choose يختار	chose	chosen
sing يغنى	sang	sung

**Study these definitions**

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>teenager</b>	a boy or girl aged 13 – 19	مراهق
<b>normal</b>	usual, not different	طبيعي
<b>alone</b>	not with other people	بمفرده
<b>grateful</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>feeling and showing that you want to thank someone because of what they have done or given you</li> <li>feeling happy about the good things in your life</li> </ul>	ممتن / شاكر
<b>in the background</b>	the part that seems furthest to you in a picture or photograph	في الخلفية
<b>in the foreground</b>	the part that seems nearest to you in a picture or photograph	في المقدمة
<b>sharp</b>	having a thin edge or point that can cut something or make a hole in something	حاد
<b>striped</b>	with long narrow lines of colour that are a different colour from the areas next to them	مخطط / مقلّم
<b>towards</b>	in the direction of, or closer to somebody / something	تجاه
<b>wedding</b>	a ceremony احتفال in which people get married	حفل زفاف
<b>careless</b>	not paying enough attention to what you are doing	مهمل

## Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms		مترادفات ومتضادات
Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
dark غامق اللون	–	light فاتح اللون
wrong خاطيء / مخطئ	incorrect	right - correct صحيح/ على حق
remember يتذكر	recall	forget ينسى
normal طبيعي	usual	abnormal غير طبيعي
get on يركب وسيلة مواصلات	–	get off ينزل من وسيلة مواصلات
friendly ودود	kind	unfriendly غير ودود

Prefixes & Suffixes		مقاطع بادئة ونهاية
Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
un–	تعطى عكس المعنى	unfriendly غير ودود
ab–	تعطى عكس المعنى	abnormal غير طبيعي
–ful	تحول الاسم أو الفعل إلى صفة	careful حريص
–ly	تكوّن الصفة من الاسم	friendly ودود
–ness	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	happiness سعادة



## Exercise

## on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Everyone here has been very friendly towards us. The synonym of the word "friendly" is ".....".  
 a. kind                      b. ugly                      c. lazy                      d. sad
- To get the noun from the adjective happy, we add ".....".  
 a. -ful                      b. -able                      c. -ity                      d. -ness
- When something is incorrect, this means it is .....  
 a. sad                      b. happy                      c. correct                      d. wrong
- "Remember" and "forget" are .....  
 a. the same                      b. synonyms                      c. opposites                      d. nouns
- To give the opposite of the adjective "normal", we add the prefix "....." in the beginning.  
 a. ab-                      b. un-                      c. dis-                      d. re-



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 alone / lonely

\* **alone** (adv)

وحيداً - بمفرده

▶ He lives **alone**.

\* **lonely** (adj)

وحيداً - حزيناً

▶ He has no friends. He feels **lonely**.

(SB page 18)

### 2 (older / elder) (oldest - eldest)

\* **older**

أكبر سناً أو أقدم من تستخدم لوصف الأشخاص والأشياء

▶ - Basem is **older** than Mohammed.

- My car is **older** than Ayman's car.

\* **elder**

أكبر سناً تستخدم لوصف الناس فقط [وخصوصاً داخل العائلة]

▶ My **elder** brother is an engineer.

\* **elders** (n)

كبار السن

**لاحظ :** يمكن استخدام elder كاسم بينما لا يمكن استخدام older [كاسم] وتستخدم كصفة.

▶ Be polite and respect your **elders**.

\* **oldest**

الأكبر سناً / الأقدم تستخدم لوصف الأشياء والأشخاص على حد سواء.

▶ The Pyramids are the **oldest** structures in Egypt.

- Soha is the **oldest** girl in the school.

\* **eldest**

الأكبر سناً تستخدم لوصف الأشخاص فقط [خصوصاً : محيط الأسرة]

▶ **SB** My **eldest** sister Reem is sitting in front of the tree.

(SB page 17)

### Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
get married	يتزوج
get texts from	يتسلم رسائل نصية من
do exciting things	يقوم بأشياء رائعة
down the hill	أسفل التل
make new friends	يكون صداقات جديدة
take a selfie	يلتقط صورة بالكاميرا الأمامية للهاتف
as usual	كالمعتاد
do something kind	يفعل شيئاً جيداً / طيباً
catch a plane	يلحق بالطائرة
feel pleased	يشعر بالسُرور
smile at	يتسّم لـ
get on a plane	يصعد إلى متن الطائرة
in the background	في الخلفية
in the foreground of	في مقدمة
in the middle of	في وسط
towards the right	تجاه اليمين
on the left	على جهة اليسار
laugh at	يسخر من
be grateful for	يكون شاكر أو ممتن لـ ...
for the first time	للمرة الأولى



## Main points on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## Lesson [3] SB page 16

## Picture 1

1. This is a photo of my sister's wedding<sup>(1)</sup>.
2. The guests<sup>(2)</sup> are slowly leaving.
3. Most of the family are still there enjoying the party.
4. My sister and her husband are smiling happily at the camera.

## Picture 2

1. That is my class on the school trip<sup>(3)</sup> to the mountains.
2. We are sitting carefully on the rocks.
3. I'm sitting under a tree and hungrily eating my lunch.

## Picture 3

1. I am at the airport<sup>(4)</sup> and waiting excitedly to get on the plane.
2. My sister is taking a photo while my parents are quickly buying some sandwiches.

## Picture 4

1. This is my aunt's new baby.
2. She is laughing loudly because she can see the cat.
3. She always laughs when she sees the cat.

## Lesson [3] SB page 17

1. This is a photo of my family in Al Azhar Park in Cairo.
2. My mother and sisters are sitting under a tree in the foreground<sup>(5)</sup> of the photo.
3. In the background<sup>(6)</sup>, there is a mosque.
4. My sister Talia is in the middle of the picture.
5. She is taking a selfie as usual.

## Lesson [3] SB page 18

1. Happiness<sup>(7)</sup> for teenagers<sup>(8)</sup> is very important.
2. It is normal to get worried or feel sad sometimes.
3. There are five things that can help teenagers feel happy.
4. Teenagers should get lots of rest.
5. Young people should sleep eight to ten hours a night.
6. They should make friends because this makes them happy.
7. Teenagers should go outside because people need nature to be happy.
8. Teenagers should do something kind for someone else.
9. Teenagers should be grateful<sup>(9)</sup> and they should remember good things in life.

## Lesson [4] WB page 82

## Osama is writing about his problem to Help ! Magazine.

1. Osama is a normal teenager but he often feels worried about things.
2. He stays at home and does homework and gets texts<sup>(10)</sup> from his friends.
3. They are all doing exciting things.
4. He does well at school and he enjoys his weekends with his family.

(1) حفل زفاف	(2) ضيوف	(3) رحلة	(4) مطار
(5) في مقدمة الصورة	(6) في خلفية الصورة	(7) السعادة	(8) المرئيين
(9) متن/اشكر	(10) رسائل نصية		

تتويج : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية أخرى:

\* Describe a photo of (a trip - a wedding)

\* Happiness for teenagers

تتويج :

\* Teenagers' problems

## II

## Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening



## Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 16

**Girl 1 :** This is a photo of my sister's **wedding**<sup>(1)</sup>. It's at the end of the day and the **guests**<sup>(2)</sup> are slowly leaving. Most of the family are still there, **though**<sup>(3)</sup>, and still enjoying the **party**<sup>(4)</sup>. That's my sister **smiling**<sup>(5)</sup> happily at the camera and the man next to her is Youssef, her **husband**<sup>(6)</sup>.



**Boy 1 :** That's my class on our **school trip**<sup>(7)</sup> to the **mountains**<sup>(8)</sup>. We're sitting carefully on the **rocks**<sup>(9)</sup> because they are very **sharp**<sup>(10)</sup>! We got up at 5 o'clock in the morning and walked for **hours**<sup>(11)</sup> and hours. You can't see me in this picture. I'm sitting under a tree and **hungrily**<sup>(12)</sup> eating my lunch.



**Boy 2 :** This is me at the **airport**<sup>(13)</sup>. I'm waiting **excitedly**<sup>(14)</sup> to get on a plane for the first time! My family were with me but you can't see them because my sister is taking the photo while my parents are quickly buying some sandwiches for us to eat on the plane.



**Girl 2 :** This is my aunt's new **baby**<sup>(15)</sup>. Isn't she **sweet**<sup>(16)</sup> ? She is **laughing loudly**<sup>(17)</sup> in this picture because she can see my aunt's cat. She always laughs when she sees this cat-she thinks it's very funny.



## Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الفهم  
ونصوص الاستماع



(6) زوج	(5) بيتسم	(4) حفل	(3) على الرغم من	(2) ضيوف	(1) حفل زفاف
(12) بشراة	(11) ساعات	(10) حاد	(9) صخور	(8) جبال	(7) رحلة مدرسية
(17) يضحك بصوت عال	(16) لطيف / جميل	(15) طفل رضيع	(14) بحماس	(13) مطار	

on Lesson 3 SB page 17

**Girl:** This is a photo of my family in Al Azhar Park in Cairo. My mother and my sisters are sitting under a tree **in the foreground of** <sup>(1)</sup> the photo. **In the background** <sup>(2)</sup>, you can see the Umm al- Sultan Shaban Mosque. The tree is **towards the right** <sup>(3)</sup> of the photo and my eldest sister Reem is sitting in front of it. Our mother is behind her – we can't see her face. My middle sister Talia is **in the middle of** <sup>(4)</sup> the picture. She's **taking a selfie** <sup>(5)</sup> as usual! Our aunt is behind them, **down the hill** <sup>(6)</sup> and **on the left** <sup>(7)</sup>. I think she is **getting ready to** <sup>(8)</sup> take a photo, too.



(1) في مقدمة (الصورة) / الأمام	(2) في خلفية (الصورة)	(3) تجاه اليمين	(4) في منتصف / وسط
(5) يلتقط صورة بالكاميرا الأمامية	(6) أسفل التل	(7) على اليسار	(8) يستعد / يجهز لـ



## Reading

on Lesson 4 SB page 18

### Happiness for teenagers

It's normal to **get worried** <sup>(1)</sup> or to feel sad sometimes – but what helps teenagers to feel happy? We found five things that can help.

1. **c** Get lots of rest

Teenagers often don't sleep enough, but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep. Young people who sleep eight to ten hours a night are much happier!



2. **e** Be friendly

It's good to be alone sometimes, but people need people. **Spend time with** <sup>(2)</sup> your family and also try to **make new friends** <sup>(3)</sup> because this makes teenagers happy.

3. **a** Go outside

People need nature to be happy. Go to the desert or the river or, if you live in the city, go to a park.

4. **b** Help someone

When you **do something kind for** <sup>(4)</sup> someone else, this makes you feel happy, too. Try it! You feel really good.

- (1) يقلق
- (2) يقضى وقت مع
- (3) يكون صداقات جديدة
- (4) يفعل شيئاً جيداً / طيباً

5. **d** Be grateful

One of the best ways to be happy is to remember the good things in your life and **feel pleased about** <sup>(5)</sup> them.

(5) يشعر بالسُّرور بشأن

**Choose**  
the correct  
answer from  
a, b, c or d :

**Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context** تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

**Learn**

1. The word "....." in the third paragraph means not with other people.

a. sad      b. normal      c. **alone**      d. worried

**Practise**

2. The word "pleased" means .....

a. grateful      b. bored      c. happy      d. unpleasant

on Lesson 4 WB page 82

**Dear Help! Magazine**

I am a normal teenager but I often **feel worried about** <sup>(1)</sup> things. Every day, I stay at home and do my homework. Then I **get texts from** <sup>(2)</sup> my friends and they say they are all doing exciting things! What am I **doing wrong** <sup>(3)</sup> ? I **do well** <sup>(4)</sup> at school and I enjoy my weekends with my family. We often go to the park or the beach, but I sometimes think that my friends are having a better time than me. Please, can you help me ?

**Yours, Osama****Dear Osama**

Thank you for writing to us and yes, we will try to help you. It is normal to think



that other people are doing more exciting things than you, but remember : you are wrong ! Your friends probably feel worried, just like you. When you go to the park or the beach, do you send photos to your friends? They probably think YOU are having a better time than they are! Remember that we all work and relax **at different times** <sup>(5)</sup> . **Be grateful for** <sup>(6)</sup> the good things in your life and continue to work hard!

**Yours truly, Help! Magazine**

(1) يشعر بالقلق بشأن (2) يتسلم رسائل نصية من (3) يخطئ (4) يؤدي جيّدًا (5) في أوقات مختلفة (6) يكون شاكر أو مهتم لـ ...

**Exercise****on Vocabulary**

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► **Key vocabulary**

1. It's important to remove the ..... from the soil to get a good crop.  
a. climbing      b. weeding      c. wedding      d. running

## UNIT TWO

2. That's my sister. She is smiling ..... at the camera.  
a. happily      b. carefully      c. loudly      d. hungrily
3. The ship reached the ..... safely this morning.  
a. airport      b. ground      c. port      d. playground
4. He invited over 100 ..... for the wedding party.  
a. descriptions      b. suitcases      c. guests      d. hills
5. We can catch a plane from a/an .....  
a. port      b. road      c. airport      d. way

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

6. To be scared of dangerous animals is a ..... feeling.  
(Cairo - Ain Shams 2024)  
a. funny      b. normal      c. lazy      d. happy
7. **SB** The teacher ..... all his children kindly. (Sharkia - Belbis 2022)  
a. invites      b. treats      c. stands      d. gets
8. **WB** The skin of a zebra is ..... (Menofia - Tala 2023)  
a. curly      b. worried      c. sharp      d. striped
9. **SB** I'm sitting under a tree and ..... eating my lunch.  
a. loudly      b. hungrily      c. carefully      d. luckily

### El-Moasser Exercises

10. A knife has a ..... edge.  
a. wet      b. dry      c. sharp      d. soft
11. You can put your ..... on the plane when you travel.  
a. suits      b. pencil cases      c. suitcases      d. shopping lists
12. I'd like to ..... a selfie with my friends as usual.  
a. make      b. take      c. have      d. do

### ► Definitions

13. A/An ..... is a boy or girl aged 13 - 19.  
a. old man      b. baby      c. child      d. teenager
14. .... means not paying enough attention to what you are doing.  
a. Careful      b. Crying      c. Careless      d. Waving

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. After his parents' death, Ali lived .....  
a. lonely      b. only      c. alone      d. solo
16. My uncle ..... married at the age of 25.  
a. made      b. got      c. gave      d. had

## 2. Speaking

### مهارة التحدث

#### 1. Describing a photo

١. وصف صورة / وصف ما يحدث في صورة

1. This is a photo of me and my family in Al Azhar Park. هذه صورة لي ولعائلتي بحديقة الأزهر.
2. In the foreground, we can see my sister and my mother. في المقدمة، يمكننا أن نرى أختي ووالدتي.
3. In the background, we can see my father sitting on the grass. في الخلفية، يمكننا أن نرى والدي يجلس على العشب.
4. The tree is towards the right of the photo. يوجد شجرة تجاه يمين الصورة.
5. My eldest brother Omar is sitting in front of the tree. يجلس أخي الأكبر عمر أمام الشجرة.
6. Our aunt is behind my brother Omar. We can't see her face. عمتي تقف خلف أخي عمر ولا يمكننا رؤية وجهها.
7. My middle sister Samar is in the middle of the picture. أختي الوسطى سمر في منتصف الصورة.

#### 2. Explaining feelings and how to deal with them

٢. إيضاح المشاعر وكيفية التعامل معها

##### Questions



1. How do you feel when you go outside ? ١. كيف تشعر عندما تذهب بالخارج ؟
2. How do you feel when you help someone ? ٢. كيف تشعر عندما تساعد شخصاً ما ؟
3. How do you feel when you get lots of rest ? ٣. كيف تشعر عندما تأخذ قسطاً من الراحة ؟

##### Answers



- أشعر بالسُرور. - I feel pleased.
- أشعر بالسعادة. - I feel happy.
- أشعر بالاسترخاء. - I feel relaxed.

## 3. Writing

### مهارة الكتابة

#### Describing a photo

وصف صورة / وصف ما يحدث في صورة

1. This is a photo of ..... هذه صورة لـ .....
2. It shows ..... إنها توضح / تعرض .....
3. In the foreground, you can see ..... في مقدمة [الصورة] / في الأمام يمكنك أن ترى .....
4. In the background, you can see ..... في خلفية [الصورة] يمكنك أن ترى .....
5. .... is towards the right of the photo. .... تجاه يمين الصورة.
6. .... is in the middle of the photo. .... في منتصف الصورة.

### III Language

#### Adverbs of manner

#### ظروف الحال (الكيفية)

الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتي بعده و يتكون من إضافة (ly) إلى الصفة المنتظمة.

#### adjective الصفة

Our team are bad.

الصفة تصف الاسم و تأتي قبله أو بعد (Verb to be).

They are quiet people.

#### adverb الظرف

Our team are playing badly.

الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتي بعده.

Regular المنتظم		Regular المنتظم	
Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
bad سيء	badly بطريقة سيئة	slow بطيء	slowly ببطء
quiet هادئ	quietly بهدوء	happy سعيد	happily بسعادة
loud عالٍ	loudly بصوت عالٍ	sad حزين	sadly بحزن
quick سريع	quickly بسرعة	kind عطوف	kindly بعطف / بطيبة

Irregular غير المنتظم		Irregular غير المنتظم	
Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
good جيد	well جيذاً	wrong خطأ	wrong بطريقة خاطئة
fast سريع	fast بسرعة	late متأخر	late متأخراً
hard صعب	hard بصعوبة	early مبكر	early مبكراً
right صحيح	right بطريقة صحيحة		

#### Formation التكوين

يتكون ظرف (الحال) الكيفية غالباً بإضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة:

أ. بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة (ly) إلى الصفة

• excited → excitedly

• quick → quickly

• safe → safely

• strong → strongly

ب. وتُضاف (ly) حتى وإن كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف (l)

• careful → carefully

• beautiful → beautifully

• possible → possibly

• easy → easily

• lazy → lazily

• good → well

• hard → hard

ج. الصفة المنتهية بـ (le) يتم حذف حرف (e) وإضافة (y)

• probable - probably

د. الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (ily)

• happy → happily

• hungry → hungrily

هـ. هناك ظروف غير منتظمة لا يضاف لها (ly) وتحفظ كما هي :

• fast → fast

• high → high

• late → late

• early → early

### Usage الاستخدام

**We use adverbs of manner to describe how we do the action of a verb.**

تستخدم ظروف الكيفية لوصف حدث / فعل [الطريقة التي يؤدي بها شخص ما شيء ما]

ex. - Rodina sings **well**.

- He works **slowly**.

لاحظ أن ظروف الكيفية تجيب عن السؤال الذي يبدأ بـ (How):

ex. - **A:** How does Aya eat?

**B:** She eats **hungrily**.

يأتي ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول:

ex. - My friend sews **badly**.

- The teacher called our names **loudly**.



## Exercises

### on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. **A:** How do you walk to school ?

**B:** I walk .....

(Monofia - Tala 2024)

a. quick

b. more quick

c. quickly

d. most quick

2. **SB** Mr Kamal speaks English very .....

(Gharbia - East Mahalla 2024)

a. well

b. good

c. bad

d. clear

3. **WB** The children are singing ..... in the playground.

a. loudly

b. loud

c. more loud

d. most loud

## UNIT TWO

4. **SB** The cat is sitting in the sun ..... . *(Cairo - Helwan 2023)*  
a. lazy                      b. lazily                      c. laziest                      d. lazier
5. Our football team won the match, so they are smiling ..... .  
a. happy                      b. happiness                      c. happily                      d. more happy

### El-Moasser Exercises

6. I didn't eat for a long time, so I ate the sandwich ..... .  
a. hungry                      b. hungrily                      c. more hungry                      d. hungriest
7. There were some ..... questions in the exam.  
a. hardly                      b. hard                      c. badly                      d. easily
8. It was raining ..... yesterday.  
a. heavy                      b. the heavier                      c. heaviest                      d. heavily
9. My cousin is very ..... at playing tennis.  
a. best                      b. better                      c. good                      d. well
10. The plane flew ..... in the sky.  
a. highly                      b. easy                      c. high                      d. quick

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. **SB** The teacher treats all her children ..... (kind).
2. **WB** Ahmed went to the new school ..... (sad).
3. It was raining, but I arrived home ..... (safe). *(Fayoum - Itsa 2024)*
4. Always speak ..... (quiet) to your parents. *(Isamailia 2023)*
5. **SB** My friend sews ..... (bad).

### El-Moasser Exercises

6. Nader plays basketball ..... (good).
7. Ali speaks very ..... (quick) .
8. At the end of the party, the guests left ..... (slow) .
9. He answers the questions ..... (easy).
10. Ahmed is reading ..... (loud).

# Speaking & Writing Corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة  
Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues  
ال  
قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

<b>Step 1</b> <b>Vocabulary</b> اختر اثنان للمفردات اللغوية	<b>Step 2</b> <b>Speaking</b> اختر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث	<b>Step 3</b> <b>Writing</b> اختر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
<b>Read and complete :</b> 1. What is her ..... called ? - He is called Adam. 2. Were there a lot of ..... ? - Yes, there were. 3. Where was the ..... ? - It was in the new hotel.	<b>Complete the following dialogue :</b> Farid tells Mohamed about his sister's wedding. <b>Mohamed :</b> Why didn't you come to school yesterday ? Farid : (1) ..... <b>Mohamed :</b> Congratulations ! (2) ..... ? Farid : Her husband is called Adam. <b>Mohamed :</b> Were there a lot of guests ? Farid : (3) ..... <b>Mohamed :</b> (4) ..... ? Farid : The wedding was in the new hotel. <b>Mohamed :</b> What did you wear for the wedding party ? Farid : (5) .....	<b>Write a paragraph on :</b> <b>"A wedding party"</b>
1. Where did you take this ..... ? - I took it in Al Azhar Park. 2. Who is in the ..... of the photo ? - My cousin. 3. How did you feel when you were there ? - I felt .....	Mona tells Maha about Al Azhar Park. <b>Mona :</b> I like your selfie on Facebook. Maha : (1) ..... <b>Mona :</b> (2) ..... ? Maha : I took it in Al Azhar Park. <b>Mona :</b> Who is in the background ? Maha : (3) ..... <b>Mona :</b> I know your cousin. (4) ..... ? Maha : I felt pleased and excited there. <b>Mona :</b> When do you suggest going there ? Maha : (5) ..... It is better in the morning.	<b>"A visit to Al Azhar Park"</b>

A wedding party

A visit to Al Azhar Park

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3 & 4

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلقك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Adel is a / an ..... teenager.  
a. strange      b. normal      c. crazy      d. abnormal
2. Adel often feels ..... about things.  
a. worried      b. sad      c. happy      d. angry
3. Adel gets ..... from his friends.  
a. texts      b. subjects      c. hobbies      d. sports
4. Adel's friends say that they all do ..... things.  
a. big      b. happy      c. exciting      d. good

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Huda is telling Jana some information about her family.

Jana : Hello, Huda. Can I ask you some questions ?

Huda : Hi, Jana. (1) .....

Jana : (2) ..... ?

Huda : They lived in Tanta.

Jana : What did your grandfather do ?

Huda : (3) .....

Jana : Really ! (4) ..... ?

Huda : Yes, he grew a lot of fruit trees.

Jana : What about your grandmother ?

Huda : (5) ..... . She was a housewife. (Gharbia - West Mahallah 2023)

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This is a photo of my parent's ..... . They are very happy .  
a. weeding      b. wedding      c. married      d. crowds  
(Sharkia - Belbis 2024)
2. **SB** I'm waiting ..... to get on a plane for the first time.  
a. badly      b. loudly      c. excitedly      d. lazily
3. **WB** You can ..... a plane from an airport.  
a. hit      b. miss      c. catch      d. drive

- 4. Most students play happily in the school ..... (Cairo - East Nasr City 2022)  
a. museum      b. playground      c. library      d. port
- 5. Be careful! The knife is very .....  
a. grateful      b. sharp      c. dry      d. wet
- 6. In the ..... of the photo, we can see a man sitting under a tree.  
a. ground      b. underground      c. top      d. middle
- 7. I'd like to ..... you to my wedding party.  
a. catch      b. wait      c. invite      d. treat
- 8. Ali did his homework ....., so the teacher punished عاقب him.  
a. careless      b. carelessness      c. more careless      d. carelessly
- 9. Salma is a ..... cook.  
a. well      b. good      c. badly      d. slowly
- 10. There are sharp rocks here, so you have to be .....  
a. careful      b. carefully      c. carelessness      d. carelessly

#### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- 1. Don't go to school ..... (latest). (Suez - North Suez 2024)
- 2. **SB** My sister speaks very ..... (quiet).
- 3. **WB** The children are singing ..... (loud) in the playground.  
(Giza - Kerdasa 2022 / Giza - South Giza 2023)
- 4. The friends are smiling ..... (happy).

#### 5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

#### "Making new friends"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(Sharkia - East Zagazig 2024)



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

Congratulations !	تهانينا! / ألف مبروك	pity (n)	شئ مؤسف أو محزن - شفقة
conversation (n)	محادثة	empathy (n)	تعاطف
respond (ed) (v)	يجيب / يرد	interview (n)	مقابلة شخصية
news (n)	أخبار	excited (adj)	متحمس / منفعل



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

news - empathy - conversation - respond - interview

1. I have a/an ..... for a new job today
2. We offered him a drink but he didn't .....
3. You should show ..... to poor people.
4. Well done, Tarek! That's great .....

### Lesson 5

SB page 19 WB page 83

check (ed) (v)	يتحقق	coach (n)	مدرب
pass (ed) (v)	يجتاز / يمر	worry (ied) (v)	يقلق
sorry (adj)	أسف / حزين	soon (adv)	قريبًا / في القريب العاجل
bank (n)	بنك - ضفة [نهر]	hope (d) (v)	يتمنى

### Lesson 6

SB page 20 WB page 84

miss (ed) (v)	يفتقد [شئ / شخص]	suitable (adj)	ملائم / مناسب
introduce (d) (v)	يقدم / يعرف	dear (adj)	عزيز / غال
system (n)	نظام	prepare (d) (v)	يعد / يجهز
recently (adv)	حديثًا / مؤخرًا	term (n)	فصل دراسي

### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
hear يسمع	heard	heard
sell يبيع	sold	sold

**Study these definitions**

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>empathy</b>	the ability to understand how someone feels	تعاطف
<b>That's / It's a pity</b>	something you say to show you feel sad about something	إنه من المؤسف / المحزن

**Vocabulary Study**

<b>Synonyms and Antonyms</b>		مترادفات ومتضادات
Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
cloudy	dark - gloomy	clear صافي - نقي
useful	good - helpful	useless غير مفيد
married	-	single أعزب / غير متزوج
funny	comic - amusing	serious جاد

<b>Prefixes &amp; Suffixes</b>		مقاطع بادئة ونهاية
Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
un-	تعطى العكس	unsuitable غير مناسب unmarried غير متزوج
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	greeting تحية
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	congratulation تهنئة

**Exercise****on Vocabulary Study**

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I remember him as a very serious boy. The antonym of the word "serious" is " ..... ".  
a. single      b. married      c. funny      d. clever
- The sky is unclear. This means it is ..... .  
a. bright      b. clear      c. cloudy      d. useful
- To turn the verb "congratulate" into a noun, we add " ..... ".  
a. -or      b. -er      c. -ion      d. -able
- Samah is single, this means she is ..... .  
a. unmarried      b. married      c. careful      d. helpful



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 miss / mess

\* **miss** (v)

يفتقد (شخص)

▶ I **miss** my uncle. He's been in Paris for long.

\* **miss** (v)

يفشل / يخطئ (الهدف)

▶ He tried to score a goal, but he **missed** it.

\* **miss** (v)

يفوته (وسيلة مواصلات)

▶ He came late because he **missed** the bus.

\* **mess**

فوضى / ورطة - مازق

▶ - When I came home, I found the kitchen in a **mess**.

- He always gets me into a **mess**.

(SB page 20)

### 2 so / such

\* **so** + صفة

جدا ... (وبعدها صفة)

▶ The party was **so** exciting.

\* **such** + a/an + (صفة + اسم مفرد يعد + صفة)

جدا ... (وبعدها صفة واسم)

▶ It was **such** an exciting party.

(WB page 84)

### 3 pass / succeed in

\* **pass**

يجتاز اختبار (لا تأخذ حرف جر)

▶ **SB** I've **passed** my maths exam.

\* **succeed in** (noun / inf. + ing)

(ينجح في ...)

▶ I've **succeeded in** my maths exam.

(SB page 19)

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

Expressions			
get better	يتحسن	do an interview	يجري مقابلة شخصية
Great to see you !	سعيد لرؤيتك !	That must be difficult	لا بد وأنه صعب
It's a pity.	إنه من المؤسف.	do hours of homework !	
How's it going at ... ?	كيف تسير الأمور في ... ؟		يقوم بأداء ساعات من الواجبات المنزلية !
show empathy	يبين التعاطف	How are things ?	كيف هي الأحوال ؟
have an interview	لديه مقابلة شخصية	Guess what ?	خمن ماذا ؟
Prepositions			
happy for	سعيد من أجل	congratulations ... on + n/ (inf.+ing)	تهانينا على ...
prepare ... for	يجهز ... لـ	respond to	يرد على



## Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

### Lesson [6] SB page 20

1. Inji is sending an email to her friend Salma.
2. Inji **misses** <sup>(1)</sup> Salma.
3. Inji tells Salma that there is some **bad news** <sup>(2)</sup>.
4. Their science teacher Mrs Tahany is leaving school and they feel sad.
5. There is also some good news.
6. Inji's parents say that she can go on **the school trip** <sup>(3)</sup> to Amman.
7. Inji is very excited because she will visit many amazing places.

### Lesson [6] WB page 84

1. Tamer is sending an email to Tarek.
2. Tamer is **congratulating** <sup>(4)</sup> Tarek on **passing** <sup>(5)</sup> his maths test.
3. Tamer says that they are **moving to** <sup>(6)</sup> a new house and he is excited.
4. Tamer's bedroom in the new house is very big.

\* Telling your penfriend your news

\* Congratulating your friend

5. The bad news is that Tamer shares the room with his brother for a week.
6. Tamer is **looking forward to** <sup>(7)</sup> meeting Tarek in the summer.

### Lesson [7] WB page 85

1. This is a photo of **the market** <sup>(8)</sup>.
2. There is a man **selling** <sup>(9)</sup> fruit and other things.
3. **In the middle** <sup>(10)</sup>, there is a man on a **bicycle** <sup>(11)</sup>.
4. He is carrying something.
5. On the right, there are two women.
6. They want to buy something.
7. **In the background** <sup>(12)</sup>, we can see some other people.

يحتل (4)	رحلة مدرسية (3)	أخبار سيئة (2)	يقفد (1)
السوق (8)	يتطلع إلى (7)	ينتقل إلى (6)	إخبار (5)
في الخلفية (12)	دراجة (11)	في المنتصف (10)	يبيع (9)

تدوينه :

العمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

How are you feeling ?

## 1. Reading and Listening



### Listening

#### Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الفهم  
ونصوص الاستماع



on Lesson 5 SB page 19

1

**Ali** : Hi Yasser! Are you coming to **football practice**<sup>(1)</sup> on Thursday ?

**Yasser** : Oh Hello Ali. No, I can't come this week. My granddad is in hospital again. I have to look after my little brothers while my mum goes to visit him.

**Ali** : I'm sorry to hear that. I hope he **gets better**<sup>(2)</sup> soon. **It's a pity**<sup>(3)</sup> that you can't come. Maybe see you next Thursday, then.

**Yasser** : Thanks Ali.

2

**Yasser** : Hey Ali, **Guess what**<sup>(4)</sup>! I'm in the football team! The coach told me after football practice last night.

**Ali** : **Well done**<sup>(5)</sup>, Yasser! **That's great news**<sup>(6)</sup>.

3

**Hana** : Hello Salma. How are you ? **Great to see you!**<sup>(7)</sup>  
**How's it going at**<sup>(8)</sup> your new school ? Are you enjoying it ?

**Salma** : Hello Hana. Great to see you, too! The new school is really hard! I don't know anyone, and I feel everyone is much cleverer than me. I have to **do hours of homework**<sup>(9)</sup> every night.

**Hana** : That must be difficult. But don't worry : I'm sure things will get better. You were always the best student in our class!



(1) تدريب كرة قدم

(2) يتحسن

(3) إنه من المؤسف

(4) خمن ماذا !

(5) أحسنت صنعاً.

(6) هذه أخبار رائعة.

(7) سعيد لرؤيتك !

(8) كيف تسير الأمور في ... ؟

(9) يقوم بأداء ساعات من

الواجبات المنزلية

How are you feeling ?

4

**Hana** : Hi Huda, how are things<sup>(10)</sup> ?

**Huda** : Hello Hana! Fine thanks. I **passed my English exam**<sup>(11)</sup>!

**Hana** : Congratulations!<sup>(12)</sup> I'm so happy for<sup>(13)</sup> you. Everyone knows that's a really difficult exam.

(10) كيف هي الأحوال ؟

(11) اجتزيت امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية !

(12) تهانينا !

(13) سعيد من أجل



## Reading

• on Lesson 6 SB page 20

**Hi Salma !**

How are you ? I hope you are enjoying your new school. We really **miss**<sup>(1)</sup> **you**. I am fine, but there is some bad news from school. Mrs Tahany is leaving !

She is such a good **science teacher**<sup>(2)</sup> and we are feeling very sad. I have some good news, too. Guess what ? My parents say I can go on **the school trip**<sup>(3)</sup> to **Amman**<sup>(4)</sup>. I am very excited ! There are many **amazing**<sup>(5)</sup> places to visit **there**. The trip is in March and I can't wait. So what's your news ? Write soon !

**Injy**

(1) يفتقد شخص

(2) مدرس علوم

(3) رحلة مدرسية

(4) مدينة عمان

(5) رائع / مذهل

**Answer**

the following questions :

- Understanding reference

Learn

1. What does the pronoun "**you**" in the second line refer to ?  
- It refers to **Salma**.

Practise

2. What does the word "**there**" in the seventh line refer to ?

فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير



## Listening

• on Lesson 6 WB page 84

**Hi Tarek,**

How's it going ? **Congratulations on**<sup>(1)</sup> passing your maths test! Do you have more exams next term ?

The news from me is that we are **moving** to<sup>(2)</sup> a new house! I'm so excited because my bedroom in the new house is very big. I've got some bad news, too. I'm **sharing the room with**<sup>(3)</sup> my brother! But this is only for a week until his room is ready.



(1) تهانينا على

(2) ينتقل إلى

(3) يتشارك في الحجرة مع

## UNIT TWO

I'm looking forward to <sup>(4)</sup> meeting you in the summer. Do you want to go swimming <sup>(5)</sup> or sailing at the beach this year ?

I can't wait to see you. Write soon !

**Tamer**

(4) يتطلع إلى

(5) يذهب للسباحة



### Reading

#### • on Lesson 6 WB page 84

My name is Dina. I am Egyptian but my mother is from England. I live with my parents, my brother, my sister and my grandparents. Who do you live with ? Write soon.

From Dina

#### • on Lesson 7 SB page 21

**Hi Jana !**

How are you ? I hope you are well. Guess what! I've passed my maths exam. I'm really happy, but my brother didn't pass. He is working hard to pass it next time. It's raining today, so I'm happily sitting in my bedroom. I'm playing a game with my sister. What's your news ?

Write soon!

**Huda**

#### • on Lesson 7 WB page 85

This is a photo of a market. In the foreground towards the left, we can see a man. I think it is his shop and he is selling fruit and other things. In the middle of the picture we can see a man on a bicycle. He is carrying something. On the right, we can see two women. I think they want to buy something. In the background, we can see some other people.





## Exercise on Vocabulary

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

### ► Key vocabulary

- You should ..... to your teacher's advice.  
a. respond      b. worry      c. miss      d. refuse
- When someone passes their exam, we say "....." to him.  
a. Sorry !      b. How terrible !  
c. Awful !      d. Congratulations !
- Today I have an important ..... for the new job.  
a. view      b. interview      c. review      d. revision
- It's a/an ..... that she didn't come. It was a fantastic party.  
a. pity      b. empathy      c. expression      d. respond

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

- Yesterday, I got up late, so I ..... the school bus.  
(Sharkia - East Zagazig 2024)  
a. reached      b. missed      c. caught      d. made
- WB** I'm ..... the room with my brother. (Sharkia - Hehia 2023)  
a. keeping      b. sharing      c. singing      d. jumping
- SB** Well done, Yasser ! That's great ..... ! (Beni Suef - Somosta 2022)  
a. science      b. phrase      c. empathy      d. news

### El-Moasser Exercises

- I've some good news, too. .... what ?  
a. Introduce      b. Sorry      c. Miss      d. Guess
- After the football match, the ..... told the goalkeeper to train well.  
a. guard      b. nurse      c. coach      d. referee
- I was very ..... to know my exam results.  
a. quick      b. excited      c. slow      d. ugly

### ► Definitions

- The expression "....." means something you say to show you feel sad about something.  
a. Thank you      b. It's a pity      c. Congratulations      d. Well done

## UNIT TWO

12. The ability to understand how someone feels is called .....  
 a. respond      b. system      c. empathy      d. wedding

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. I've ..... my English exam. I'm really happy.  
 a. succeeded      b. failed      c. passed      d. worked
14. He ..... an interview online for a new job from his house.  
 a. had      b. made      c. played      d. shopped
15. My uncle had an accident last month, but now he is ..... better.  
 a. making      b. giving      c. doing      d. getting

## 2. Speaking

### مهارة التحدث

### ► Responding to news.

### الاستجابة للأخبار .

#### Good news أخبار جيدة

- عند سماع أخبار جيدة نستخدم :  
 - Well done ! أحسنت صنعاً !  
 - That's great news ! - تلك أخبار رائعة !  
 - Congratulations ! تهانينا !

#### Bad news أخبار سيئة

- عند سماع أخبار سيئة نستخدم :  
 - I'm sorry to hear that.  
 - أنا حزين لسماعى ذلك .  
 - That must be difficult.  
 - من المؤكد/لابد أنه شئ صعب/شاق.  
 - It's pity ..... من المؤسف أن ..... جملة



### Pop Quiz

### on Speaking

#### • Complete the following dialogue :

Adel talks to Samy about great news.

Adel : How are you ?

Samy : I'm fine. (1) .....

Adel : Fine. Thanks. I have good news.

Samy : Really ! (2) .....

Adel : I bought a new car yesterday.

Samy : Who bought it for you ?

Adel : (3) .....

Samy : That's great news ! How much is it ?

Adel : (4) ..... Do you think it is expensive ?

Samy : (5) .....

### 3. Writing

### مهارة الكتابة

#### Important tips for punctuation

1. A sentence ends with a full stop (.). الجملة تنتهي بنقطة.
2. A question ends with a question mark (?). السؤال ينتهي بعلامة استفهام.
3. A sentence begins with a capital letter. تبدأ الجملة بحرف كبير.
4. We use commas (,) between clauses of a sentence. نستخدم الفاصلة السفلية (,) بين عبارات الجملة.
5. We also use commas (,) in lists. نستخدم الفاصلة السفلية (,) أيضًا في القوائم.

#### Useful phrases to use in an email عبارات مفيدة لتستخدمها في كتابة بريد إلكتروني

- يمكن أن تبدأ رسالتك بإحدى هذه العبارات متبوعة باسم المرسل إليه.  
- Dear / Hi / Hello اسم المرسل إليه ,
- تستخدم العبارات الآتية للسؤال عن الصحة.  
- How are you ? / How are things ? / How's it going ? / How's life ?
- تستخدم العبارات الآتية عند تقديم الأخبار.  
- The news from me / us is that .... / Guess what ? .....
- تستخدم هذه العبارات عند الحديث عن المشاعر.  
- I / We miss you. / I / We hope that you are ... / I'm so excited / sad because السبب
- تستخدم هذه العبارات عند الحديث عن المستقبل.  
- I'm looking forward to ... / I can't wait to...
- تستخدم هذه العبارات عندما تنتهي رسالة البريد الإلكتروني.  
- Write soon / See you soon.

#### Model email

#### نموذج لرسالة بريد إلكتروني

From : injy@gmail.com  
To : salma@gmail.com  
About : Bad news and good news

Hi Salma,

How are you ? I hope you are enjoying your new school. We really miss you. I am fine, but there is some bad news from school. Mrs Tahany is leaving! She is such a good science teacher and we are feeling very sad.

I have some good news, too. Guess what ?

My parents say I can go on the school trip to Amman. I am very excited ! There are many amazing places to visit there. I hope you come with me. It will be nice to get around together. The trip is in March and I can't wait. So, what's your news ? Write soon !

Yours,  
Injy

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5 & 6

● Understand    ● Apply    ○ Create

### 1 Complete the following dialogue :

Basem asks Wafaa about her exams.

Basem : Hello Wafaa. How are things ?

Wafaa : (1) ..... What about you ?

Basem : (2) ..... I've passed my exams.

Wafaa : (3) ..... !

Basem : Thanks. (4) ..... ?

Wafaa : Me ! I passed but with low marks.

Basem : I'm sorry to hear that.

Wafaa : (5) ..... ?

Basem : You should study hard next year.

Wafaa : Thanks for your advice.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- 1. **WB** I'm looking ..... to meeting you in the summer.  
a. forward      b. backward      c. foreground      d. background
- 2. Well done, Ali. That's great ..... ! *(Assuit - Manfalout 2024)*  
a. empathy      b. news      c. pity      d. pollution
- 3. When you have a/an ..... , you can imagine how other people feel. *(Gharbia - West Tanta 2024)*  
a. shame      b. greeting      c. empathy      d. interview
- 4. Our manager ..... the interview for many people online.  
a. got      b. did      c. took      d. had
- 5. I'm sorry about your accident. I hope you will ..... better soon.  
a. play      b. have      c. get      d. pass
- 6. It is important to ..... empathy when your friend has an accident.  
a. prepare      b. show      c. do      d. make
- 7. I arrived at the bus stop late so I ..... the bus.  
a. caught      b. missed      c. handed      d. reached

8. .... the middle of the picture, we can see a man on a bicycle.

- a. In                      b. On                      c. At                      d. From

9. **SB** There are many ..... places to visit there. The trip is in March and I can't wait.

- a. amazement      b. amaze                      c. amazed                      d. amazing

10. Mr Nader is ..... a good science teacher. I really love him.

- a. but                      b. so                      c. such                      d. quite

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. **SB** The friends are smiling ..... (happy). (Cairo - East Nasr City 2024)

2. **WB** The pilot usually flies planes. Now he ..... (speaks) on the phone.

3. Never speak ..... (loud). (Damietta - Zarka 2022)

4. She is looking forward to ..... (pass) her exams.

### 4 Write an email of about NINETY(90) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Ali congratulating him on his success. Your name is Samir and your email address is samir@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ali@gmail.com.

(Cairo - Heliopolis 2022)

## Skills

## 1 Reading Comprehension

## Giving the main idea

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [giving the main idea] أو [giving a suitable title] وهنا تحتاج لتحديد الفكرة الرئيسية التي يدور حولها الموضوع.

اقرأ وقيم بالإجابة.


## Read and answer the question :

People who go to the market are different. Some people go to the market to buy meat, chickens or fish. Others go to bring fresh fruits and vegetables. A few people go to markets to sell things and goods like clothes, tools and wood. Markets are often one day a week. Most people who go around the markets are often women but some men go, too.

• Give a suitable title to the passage.

Or What is the main idea of the text ?

Or What is the text about ?

 **التحدي** قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها في الفقرة.

 **مفتاح الحل** عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو **(الفكرة الرئيسية)** أو **(العنوان المناسب)** للفقرة.

## 2

## Speaking

## Jobs

يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) معرفتك لقدر كاف من [language functions] والتي غالباً ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

اقرأ وقيم بالإجابة.

## Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Yassin about his father's job.

Ahmed : Hi, Yassin. What's your father's job ?

Yassin : (1) .....

Ahmed : (2) .....

Yassin : He works in Tanta Prep School.

Ahmed : (3) .....

Yassin : He teaches English.

Ahmed : Do his pupils like him ?

Yassin : (4) .....

Ahmed : Do you want to be a teacher like him ?

Yassin : (5) .....

 **التحدي** تريد إجراء حوار عن وظيفة أو الرد على أخبار سواء كانت جيدة أو سيئة وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

 **مفتاح الحل** يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بينك وبين المتحدث.

# 3

## Correction notes

- الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

### Review

◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

I → am / am not He / She / It → is / isn't You / We / They → are / aren't	ضمائر الفاعل مع (v. to be) في المضارع
am / is / are → (inf.+ing)	في [المضارع المستمر] نستخدم [are / am / is] وبعدهم الفعل مضاف له ing
bad → badly / slow → slowly good → well / fast → fast	يصف الظرف الفعل ويأتي بعده و يستخدم الظرف للإجابة عن سؤال بـ How

### Learn

◀ تعلم

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 My mother is ..... [shop] at the moment.	shopping	مضارع مستمر لوجود at the moment
2 ..... [Am] they taking a photo?	Are	نستخدم الفعل المساعد [they] مع [Are]
3 He speaks very ..... [quiet].	quietly	نستخدم [ظرف] بعد الفعل

### Practice

◀ تدرب

◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة

1 What .... [are] your mother doing now?	is	.....
2 Salma ... [watches] TV at the moment.	is watching	.....
3 We .... [drive] around the city now.	are driving	.....
4 He speaks English ... [good].	well	.....

◀ Write the Correction :

◀ اكتب التصحيح

1 I am not .... [work] today.	.....	مضارع مستمر
2 The cat is sitting in the sun ... [lazy].	.....	نستخدم [ظرف] بعد الفعل
3 ... [Who] does he run? - He runs fast.	.....	نستخدم How للسؤال عن ظرف الكيفية
4 ... [Were] they feeling hungry now?	.....	مضارع مستمر لوجود now



# Review

## on unit 2

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

### مراجعة عامة على Unit 2 في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking																
<p>call-centre worker موظف مركز اتصالات</p> <p>computer engineer مهندس حاسبات</p> <p>police officer ضابط شرطة</p> <p>street-food seller بائع أطعمة متجول</p> <p>food stall كشك طعام</p> <p>ward عنبر</p> <p>calligraphy فن الخط</p> <p>sign language لغة الإشارة</p> <p>sewing خياطة</p> <p>foreground المقدمة</p> <p>background الخلفية</p> <p>teenager مراهق</p> <p>grateful شاكر - ممتن</p> <p>friendly ودود</p> <p>normal عادي / طبيعي</p> <p>Congratulations! تهانينا!</p> <p>empathy تعاطف</p> <p>wedding زفاف</p>	<p><b>1. Use the Present Simple and the Present Continuous</b></p> <p><b>1. The Present Simple :</b></p> <div> <div>I / They / We / You / فاعل جمع</div> <div>+</div> <div>فاعل جمع</div> <div>التصريف الأول للفعل بدون إضافات</div> </div> <p>- I get up at 7 o'clock.</p> <div> <div>He / She / It / فاعل مفرد</div> <div>+</div> <div>فاعل مفرد</div> <div>التصريف الأول للفعل</div> </div> <p>- He usually goes to school at 8 o'clock.</p> <p><b>2. The Present Continuous :</b></p> <div> <div> <div>I</div> <div>am</div> </div> <div>+</div> <div> <div>He - She - It</div> <div>is</div> </div> <div> <div>We - You - They</div> <div>are</div> </div> <div> <div>Inf. المصدر</div> <div>ing</div> </div> </div> <p>- He is working in a laboratory now.</p> <p>- They are listening to music at the moment.</p> <p><b>2. Adverbs of manner</b></p> <p>ظروف الحال</p> <table> <tr> <td>badly</td> <td>بطريقة سيئة</td> <td>slowly</td> <td>بطيء</td> </tr> <tr> <td>quietly</td> <td>بهدهوء</td> <td>happily</td> <td>بسعادة</td> </tr> <tr> <td>loudly</td> <td>بصوت عال / مرتفع</td> <td>sadly</td> <td>بحزن</td> </tr> <tr> <td>quickly</td> <td>بسرعة</td> <td>softly</td> <td>بهدهوء</td> </tr> </table> <p>هناك ظروف غير منتظمة لا يضاف لها "ly" وتحتفظ كما هي مثل :</p> <p>good → well</p> <p>• لسؤال عن كيفية فعل شيء ما في زمن المضارع البسيط باستخدام How : - How does your sister speak? - She speaks quietly.</p>	badly	بطريقة سيئة	slowly	بطيء	quietly	بهدهوء	happily	بسعادة	loudly	بصوت عال / مرتفع	sadly	بحزن	quickly	بسرعة	softly	بهدهوء	<p><b>1. Responding to news</b></p> <p>الرد على الأخبار :</p> <p>A: Mr Youssef is ill.</p> <p>B: I'm sorry to hear that.</p> <p>I hope he gets well soon.</p> <p>A: Ali got the full marks in maths.</p> <p>B: Congratulations ! That's great news.</p> <p><b>2. Describing weekend activities</b></p> <p>وصف أنشطة عطلة نهاية الأسبوع :</p> <p>1. At the weekend, I'm learning to do lots of new things.</p> <p>2. At the weekend, we sometimes spend time with my uncle at his house.</p>
badly	بطريقة سيئة	slowly	بطيء															
quietly	بهدهوء	happily	بسعادة															
loudly	بصوت عال / مرتفع	sadly	بحزن															
quickly	بسرعة	softly	بهدهوء															

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The street-food seller prepares food ..... people to eat.  
a. to b. from c. of d. for  
(Damietta - Roda 2024)
- My mother makes good food. She is a fantastic .....  
a. cooking b. cook c. cooker d. cooks  
(Giza - Bolak El-Dakroor 2023)
- We need a computer engineer to ..... our computer.  
a. repair b. prepare c. care d. rare  
(Assuit - Badary 2024)
- She always ..... her friends.  
a. help b. helps c. is helping d. helping  
(Aswan - Nasr El Noba 2023)
- Ahmed looks forward ..... high marks.  
a. to get b. to getting c. get d. getting  
(Giza - Kerdasa 2022)
- The skin of a zebra is .....  
a. plain b. blue c. striped d. sharp  
(Luxor - Luxor 2023)
- Deaf people ..... in sign language.  
a. recommend b. make c. cook d. communicate  
(Beni Suef - Samasta 2022)
- When two people get married, they have a ..... party.  
a. competition b. birthday c. wedding d. game  
(Damietta - Kafr Saad 2023)

- Tamer is ..... , so he can't hear you.  
a. blind b. deaf c. lazy d. fired  
(Fayoum - West Fayoum 2022)

- It was raining ..... yesterday.  
a. heavy b. the heavier c. heavier d. heavily  
(Damietta - Faraskor 2022)

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- A : ..... (What) does Ali walk ?  
B : He walks slowly. (Sharkia - East Zagazig 2024)
- The cat is sitting in the sun ..... (lazy).  
(Behira - Damanhour 2024)
- He usually arrives ..... (lately).  
(Giza - Kerdasa 2024)
- Mr. Ahmed speaks English ..... (good).  
(Ismailia 2023)
- I ..... (learn) to sail now. (Minia 2023)
- It is important to drive ..... (careful) when it is raining. (Gharbia - West Mahalla 2023)
- What ..... (be) you doing now ?  
(Fayoum - West Fayoum 2023)
- She is ..... (make) tea now. (Sharkia - Diarb Nigm 2023)
- He speaks ..... (quiet). (Beheira - Daminhour 2023)
- We should be ..... (friend) to tourists.  
(Cairo - Ain Shams 2023)

### A. Listening

قم بحل اختبار تراكمي في الملحق

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- The street-food seller is ..... his food stall here.  
a. making      b. parking      c. sailing      d. selling
- He is looking forward to drinking some ..... coffee.  
a. dark      b. light      c. hot      d. cold
- Lots of ..... come this way to his food stall.  
a. tourists      b. passengers      c. mechanics      d. workers
- He is feeling .....  
a. hot      b. cold      c. warm      d. cool

### B. Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Essam is telling Maher what he did last weekend.

**Maher:** What did you do last weekend ?

Essam : (1) .....

**Maher:** Does your brother love playing football ?

Essam : (2) .....

**Maher:** (3) ..... ?

Essam : We played in the club.

**Maher:** Did you enjoy playing ?

Essam : (4) .....

**Maher:** (5) ..... ?

Essam : Sure. We will be happy.

(Cairo - Old Cairo 2024)

### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Dear Ayman,

I'd like to tell you about my new preparatory school. It's near my house, so I walk to get there. The school teachers are very kind and

they help me a lot. I was not good at maths last year. But Mr Ramzy helped me to do better. This subject is very important for our daily life. Our school library is full of interesting books. I go there once a week to borrow one. After reading, I make the most important notes to help me know a lot about the world and our life. Please, write back to tell me about the time we'll meet.

Yours,  
Ashraf

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- The opposite of the underlined word "interesting" is ".....".  
a. exciting    b. boring    c. dirty    d. important
- Ashraf walks to school because .....  
a. it's near    b. it's new  
c. it's far    d. the teachers are kind
- Ashraf goes to the library ..... a week.  
a. once    b. twice    c. three times    d. four times

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What is the main idea of the email ?

.....

5. What does the underlined word "there" refer to ?

.....

6. What do you think about what Ashraf does after reading ?

.....

## D. Vocabulary & Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- Why is Kamal ..... his food stall at this place ? - Because it is the best place in the city. *(Sharkia - East Zagazig 2024).*  
a. barking    b. moving    c. parking    d. preparing
- Our TV is broken. Can you ..... it ? *(Giza - Bolak El Dakroor 2023)*  
a. make    b. do    c. mix    d. repair
- We're very ..... to our parents who helped us a lot.  
a. angry    b. ugly    c. bad    d. grateful
- Ahmed is a fantastic ..... . He prepares meals in a big restaurant.  
a. cook    b. engineer    c. sailor    d. pilot



## 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tamer is learning a new .....  
a. language b. hobby c. skill d. game
2. Tamer can communicate better with his ..... Sami.  
a. aunt b. brother c. uncle d. cousin

## 2. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Tamer's grandfather is ill today.

Tamer: I can't come to the party today.

Tarek: (1) .....

Tamer: Because my grandfather is ill.

Tarek: (2) .....

Tamer: In the hospital.

Tarek: Why don't we visit him?

Tamer: (3) .....

Tarek: I hope he will get better soon.

Tamer: Thanks a lot.

## 3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mona ..... the room with her sister.  
a. keeps b. sings c. shares d. jumps
2. Be careful. The knife is .....  
a. sharp b. grateful c. dry d. wet
3. Deaf people can ..... by using sign language.  
a. die b. communicate c. give d. take
4. Sama walks ..... to school.  
a. slow b. slowly c. slowest d. slower
5. What is Salma ..... for her father?  
a. make b. makes c. making d. made

## 4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ahmed is thirteen years old. His father, Samir, is a businessman but his mother, Mona, is a teacher.

Mona works at a school which is not far from home so she always walks to her work. All the students like Mrs Mona because she teaches **them** well and gives them advice. Mr Samir always travels abroad. He always travels by plane.

## a. Answer the following questions:

1. What does Ahmed's father do?  
.....
2. Where does Mona work?  
.....
3. Why do all the students like Mrs Mona?  
.....
3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:  
4. The underlined word "**them**" refers to .....  
a. Mr Samir b. Mrs Mona  
c. Samir and Mona d. the students
5. Mr Samir always goes to ..... to travel abroad.  
a. the station b. school  
c. hospital d. the airport

## 5. Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. is - after - a hospital - **Amal** - looking - patients - at.  
.....
2. does - with - to - want - Tamer - **Who** - communicate?  
.....
3. happy - to - **People** - nature - need - be - by.  
.....
4. hope - school - enjoying - you - I - are - your - new.  
.....

## 6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about:

"A visit to Al Azhar Park in Cairo"

.....  
.....

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

**Khalid is asking Ali about his father's job ?**

**Khalid :** Hi, Ali. What's your father's job ?

**Ali :** (1) .....  
 a. He is a doctor.      b. He is a vet.  
 c. He is a teacher.      d. He is a scientist

**Khalid :** (2) .....

- a. What is he doing ?
- b. Where does he work ?
- c. When does he go home ?
- d. Why is he happy ?

**Ali :** He works in Tanta prep school.

**Khalid :** (3) .....

- a. When does he finish ?
- b. What does he like ?
- c. What does he teach ?
- d. Who does he teach ?

**Ali :** He teaches English.

**Khalid :** Do his pupils like him ?

**Ali :** (4) .....  
 a. Yes, I am.      b. No, he didn't  
 c. Yes, they will.      d. Yes, they do.

**Khalid :** Do you want to be a teacher like him ?

**Ali :** (5) .....  
 a. Yes, I do.      b. No, he doesn't.  
 c. No, they aren't.      d. Yes, I did.

- Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

- I ..... (read) a book at the moment.  
 a. reads      b. am reading  
 c. reading      d. is reading
- It is important to drive ..... (careful) when it is raining.  
 a. care      b. carefulness  
 c. carefully      d. careless
- The cat is sitting under the tree ..... (lazy).  
 a. laziest      b. lazily  
 c. lazier      d. laziness
- My brother ..... (do) his homework now.  
 a. doing      b. does  
 c. are doing      d. is doing

# UNIT THREE



## Great jobs

SB pages 22 : 31    WB pages 86:92

### Unit Objectives :

- **Reading :**  
An article about the Egyptian handball team; a text about Ancient Egyptian doctors ; a text about heroes
- **Writing :**  
A paragraph about rubbish collectors, a paragraph about someone you are proud of
- **Listening :**  
Descriptions of different heroes; a talk about a family history; a discussion about what makes a hero
- **Speaking :**  
Talking about heroes; discussing your family history; saying what you are proud of; checking you understand
- **Language :**  
used to
- **Life Skills :**  
Collaboration; Communication
- **Values :**  
Work values; Love and respect for homeland and the family
- **Issues :**  
Citizenship; Loyalty and belonging; National unity



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

date of birth = birth date (n)	تاريخ الميلاد	competition (n)	مسابقة / منافسة
hero (n)	بطل	handball (n)	رياضة كرة اليد
junior (adj) , (n)	ناشيء / حديث السن	final (adj) , (n)	نهائي - مباراة نهائية
senior (adj) , (n)	أكبر سنًا / أكثر خبرة	treatments (n)	علاجات
<b>jobs وظائف</b>			
surgeon (n)	طبيب جراح	sports coach (n)	مدرب رياضي
patron (n)	راعٍ/كفيل	nuclear scientist (n)	عالم نووي



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

#### • Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

senior - hero - junior - competitions - handball

1. You can use your hands to score goals in a ..... game.
2. My grandfather is my ..... . He helps poor people a lot.
3. Young people like to join sports .....
4. When he was 10, he played football in the ..... team.

### Lesson 1

SB pages 22 & 23 WB page 86

princess (n)	أميرة	Bilbeis (n)	مدينة بلبيس
Khedive (n)	خديوي [حاكم مصر]	heart problems (n)	مشاكل بالقلب
national university (n)	الجامعة الوطنية	experiments (n)	تجارب [علمية]
Cairo University (n)	جامعة القاهرة	primary (adj)	ابتدائي
shark (n)	سمكة القرش	preparatory (adj)	إعدادي
attack (ed) (v) , (n)	يهاجم - هجوم	land (n)	أرض
female (n)	أنثى	nuclear (adj)	نووي

### Lesson 2

SB pages 24 & 25 WB page 87

Tunisia (n)	دولة تونس	pronounce (d) (v)	ينطق
against (prep)	ضد / في مواجهة	chess player (n)	لاعب شطرنج

teamwork (n)	عمل جماعي	event (n)	حدث
prize (n)	جائزة	Tunisian (adj)	تونسي (الجنسية)

### Sports Expressions

### تعابير رياضية

the Egyptian handball team المنتخب المصري لكرة اليد	the Africa Cup of Nations كأس الأمم الإفريقية
the Egyptian junior team منتخب الناشئين المصري	the under-19 World Cup Final نهائي كأس العالم للشباب تحت ١٩ سنة
the Egyptian senior team المنتخب الأول المصري	the Handball Africa Cup of Nations كأس الأمم الإفريقية لكرة اليد

### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

### تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
bear يلد	bore	born
mean يعني/يقصد	meant	meant
throw يرمى/يلقي	threw	thrown
become يصبح	became	become

### Study these definitions

### ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>handball</b>	a sport with seven players in a team. They score by throwing the ball into a goal كرة اليد
<b>competition</b>	an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something مسابقة - بطولة
<b>sports coach</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>someone who teaches people how to play or improve a sport</li> <li>a person who trains or helps people to do a sport</li> </ul> مدرّب رياضي
<b>junior</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>for younger people</li> <li>connected with young people or involving young people</li> </ul> الناشئين (أقل من ١٨ سنة)
<b>senior</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>for older people</li> <li>more advanced and / or older</li> </ul> الشباب (أكثر من ١٨ سنة)
<b>surgeon</b>	a special doctor who knows how to look inside a person's body to help people who are ill طبيب جراح
<b>scientist</b>	someone who does experiments to study and find out about how things work عالم
<b>patron</b>	a person who gives money to help people or places راع/كفيل
<b>hero</b>	a person that people admire because they have done something very brave or good بطل
<b>female</b>	being a woman or a girl أنثى

## UNIT THREE

### Collocations

### متلازمات لفظية

<b>get</b>	a job	يحصل على وظيفة	<b>win</b>	a competition	يفوز بمسابقة
	a prize	يحصل على جائزة	<b>lose</b>	a leg	يفقد ساقاً
<b>do</b>	experiments	يقوم بتجارب علمية		a competition	يخسر مسابقة
<b>start</b>	preparatory school	يبدأ الدراسة بالمرحلة الإعدادية	<b>make</b>	a hero	يصنع بطلاً
	a charity	ينشأ مؤسسة خيرية			

### Vocabulary Study

#### Synonyms and Antonyms

#### مترادفات ومتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
brave	شجاع	courageous		cowardly	جبان
patient	صبور	tolerant		impatient	غير صبور
successful	ناجح	—		unsuccessful	غير ناجح
similar	متشابه	alike		different	مختلف
win	يفوز	succeed in		lose	يخسر

#### Prefixes & Suffixes

#### مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	Function	الوظيفة	Examples	أمثلة
-ess	تحول الاسم المذكر لمؤنث		princess	أميرة
-er	تحول الفعل لاسم		player	لاعب
-ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة		successful	ناجح
-ment	تحول الفعل لاسم		treatment	علاج



### Exercise

### on Vocabulary Study

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- To change "treat" into a noun, we add the suffix ".....".  
a. -ess      b. -al      c. -ment      d. -able
- The policeman was ..... and he could arrest the thief.  
a. helpless      b. cowardly      c. brave      d. small
- The antonym of the word "win" is ".....".  
a. lose      b. pass      c. gain      d. succeed

4. The female name of "prince" is " ..... ".  
 a. nobleman      b. princess      c. waitress      d. actress
5. Ahmed is a brave man. This means he is not .....  
 a. strong      b. cowardly      c. courageous      d. patient



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 win/beat

#### \* win (v) won – won

يفوز (بميدالية / كأس / مسابقة)

- ▶ Who **won** the game yesterday ?
- ▶ Egypt often **wins** in the African football competitions.

#### \* beat (v) beat – beaten

يهزم (شخص / فريق)

- ▶ Salim always **beats** me at chess.

(SB page 29 / WB page 87)

### 2 sport / sports

#### \* sport (n)

رياضة

- ▶ Handball is my favourite **sport**.

#### \* a good sport

تستخدم عند وصف شخص بأنه ذو روح رياضية وأخلاق طيبة

- ▶ Mohammed Salah is **a good sport**.

#### \* sports (adj)

رياضي

- ▶ **SB** Omar Abdelkader worked as **a sports** coach.

(SB page 23 - 24)

### 3 born in/on/into

#### \* born in

ولد في (مكان / سنة)

- ▶ I was **born in** Cairo in 1990.

#### \* born on

ولد في (يوم / تاريخ)

- ▶ My dad was **born on** Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> September.

#### \* born into

ولد لـ (عائلة ...)

- ▶ She was **born into** a rich family.

(SB page 23)

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير و حروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
improve in a sport      يتحسن في رياضة	look inside the body      يفحص الجسم من الداخل
a long time ago      منذ وقت طويل	play for      يلعب لصالح [فريق]
help people with heart problems      يساعد الأشخاص الذين يعانون من مشاكل في القلب	throw ... into      يلقي ... في
become the number one chess player      يصبح لاعب الشطرنج الأول	



## Main points on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## Lesson [1] SB page 23

## A. Omar Abdelkader.

1. He was born in 1994.
2. When he was 22, a shark **attacked**<sup>(1)</sup> him.
3. He lost his leg, but he didn't stop wanting to be **successful**<sup>(2)</sup>.
4. Now, he helps other people with similar problems.
5. He is an important **sports coach**<sup>(3)</sup>.

## B. Sameera Moussa.

1. She was born in 1917.
2. She studied science at Cairo University.
3. She was Egypt's first female **nuclear scientist**<sup>(4)</sup>.
4. She wanted to use nuclear **treatments**<sup>(5)</sup> in medicine.

## C. Magdy Yacoub.

1. He was born in Bilbeis in 1935.
2. He went to Cairo University.
3. He became an important **heart surgeon**<sup>(6)</sup>.
4. He helped people with heart problems.
5. He started a **charity**<sup>(7)</sup> to help children with heart problems.

## D. Princess Fatma Ismail.

1. She was the daughter of Khedive Ismail.
2. She was born in 1853.
3. She became a **patron**<sup>(8)</sup> of Egypt's first national university.
4. She gave a lot of money and land to help it to open.

## Lesson [2] SB page 24

1. The Egyptian handball team are **heroes**<sup>(9)</sup>.
2. They won the handball **Africa Cup of Nations**<sup>(10)</sup> in Tunisia.
3. They won the **final**<sup>(11)</sup> against Tunisia 27-23.
4. In 2019, the **junior team**<sup>(12)</sup> won the under-19 World Cup.
5. They were the first team from Africa to win it.
6. In 2018, the **senior team**<sup>(13)</sup> were also in the final of the Africa Cup of Nations.
7. Now, lots of people in Egypt love the sport.

## Lesson [2] WB page 87

1. My brother Ahmed loves playing handball.
2. When he was eight, he played in a junior competition.
3. The team didn't win but it came second.
4. Last year, he **played for**<sup>(14)</sup> a senior team.
5. He was very pleased.

عام نووي (4)	مدرب رياضي (3)	تاج (2)	هاتم (1)
ممول (8)	مؤسسة خيرية (7)	دراج القلب (6)	علاجات (5)
فريق الناشئين (12)	نهائي (11)	كأس الأمم الأفريقية (10)	ابطال (9)
يلعب لصالح (فريق) (14)			الفريق الأول (الكبير) (13)

الجميل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية أخرى:

\* Your role model \* Your favourite hero \* A sports star \* The Egyptian handball team \* Your favourite sport

## II

## Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening



## Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 23

## Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الشهم  
ونصوص الاستماع



1. **Photo one** shows Omar Abdelkader.

He was born in 1994. When Omar was 22, a **shark**<sup>(1)</sup> **attacked**<sup>(2)</sup> him and he lost a leg, but this did not stop him wanting to be **successful**<sup>(3)</sup>. Now he helps other people with **similar**<sup>(4)</sup> problems and he is an important **sports coach**<sup>(5)</sup>.



2. **Photo two** shows Sameera Moussa. Sameera was born in 1917 and studied science at Cairo University. She was Egypt's first **female**<sup>(6)</sup> **nuclear scientist**<sup>(7)</sup> and wanted to use nuclear **treatments**<sup>(8)</sup> in **medicine**<sup>(9)</sup>. She died in 1952.



3. **Photo three** shows Magdy Yacoub. He was born in Bilbeis in 1935. He went to **Cairo University**<sup>(10)</sup> and became an important **heart surgeon**<sup>(11)</sup>. He then helped people with heart problems for many years. He stopped most of his work a long time ago, but in 2006, he **started a charity**<sup>(12)</sup> to help children with heart problems<sup>(13)</sup>.



4. **Photo four** shows Princess Fatma Ismail. The **princess**<sup>(14)</sup> was the **daughter**<sup>(15)</sup> of Khedive Ismail<sup>(16)</sup> and she was born in 1853. She became a **patron**<sup>(17)</sup> of Egypt's first **national university**<sup>(18)</sup> after she gave a lot of money and land to help it to open in 1908. From 1908 to 1940, people called it the Egyptian University, but it is now called Cairo University.



(6) أنثى	(5) مدرب رياضى	(4) مشابه	(3) ناجح	(2) هاجم	(1) سمكة القرش
(12) أنشأ جمعية خيرية	(11) جراح قلب	(10) جامعة القاهرة	(9) الطب	(8) علاجات	(7) عالم نووى
(18) الجامعة الوطنية	(17) راع / كفيل	(16) الخديوى إسماعيل	(15) ابنة	(14) أميرة	(13) لديهم مشاكل بالقلب



## Reading

### on Lesson 1 WB page 86

When my parents were younger, they lived in Luxor. Then they **moved** to <sup>(1)</sup> Port Said in 1990. My father **got a job** <sup>(2)</sup> in Cairo 15 years ago. They then lived in a small flat from 2005 to 2006. They moved to the bigger flat a year later when I was born.

(1) ينتقل إلى (2) يحصل على وظيفة

### on Lesson 2 SB page 24

## Egyptian heroes<sup>(1)</sup>!

The **Egyptian handball team** <sup>(2)</sup> are heroes! They won the handball **Africa Cup of Nations** <sup>(3)</sup> in Tunisia in 2020. They won the **final** <sup>(4)</sup> **against** <sup>(5)</sup> Tunisia 27-23. That means they are the best team in Africa!



This is not the first time Egypt's handball team played in a final. In 2019, the **junior team** <sup>(6)</sup> won the under-19 **World Cup** <sup>(7)</sup> Final 32-28 against Germany. They were the first team from Africa to win it. In 2018, the **senior team** <sup>(8)</sup> were also in the final of the Africa Cup of Nations, but **lost** <sup>(9)</sup> the final against Tunisia.

Now, lots of people in Egypt love the sport. Let's **hope** <sup>(10)</sup> the Egyptian team can win **competitions** <sup>(11)</sup> again!

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

#### Extracting information

#### استخراج المعلومات

##### Learn

1. Where did the Egyptian handball team win the handball Africa Cup of Nations ?

- In Tunisia

##### Practise

2. What did the Egyptian junior team win in 2019 ?

- (1) أبطال
- (2) فريق كرة اليد المصري
- (3) كأس الأمم الأفريقية
- (4) مباراة نهائية
- (5) ضد
- (6) فريق الناشئين
- (7) كأس العالم
- (8) الفريق الأول
- (9) خسر
- (10) يتمنى
- (11) منافسات / مسابقات

• on Lesson 2 WB page 87

My brother Ahmed loves playing handball, and he's very **good at** <sup>(1)</sup> it. When he was eight, he played in a junior competition for a team in our city. The team didn't win, but it was second. Ahmed is now 21 and last year, he **played for** <sup>(2)</sup> an important senior team. He was very pleased. Next year, the team are playing in an important competition. I hope they win it !



(1) جيد فى (2) يلعب لصالح (فريق)



## Exercise

## on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

### ► Key vocabulary

1. My father is my ..... . He built a big hospital for the poor.  
a. friend                      b. doctor                      c. teacher                      d. hero
2. A ..... does experiments to study and find out about how things work.  
a. surgeon                      b. charity worker                      c. patient                      d. scientist
3. The ..... Egyptian team won the under -19 World Cup Final in 2019.  
a. senior                      b. oldest                      c. children                      d. junior

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

4. My brother became the number one chess ..... and won the gold medal. (Assuit - Manflout 2024)  
a. inventor                      b. player                      c. driver                      d. sailor
5. **SB** Sameera Moussa was Egypt's first ..... nuclear scientist.  
a. male                      b. female                      c. girl                      d. daughter
6. **WB** In 2006, Dr Magdy Yacoub started a charity to help children with ..... problems. (Multidisciplinary - Assuit 2021)  
a. cold                      b. eyes                      c. heart                      d. legs

### El-Moasser Exercises

7. My brother is a clever ..... He knows how to look inside a person's body to help him.  
a. surgeon                      b. patient                      c. patron                      d. baker

## UNIT THREE

8. .... is the ability to work well together in a group.  
 a. Housework      b. Homework      c. Teamwork      d. Artwork
9. We all hope our national team will be in the next ..... Championship.  
 a. Charity      b. Experiments      c. World Cup      d. Operation

### ► Definitions

10. A/An ..... is a person who gives money to help people or places.  
 a. sports coach      b. surgeon      c. patron      d. engineer
11. .... is a sport with seven players in a team.  
 a. Chess      b. Football      c. Handball      d. Tennis
12. A ..... is a woman or a girl.  
 a. female      b. patron      c. hero      d. male
13. A ..... is someone who teaches people how to play or improve in a sport.  
 a. sports player      b. sports star      c. sports coach      d. sportsman

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. My brother ..... the school competition for the best poem.  
 a. won      b. beat      c. gained      d. earned
15. Sama was born ..... Monday 3<sup>rd</sup> June.  
 a. on      b. in      c. by      d. for
16. Mohamed Salah played ..... Liverpool Football Club and scored many goals.  
 a. at      b. in      c. of      d. for

## 2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

### ► 1. Asking and answering questions about what a hero makes :

١. توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها حول ما يصنع البطل :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. What makes a hero ? ١. ما الذي يصنع البطل ؟	- A hero should be brave, kind and patient. He shouldn't be nervous. - ينبغي أن يتسم البطل بالشجاعة والطيبة والصبر. ولا يجب عليه أن يكون عصبى.
2. Can you give examples of heroes from other countries ? ٢. هل يمكنك إعطاء أمثلة لأبطال من دول أخرى ؟	- Yes, I can. The American basketball player Michael Jordan. - نعم، أستطيع. لاعب كرة السلة الأمريكي مايكل جوردن.

## 2. Asking and answering questions about teamwork :

٢. توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها حول العمل الجماعي :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. Why is teamwork important ? ١. لماذا العمل الجماعي هام ؟	- Because when people have teamwork skill, they become successful. - لأنه عندما يتمتع الناس بمهارة العمل الجماعي يصبحون ناجحين.
2. Which team do you like ? Why ? ٢. أى فريق تحب ؟ ولماذا ؟	- My favourite team is Liverpool. - I like Liverpool because they play well. - فريقى المفضل هو ليفربول. أحب فريق ليفربول لأنهم يلعبون جيداً.
3. Did the team win many games last year ? Why / Why not ? ٣. هل فاز الفريق بالعديد من المباريات العام الماضى ؟ لما / لما لا ؟	- Yes, they won many games because they had teamwork skill. - نعم، فازوا بمباريات عديدة لأنهم كان لديهم مهارة العمل الجماعي.
4. When did your favourite team last win a competition ? ٤. متى كانت آخر مرة فاز فريقك المفضل بمسابقة ؟	- My favourite team (Liverpool) won the European Championship last year. - فريقى المفضل (ليفربول) فاز ببطولة أوروبا العام الماضى.
5. Would you like to play in a team? Why ? ٥. هل تود أن تلعب فى فريق ؟ ولماذا ؟	- Yes, I'd like to play in a team to experience teamwork . - نعم، أود أن ألعب فى فريق حتى أجرب العمل الجماعي.

## 3. Writing

### مهارة الكتابة

جمل تساعدك على حل سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية ورسالة البريد الإلكتروني فى الورقة الامتحانية.

### ما الذى يصنع البطل What makes a hero

1. A hero should help others with their problems.  
ينبغي على البطل أن يساعد الآخرين فى مشاكلهم.
2. A hero should be brave, kind and patient.  
ينبغي على البطل أن يتسم بالشجاعة والطيبة والصبر.
3. A hero should learn good things from other heroes.  
ينبغي على البطل أن يتعلم أشياء جيدة من الأبطال الآخرين.
4. A hero should help the poor and the needy.  
ينبغي على البطل أن يساعد الفقراء والمحتاجين.

### III Language

#### The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

##### Formation التكوين

##### 1 Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة

##### (A) Regular verbs : (أ) الأفعال المنتظمة :

التصريف الثانى للفعل + الفاعل Subject

• لاحظ : قواعد إضافة (d/ ed/ ied) للفعل المنتظم فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

الفعل المنتهى بـ	يضاف له	مثال Example
e (بعض الأفعال)	+ d	invite → invited
+ y (حرف ساكن)	+ ied	carry → carried
+ y (حرف متحرك)	+ ed	stay → stayed
[حرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك] بعض الأفعال لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير بها	+ ed يضاعف الحرف الأخير	stop → stopped visit → visited

##### (B) Irregular verbs : (ب) الأفعال غير المنتظمة :

الفعل	الماضى	الفعل	الماضى
cut	cut	put	put
eat	ate	drink	drank

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة تحفظ مثل :

• لاحظ الآتى : يتم استخدام (verb to be) فى زمن الماضى كالاتى.

I / He / She / It / (فاعل مفرد)	→	was / wasn't
We / They / You / (فاعل جمع)	→	were / weren't

ex. - Dr Magdy Yacoub **was** born in 1935.

- The Egyptian handball team **were** the first team from Africa to win the World Cup.

• لاحظ : فى حالة النفى نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

##### 2 Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المنفية

المصدر + didn't + فاعل Subject

ex. - Rana **didn't** study her lessons yesterday.

• لاحظ : تستخدم (could / couldn't + inf.) للتعبير عن القدرة أو عدم القدرة فى الماضى.

ex. - When I was young, I **could** play football, but I **couldn't** play chess.

3

## Interrogative

صيغة  
الاستفهام

## (A) Yes/No question : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

◀ في صيغة الاستفهام باستخدام «هل» نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

? المصدر inf. + فاعل subject + Did

ex. - Did you clean the car yesterday ?

\* Yes, I did.

\* No, I didn't.

## (B) Wh-question : (ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

◀ أما في صيغة الاستفهام باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

? المصدر inf. + فاعل subject + did + Question word  
كلمة الاستفهام

ex. - What did you study ? - Where did she go ?

## Key words كلمات دالة

• in the past في الماضي	• سنة ماضية to سنة ماضية + from	last	year السنة الماضية
• مدة محددة + ago منذ	• When I was ( young ) / ( little )		month الشهر الماضي
• yesterday أمس	• عندما كنت [صغيراً في السن]		week الأسبوع الماضي
• in (2000) سنة ماضية +			Tuesday الثلاثاء الماضي

ex. - Dr Magdy stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time ago.

## Usage الاستخدام

(1) It is used to talk about actions that started and finished in the past.

◀ يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للحديث عن أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

ex. - She went to school two hours ago.

(2) It is used to talk about past habits.

◀ يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط أيضاً للحديث عن عادات في الماضي.

ex. - When I was young, I played football every day.

• لاحظ الآتي :

كيفية نطق (ed) فى نهاية الأفعال

ed

تنطق / t /

تنطق / d /

تنطق / Id /

إذا انتهى الفعل بأحد الأصوات التالية

/p/ , /k/ , /f/ , /s/  
/ʃ/ , /tʃ//b/ , /g/ , /v/ , /z/  
/ð/ , /ʒ/ , /dʒ/ , /l/  
/m/ , /n/  
صوت متحرك /vowel/

/t/ , /d/

Examples :

/t/	
/p/	helped
/k/	liked
/f/	laughed
/s/	kissed
/ʃ/	washed
/tʃ/	watched

/d/	
/l/	called
/m/	climbed
/n/	listened
vowel	played
	married
/v/	lived

/Id/	
/t/	greeted
	planted
	waited
	invited
	wanted
/d/	needed



## Exercises

on Language

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB &amp; Previous Exams

1. **SB** Egypt's handball team ..... in a final before. It's not the first time.  
a. play      b. played      c. playing      d. plays  
(Dakahlia - Sherbeen 2024)
2. I helped my mother with housework and I ..... to school yesterday.  
a. go      b. goes      c. going      d. went  
(Assuit - Al badary 2024)

3. **SB** When ..... they win the World Cup Final ? – Last year.  
 a. were      b. had      c. did      d. does
4. **WB** My uncle Rashid ..... born in 1961. *(Assiut – Sedfa 2022)*  
 a. were      b. is      c. am      d. was
5. .... they win the last match or not ? *(Beheira – Rashid 2023)*  
 a. Did      b. Do      c. Were      d. Had
6. **SB** Where did your parents ..... when they were younger ?  
 a. lived      b. living      c. live      d. to live

### El-Moasser Exercises

7. Huda ..... at home yesterday.  
 a. was      b. were      c. is      d. are
8. They ..... at the museum three weeks ago.  
 a. aren't      b. weren't      c. didn't      d. don't
9. .... they busy at school yesterday ?  
 a. Was      b. Do      c. Did      d. Were
10. She ..... the match yesterday. She enjoyed it very much.  
 a. watched      b. watching      c. didn't watch      d. doesn't watch
11. They ..... the library ten minutes ago.  
 a. leaves      b. left      c. leave      d. leaving
12. Were you worried about your brother ? - Yes, .....  
 a. I were      b. I was      c. you were      d. they were

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. **SB** Magdy Yacoub ..... (is) born in 1935.
2. **WB** They ..... (live) in a small flat from 2005 to 2006.
3. The senior team ..... (not win) the final in 2018. *(Fayoum - East Fayoum 2024)*
4. **WB** They ..... (get) married in 1983.
5. How ..... (do) you travel to Alexandria last year ? *(Qena – Farshout 2023)*

### El-Moasser Exercises

6. They ..... (are) at the club yesterday.
7. When she was four, she ..... (can't) speak English.
8. Did Noha ..... (went) home ?
9. .... (Do) you visit the country before ?
10. Mona finished her homework two hours ..... (yesterday).

Step 1	Vocabulary	Step 2	Speaking	Step 3	Writing
	اختر المفردات اللغوية	اختر مدى إتقانك لمهاراة التحدث	اختر مدى إتقانك لمهاراة الكتابة		
<b>Your hero</b>					
<b>Read and complete :</b>		<b>Complete the following dialogue :</b>			
1. Who is your ..... ? - My great grandfather.		<b>Ashraf</b> asks <b>Ayman</b> about his hero. <b>Ashraf</b> : Who is your hero, Ayman ? <b>Ayman</b> : (1) ..... <b>Ashraf</b> : What was your great grandfather's job ? <b>Ayman</b> : (2) ..... <b>Ashraf</b> : Great ! (3) ..... ? <b>Ayman</b> : He worked in a big hospital in Cairo. <b>Ashraf</b> : Did he like his work ? <b>Ayman</b> : (4) ..... <b>Ashraf</b> : (5) ..... ? <b>Ayman</b> : Because he helped a lot of poor people.			
2. What was your great grandfather's ..... وظيفة ؟ - He was a surgeon.					
3. Why was your great grandfather your hero ? - Because he helped a lot of ..... فقير people.					
<b>Sameera Moussa</b>					
1. Who is Sameera Moussa ? - She is Egypt's first female ..... نوبوى scientist.		<b>Iman and Nawal are talking about Sameera Moussa.</b> <b>Iman</b> : Do you know who is in this photo ? <b>Nawal</b> : (1) ..... <b>Iman</b> : She is Sameera Moussa. <b>Nawal</b> : (2) ..... ? <b>Iman</b> : She is Egypt's first female nuclear scientist. <b>Nawal</b> : That's amazing ! (3) ..... ? <b>Iman</b> : She was born in 1917. <b>Nawal</b> : Where did she study science ? <b>Iman</b> : (4) ..... <b>Nawal</b> : Many famous people graduated from Cairo University. Have you met her before ? <b>Iman</b> : (5) ..... She died in 1952.			
2. Where did she study science ? - She studied science at Cairo ..... جامعة					
3. Have you met her before ? - No. She ..... مات in 1952.					

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 1 & 2

● Understand

● Apply

● Create

### 1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Hossam about his hero.

Ahmed : Who is your hero, Hossam ?

Hossam : (1) .....

Ahmed : What was your grandfather's job ?

Hossam : (2) .....

Ahmed : Great ! (3) .....

Hossam : He worked in a big hospital in Mansoura.

Ahmed : Did he use to be a volunteer ?

Hossam : (4) .....

Ahmed : (5) .....

Hossam : Yes, I am so proud of him.

(Dakahlia - Sinbellawein 2024)

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My brother Mahmoud loves playing handball. He is very good at it. When he was nine, he played in a junior competition for a team in our city. The team did their best, but they didn't win. Mahmoud felt sad, but he didn't lose hope. He encouraged his friends to try again. He advised them to train hard and never lose hope. Then, they joined the Egyptian handball team .

Mahmoud and his team won the handball Africa Cup of Nations in Tunisia in 2020. They won the final against Tunisia 27 - 23. That means they are the best team in Africa. Now lots of people in Egypt love the sport. Let's hope the Egyptian team can win competitions again. So, we learn "With hard work, you can achieve all your goals". (Cairo - Ain Shams 2024)

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mahmoud is very good at .....  
a. squash      b. tennis      c. football      d. handball
- The underlined pronoun "He" refers to .....  
a. Mahmoud's brother      b. Mahmoud  
c. a swimmer      d. Tunisia
- We hope the Egyptian team can win the .....  
a. competitions      b. jewels      c. treasure      d. model

#### B. Answer the following questions:

- What did Mahmoud advise his team ?  
.....
- When did Mahmoud and his team win the handball Africa Cup of Nations ?  
.....
- What did you learn from this passage ?  
.....

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. My brother is 12 years old, he wants to join the ..... team.  
a. junior                      b. senior                      c. old                      d. small  
*(Sharkia - Mashtool 2024)*
2. I see what you ..... . It's important to do the project.  
a. eat                      b. mean                      c. pay                      d. give
3. A/An ..... is an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something.  
a. teamwork                      b. treatment                      c. competition                      d. experiment
4. **SB** When Omar was 20, a shark ..... him.  
a. talked                      b. attacked                      c. improved                      d. won
5. **SB** Sameera Moussa wanted to use nuclear ..... in medicine.  
a. competitions                      b. treatments                      c. nations                      d. problems
6. That man had an accident yesterday and he ..... his hand.  
a. lost                      b. won                      c. missed                      d. got  
*(Sharkia - West Zagazig 2023)*
7. A sports coach teaches players how to play in a game or ..... in a sport.  
a. improve                      b. eat                      c. damage                      d. throw
8. Did Ali ..... to the shops yesterday ?  
a. go                      b. went                      c. going                      d. goes  
*(Cairo - Maadi 2024)*
9. Who ..... you finish your homework yesterday ?  
a. helps                      b. helping                      c. helped                      d. help  
*(Minia - Mallawy 2023)*
10. They moved to a new flat a year ..... .  
a. since                      b. last                      c. next                      d. ago

**4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. I ..... (study) English last night.
2. We ..... (not go) to school yesterday.  
*(Qena - Doshna 2023)*
3. .... (Be) they happy at yesterday's party ?
4. Yesterday, I ..... (be) at school from 8 to 2.

**5 Write an email of about NINETY(90) words :**

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

- To your friend Maha to tell her about your favourite hero. Your name is Nour and your email address is nour@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is maha@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## I

## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

charity (n)	جمعية خيرية / مؤسسة خيرية	pump (ed) (v) , (n)	بضخة - مضخة
countryside (n)	الريف	cuts (n)	جروح
emergency (n)	حالة طوارئ	infection (n)	عدوى - إصابة
natural disaster (n)	كارثة طبيعية	bones (n)	عظام
volunteer (n)	متطوع	earthquake (n)	زلزال

## Parts of the body

## أجزاء الجسم

In your head		In your body	
brain	المخ	lungs	الرئتين
eyes	أعين	heart	القلب
mouth	فم	stomach	المعدة



## Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

stomach - lungs - heart - brain - volunteer

- The ..... pumps blood around the body.
- A ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.
- The ..... take in air and help us to breathe.
- A ..... tells the parts of our body what to do.

## Lesson 3

SB pages 26 &amp; 27 WB page 88

family history (n)	تاريخ العائلة	scary (adj)	مخيف
necessary (adj)	ضروري / هام	life-lives (n)	حياة - حيوات
school project (n)	مشروع / بحث دراسي	great grandmother	الجدة الكبرى
the Red Crescent (n)	جمعية الهلال الأحمر	special (adj)	خاص / مميز

## UNIT THREE

### Lesson 4

SB page 28

WB page 89

parts (n)	أجزاء	blood (n)	الدم
function (n)	مهمة / وظيفة	medicines (n)	أدوية
breathe (d) (v)	يتنفس	infect (ed) (v)	يصيب بالعدوى / يعدي
mend (ed) (v)	يصلح - يعالج	pieces (n)	قطع
broken (adj)	مكسور	jewellery (n)	مجوهرات
tomato plants (n)	نباتات الطماطم	furniture (n)	أثاث

### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
pay يدفع	paid	paid
burn يحرق / يحترق	burnt / burned	burnt / burned

### Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>charity</b>	an organisation that gives money, food, etc. to people who are in need جمعية خيرية
<b>cut</b>	an injury when something cuts you, made by something sharp جرح - قطع
<b>infection</b>	a disease in a part of your body إصابة / عدوى
<b>countryside</b>	the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature الريف
<b>emergency</b>	something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about. حالة طوارئ
<b>volunteer</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>someone who works for no money to help people</li> <li>a person who does a job without being paid for it</li> </ul> منتوع
<b>natural disaster</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a terrible event, such as an earthquake</li> <li>something that happens in nature and causes a lot of damage, for example a flood or an earthquake</li> </ul> كارثة طبيعية
<b>lungs</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>they take in air and help us to breathe</li> <li>the parts of the body inside the chest which we use to breathe</li> </ul> الرئتين
<b>brain</b>	it tells the parts of our body what to do المخ
<b>heart</b>	it pumps blood around the body قلب

<b>proud</b>	feeling happy about something you have done or are connected with فخور
<b>pump</b>	make water, air, gas, etc. move in a particular direction; the thing you use to do this بضخ - مضخة

### Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms		مترادفات ومتضادات
Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
live يعيش	exist - survive	die يموت
serious خطير	dangerous	safe آمن
repair يصلح	mend - fix	break - damage يكسر - يدمر
special خاص / مميز	significant - unusual	usual عادي

Prefixes & Suffixes		مقاطع بادئة ونهاية
Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	infection عدوى
-ent	تكون الصفة من الفعل	different مختلف
-al	تكون الصفة من الاسم	natural طبيعي



### Exercise

#### on Vocabulary Study

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- To change the word "infect" into a noun, we add ".....".  
a. -ed      b. -ious      c. -ion      d. -ing
- To form an adjective from the verb "differ", we add ".....".  
a. -ent      b. -ly      c. -ive      d. -ation
- We need to repair our computer. The synonym of the word "repair" is ".....".  
a. break      b. mend      c. prepare      d. build
- "Live" and "die" are .....  
a. synonyms      b. antonyms      c. nouns      d. adjectives
- To get the adjective from "nature", we add the suffix ".....".  
a. -ic      b. -able      c. -ity      d. -al



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 volunteer - voluntary

\* **volunteer (n)**

متطوع

▶ Salim is a **volunteer** in a team.

\* **voluntary (adj.)**

تطوعي

▶ He's doing much **voluntary** work.

(SB page 26)

### 2 breathe - breath

\* **breathe (v)**

يتنفس

▶ He isn't dead. He is still **breathing**.

\* **breath (n)**

نفس

▶ "Take a deep **breath**," said the doctor.

(SB page 29)

### 3 proud

\* **proud of + (v + ing) / (اسم)**

فخور بـ

▶ - Basem is **proud of** being a policeman.  
- Basem is **proud of** his job.

\* **proud to + (inf.)**

فخور أن

▶ Basem is **proud to be** a policeman.

### 4 special hospital / private hospital

\* **special hospital**

مستشفى (أنشأت لعلاج مرض معين)

▶ There is a **special hospital** for treating cancer.

\* **private hospital**

مستشفى (خاصة - ملك لشخص .....

▶ Today **private hospitals** are too expensive.

(WB page 88)

### Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
work for no money	يعمل بدون مقابل	different to / from	مختلف عن
do a school project	يقوم ببحث دراسي	pay for	يدفع [مال] لـ
start a charity	ينشأ مؤسسة خيرية	cut ..... into	يقطع .... إلى
take in air	يستنشق [هواء]	a volunteer for	متطوع لـ .....
sew cuts	يخيط الجروح	pleased with	مسرور من / فرح بـ
for the first time	لأول مرة	write down	يدون
stop infection	يمنع الإصابة / العدوى	fall off	يسقط من على



## Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

### Lesson [3] SB page 26

1. Yasser didn't use to know much about his family history.
2. Last week, Yasser did a school project.
3. It was about someone in Yasser's family.
4. Yasser did some research and found out interesting things.
5. Yasser knew that his grandfather was a doctor.
6. He worked for a charity.
7. He used to live in the **countryside**<sup>(1)</sup>.
8. He worked as a **volunteer**<sup>(2)</sup> for the **Red Crescent**<sup>(3)</sup>.
9. He helped when there was an **earthquake**<sup>(4)</sup>.
10. He used to help people who didn't have much money.
11. Yasser feels very proud of him.

### Lesson [3] WB page 88

1. We should be **proud of**<sup>(5)</sup> Magdy Yacoub.
2. His family used to travel to many places.
3. His father was an important doctor.
4. Magdy also became a doctor.
5. He used to work in a **special**<sup>(6)</sup> hospital in London.
6. He used to help to give people new hearts.
7. In 2009, Magdy started a charity for ill children.
8. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives.
9. Now, many ill children can live healthy lives.

### Lesson [4] SB page 28

1. Ancient Egyptian doctors helped their patients.
2. They **wrote down**<sup>(7)</sup> their ideas.
3. They understood that the heart **pumps**<sup>(8)</sup> blood.
4. It pumps blood around the body.
5. They thought that the heart pumped air to our lungs.
6. Doctors used plants to help people with **burns**<sup>(9)</sup>.
7. They used plants to **stop infection**<sup>(10)</sup>.
8. They also knew how to mend broken bones.
9. They knew how to **sew cuts**<sup>(11)</sup>.
10. They used to make medicine from animal eyes.

### Lesson [4] WB page 89

1. Life in Ancient Egypt was **different to**<sup>(12)</sup> today.
2. Poor children didn't use to go to school.
3. Children from **rich**<sup>(13)</sup> families started school at seven.
4. Children used to enjoy playing games at home.
5. When parents died, they left houses to the sons.
6. They left **jewellery**<sup>(14)</sup> and furniture to the daughters.

(1) الريف	(2) منقطع	(3) المعال النحصر	(4) زنازل	(5) مخدور - ر
(6) مهيز - خاص	(7) نيدون	(8) يبخ	(9) حروق	(10) عدوى
(11) يخبط الدروع	(12) مختلف عن	(13) غنى - ثرى	(14) مدهوريات	

تدوينة :

الجمال السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

\* Medicine in Ancient Egypt

\* Dr Magdy Yacoub  
\* Ancient Egyptian doctors

\* Your grandfather's job  
\* Life in Ancient Egypt

## 1. Reading and Listening



### Listening

- on Lesson 3 SB page 26

**Yasser :**

I didn't use to **know very much about** <sup>(1)</sup> my family history. Then, last week, I **did a school project** <sup>(2)</sup> about someone in my family so I did some research and I **found out** <sup>(3)</sup> some really interesting things about my great grandfather.

I knew he used to be a doctor but I didn't know he **worked for a charity** <sup>(4)</sup>! My great grandfather used to **live in** <sup>(5)</sup> the countryside and he worked as a volunteer doctor for the Red Crescent when there was a natural disaster or a health emergency. **For example** <sup>(6)</sup>, when there was an earthquake, my great grandfather went to help. The work was difficult and sometimes scary. He also used to **look after** <sup>(7)</sup> people who didn't have much money. I feel very **proud of** <sup>(8)</sup> him.



### Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الفهم  
ونصوص الاستماع

(١) يعرف كثير جدًا عن	(٢) قام بإجراء مشروع مدرسي	(٣) اكتشف عن	(٤) عمل لصالح جمعية خيرية
(٥) يعيش في	(٦) على سبيل المثال	(٧) يعتني بـ	(٨) فخور بـ



### Reading

- on Lesson 3 WB page 88

We should all be proud of Magdy Yacoub. He was **born in** <sup>(1)</sup> 1935 in Bilbeis, but the family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he **stopped working** <sup>(2)</sup> in 2001, he used to work in a **special** hospital in London.



(١) وُلِدَ في	(٢) توقف عن العمل
---------------	-------------------

At this hospital, Magdy used to help to give people new hearts **for the first time** <sup>(3)</sup>. Before the 1980s, people with heart problems often died. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub **started a charity for** <sup>(4)</sup> ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to **live** long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives.

(3) لأول مرة

(4) أنشأ مؤسسة خيرية لـ

**Choose**  
the correct  
answer from  
a, b, c or d

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context : تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

Learn

1. The word "special" means not .....

a. cool b. usual c. similar d. difficult

Practise

2. The opposite of the word "live" is .....

a. drive b. give c. die d. start

• on Lesson 4 SB page 28

## Ancient Egyptian doctors

We know how Ancient Egyptian doctors helped their **patients** <sup>(1)</sup> because they wrote down their **ideas** <sup>(2)</sup> thousands of years ago.



### The body

Ancient Egyptians doctors understood that the heart **pumps** <sup>(3)</sup> **blood** <sup>(4)</sup> around the body. However, they used to think that the heart also pumped **air** <sup>(5)</sup> to our **lungs** <sup>(6)</sup>! They were also the first people to understand some of the things the **brain** <sup>(7)</sup> does, but they did not know how important it was.

### Ways to help

Doctors used to use **plants** <sup>(8)</sup> to help people with **burns** <sup>(9)</sup> and to stop **infections** <sup>(10)</sup>. We still use some of these plants today. They also knew how to **mend** <sup>(11)</sup> **broken bones** <sup>(12)</sup> and **sew** <sup>(13)</sup> **cuts** <sup>(14)</sup>, but they didn't use to know everything. For example, they used to make medicine from animal eyes. They used to think that an animal's eye helped people who could not see!

(1) المرضى

(2) أفكار

(3) يضخ

(4) الدم

(5) هواء

(6) الرئتين

(7) المخ

(8) نباتات

(9) حروق

(10) عدوى/إصابة

(11) يصلح/يعالج

(12) عظام مكسورة

(13) يخيظ

(14) جروح

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

Giving the main idea

Learn

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

**Ancient Egyptian doctors.**

Critical thinking skill

Practise

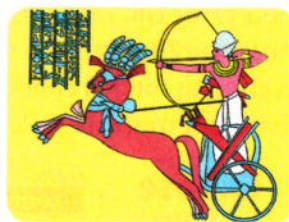
2. Do you think using animal's eye could help people who couldn't see ?

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

مهارة التفكير النقدي

• on Lesson 4 WB page 89

Life in **Ancient Egypt**<sup>(1)</sup> was different to today. **Poor children**<sup>(2)</sup> didn't use to go to school, but children from rich families used to start school when they were about seven. When they were at home, children used to enjoy playing games. When older parents died, they used to leave their houses to the **sons**<sup>(3)</sup>. However, they used to leave things inside the house, such as **jewellery**<sup>(4)</sup> and **furniture**<sup>(5)</sup>, to the **daughters**<sup>(6)</sup>.



(1) مصر القديمة (2) أطفال فقراء (3) الأبناء (4) مجوهرات (5) الأثاث (6) البنات



## Exercise

## on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

### ► Key vocabulary

- An earthquake is a natural .....  
a. kindness      b. disorder      c. disaster      d. infection
- Living in the ..... is quieter than living in the city.  
a. countryside      b. emergency      c. fire      d. charity
- You can use this tool in a/an ..... , such as a fire.  
a. pump      b. mend      c. farm      d. emergency
- He was a ..... for a charity. He works for no money.  
a. student      b. volunteer      c. brain      d. patient

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

- The ..... take in air and help us to breathe. (Gharbia - East Tanta 2024)  
a. hearts      b. brains      c. stomachs      d. lungs
- Lina's cousin is in hospital with eye ..... (Aswan - Edfu 2022)  
a. infection      b. part      c. nature      d. look
- WB** This football has no air inside it. I need a ..... to fill it.  
a. plant      b. light      c. pump      d. brain

### El-Moasser Exercises

- "....." is the opposite of the word "serious".  
a. Tired      b. Safe      c. Different      d. Excited

9. It's ..... to stay in a burning house for some time.  
 a. great                      b. natural                      c. scary                      d. safe
10. Dad always gives money to a ..... that helps poor.  
 a. charity                      b. company                      c. hotel                      d. factory

### ► Definitions

11. The ..... pumps blood around the body.  
 a. heart                      b. lung                      c. brain                      d. eye
12. The ..... tells the parts of our body what to do.  
 a. heart                      b. brain                      c. lung                      d. stomach
13. A/An ..... is an injury when something cuts you, made by something sharp.  
 a. emergency                      b. cut                      c. lung                      d. pump
14. "....." is feeling happy about something you have done or are connected with.  
 a. Special                      b. Proud                      c. Broken                      d. Scary

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. You should pay ..... the things you bought.  
 a. at                      b. for                      c. in                      d. with
16. The Ancient Egyptian doctors wrote ..... their ideas thousands of years ago.  
 a. out                      b. down                      c. of                      d. inside



## A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج

والتمكن منه في

اسبوع واحد فقط

## 2. Speaking

## مهارة التحدث

## 1. Discussion about your family history مناقشة عن تاريخ العائلة الخاصة بك

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. Do you know much about your family history ? What things do you know ? ١. هل تعرف الكثير عن تاريخ عائلتك ؟ ما الأشياء التي تعرفها ؟	- Yes, I know a lot about my great grandfather and great grandmother. - نعم، أعرف الكثير عن جدي الأكبر وجدتي الكبرى.
2. Would you like to learn more about your family history ? Why ? ٢. هل تود أن تعرف أكثر عن تاريخ عائلتك ؟ لماذا ؟	- Yes, I'd like this because I want to learn about their life and their habits. - نعم أود ذلك لأنني أريد أن أعرف عن حياتهم وعاداتهم.
3. When you were ten, did you use to live in a different house ? ٣. عندما كنت في العاشرة، هل اعتدت أن تعيش في منزل مختلف ؟	- Yes, I did. - نعم.
4. Did you use to have different hobbies ? ٤. هل اعتدت أن يكون لديك هوايات مختلفة ؟	- No, I didn't. - لا.
5. Which person in your family do you talk about ? ٥. أي شخص في عائلتك تتحدث عنه ؟	- I talk about my great grandfather. - أتحدث عن جدي الأكبر.
6. Where did your great grandfather use to live ? ٦. أين اعتاد أن يعيش جدك الأكبر ؟	- He used to live in the country. - اعتاد أن يعيش في الريف.
7. What did your great grandfather use to do ? ٧. ماذا اعتاد جدك الأكبر أن يفعل ؟	- He used to be a volunteer for the Red Crescent. - اعتاد أن يكون متطوعاً في جمعية الهلال الأحمر. - He used to help when there was a natural disaster or a health emergency. - اعتاد أن يساعد عندما كانت هناك كارثة طبيعية أو حالة طوارئ صحية.

## 2. Asking and answering questions about Ancient Egyptian doctors :

٢. توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن أطباء مصر القديمة :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. How did we know about Ancient Egyptian doctors ? ١. كيف عرفنا عن أطباء مصر القديمة ؟	- Ancient Egyptian doctors wrote down their ideas thousands of years ago. - كان أطباء مصر القديمة يدونون أفكارهم منذ آلاف السنين.
2. What did they use to know about the heart ? ٢. ماذا اعتادوا أن يعرفوا عن القلب ؟	- They understood everything about how the heart works. - لقد فهموا كل شيء عن كيفية عمل / وظيفة القلب.
3. What did they use to help people with burns and to stop infections ? ٣. ماذا استخدموا لمساعدة المصابين بالحروق ومنع العدوى ؟	- They used plants to help people with burns and to stop infections. - استخدموا النباتات لمساعدة المصابين بالحروق ومنع العدوى.

## 3. Writing

## مهارات الكتابة

### How your life used to be different when you were younger

كيف اختلفت حياتك عندما كنت صغيراً

1. When I was young, I used to do a lot of things.  
عندما كنت صغيراً، اعتدت القيام بالكثير من الأشياء.
2. When I was young, I used to get up early.  
عندما كنت صغيراً، اعتدت الاستيقاظ مبكراً.
3. When I was young, I didn't use to walk to school.  
عندما كنت صغيراً، لم اعتد التمشية إلى المدرسة.
4. When I was young, I used to go swimming with my dad.  
عندما كنت صغيراً، اعتدت الذهاب للسباحة مع والدي.
5. When I was young, I didn't use to live in the city.  
عندما كنت صغيراً، لم اعتد العيش في المدينة.
6. When I was young, I used to live in a village.  
عندما كنت صغيراً، اعتدت العيش في قرية.

### What Yasser's family used to do and didn't use to do in the past

ماذا اعتادت عائلة ياسر أن تفعل وألا تفعل في الماضي

1. Yasser's grandmother used to work in a hospital.  
اعتادت جدة ياسر أن تعمل في مستشفى.
2. Before Yasser's dad got married, he didn't use to live in Cairo.  
لم يعتاد والد ياسر أن يعيش في القاهرة قبل زواجه.
3. Yasser's uncle used to live in Tunisia.  
اعتاد عم ياسر المعيشة في تونس.
4. When Yasser's mum was a child, she used to play the piano every day.  
اعتادت والدته ياسر العزف على البيانو يومياً عندما كانت طفلة.

### III Language

#### "used to" for regular past habits and routines

تستخدم [used to] للتعبير عن العادات والأعمال الروتينية في الماضي

- You can use **(used to)** to talk about habits that were true in the past but are not true now.

- تستخدم **(used to)** للتعبير عن عادات كانت تحدث بانتظام في زمن الماضي ولم تعد تحدث الآن.

**ex.** - When I was young, I **used to** play in the street.

#### Formation التكوين

#### (A) Affirmative statement : (أ) الجملة الخبرية المثبتة :

Subject الفاعل + used to + inf. المصدر

**ex.** - My father **used to work** in a bank, but now he works in an office.

#### (B) Negative statement : (ب) الجملة الخبرية المنفية :

Subject الفاعل + didn't + use to + inf. المصدر

**ex.** - I **didn't use to like** salad when I was young, but I love it now.

#### (C) Interrogative statement : (ج) صيغة الاستفهام :

##### A. Yes / No question : أ. السؤال بـ (هل) :

• في حالة صيغة الاستفهام بـ (هل) تستخدم هذه الصيغة التالية :

Did + subject الفاعل + use to + inf. المصدر ?

**ex.** - **Did** your mother **use to read** to you when you were young ?

- Yes, she **did**.

- No, she **didn't**.

- وللإجابة المختصرة :

##### B. Wh - question : ب. السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام :

• في حالة صيغة الاستفهام بـ (كلمة استفهام) تستخدم هذه الصيغة التالية :

Question word + did + subject + use to + inf. ?

كلمة الاستفهام

فاعل

المصدر

**ex.** - Where **did** you **use to live** before you moved to this city ?



## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. My father ..... work in Aswan. *(Beheira – Delengat 2023)*  
 a. used to                      b. didn't used                      c. is used                      d. didn't use
2. **SB** Yasser's uncle ..... use to live in Tunisia. *(Minia - Beni Mazar 2024)*  
 a. didn't                      b. doesn't                      c. am                      d. wasn't
3. **WB** ..... you use to have a lot of homework ?  
 a. Do                      b. Did                      c. Have                      d. Are
4. Did Hassan ..... to live in Cairo ? *(Sharkia – East Zagazig 2022)*  
 a. use                      b. to use                      c. used                      d. using
5. **SB** Did you use to have any different hobbies ? – No, .....  
 a. I did                      b. I don't                      c. I do                      d. I didn't
6. What ..... Salma use to do when she was young ?  
 a. does                      b. did                      c. is                      d. was

*(Qalyobia - West Shubra 2024)*

#### El-Moasser Exercises

7. My uncle used to live in the countryside, but now he ..... in the city.  
 a. lives                      b. lived                      c. living                      d. live
8. She used to ..... fat, but now she's thin.  
 a. was                      b. is                      c. being                      d. be
9. My uncle used to be sad, but now he .....  
 a. doesn't                      b. isn't                      c. didn't                      d. wasn't
10. Where did you ..... go on vacation with your family ?  
 a. used to                      b. using to                      c. use                      d. use to

### 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

#### SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. **WB** Dr Magdy ..... (use) to help people with heart problems.
2. **SB** My uncle used ..... (be) a firefighter, but now he is a police officer.
3. **SB** Yasser's grandfather ..... (not used) to know how to drive.
4. **WB** How did you ..... (used) to go to school ? *(Damietta - Al-Roda 2024)*

#### El-Moasser Exercises

5. Ayman used to ..... (had) a sports car.
6. How did you ..... (using) to go to school ?
7. That building used to ..... (being) a cinema.
8. He ..... (use) to play football, but now he doesn't.

# Speaking & Writing Corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة  
Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues أَل  
قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

<b>Step 1</b> <b>Vocabulary</b> اختر انتفاك للمفردات اللغوية	<b>Step 2</b> <b>Speaking</b> اختر مدى انتفاك لمهارة التحدث	<b>Step 3</b> <b>writing</b> اختر مدى انتفاك لمهارة الكتابة
<b>Read and complete :</b> 1. Where did he work in the past ? - In a ..... hospital. <u>خاص</u> 2. What did he do to help children in Aswan ? - He started a ..... for ill children in Aswan. <u>جمعية خيرية</u> 3. What do you think of Dr Magdy Yacoub? - I am so ..... of him. <u>فخور</u>	<b>Complete the following dialogue :</b> Adel and Hany are talking about Dr Magdy Yacoub. <b>Adel :</b> We should be proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He is an important hero. <b>Hany:</b> (1) ..... ? <b>Adel :</b> He was born in 1935. <b>Hany:</b> (2) ..... ? <b>Adel :</b> He was born in Bilbeis. <b>Hany:</b> Where did he work in the past ? <b>Adel :</b> (3) ..... <b>Hany:</b> What did he do to help children in Aswan ? <b>Adel :</b> (4) ..... What do you think of him ? <b>Hany:</b> (5) ..... <i>(Beheira - Delengat 2023)</i>	<b>Write a paragraph on :</b> <b>"Dr Magdy Yacoub"</b>      
<b>1. How did we know about doctors in Ancient Egypt ?</b> - They ..... their ideas. <u>يسجل - يدون</u> <b>2. How did they help people with ..... ?</b> <u>حروق</u> - They used plants to help them. <b>3. Did they know how to mend broken ..... ?</b> <u>عظام</u> - Yes, they did.	<b>Ibrahim asks Kamal about doctors in Ancient Egypt.</b> <b>Ibrahim:</b> Were there any doctors in Ancient Egypt ? <b>Kamal :</b> (1) ..... <b>Ibrahim:</b> (2) ..... ? <b>Kamal :</b> They wrote down their ideas so we know about them. <b>Ibrahim:</b> Did they know anything about the human brain ? <b>Kamal :</b> (3) ..... <b>Ibrahim:</b> (4) ..... ? <b>Kamal :</b> They used plants to help people with burns. <b>Ibrahim:</b> Did they know how to mend broken bones ? <b>Kamal :</b> (5) ..... They also knew how to sew cuts.	<b>"Ancient Egyptian doctors"</b>      

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3 & 4

● Understand ● Apply ○ Create

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلقك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. The Ancient Egyptian ..... helped people with burns.  
a. scientists      b. teachers      c. rulers      d. doctors
2. What did they use to help people with burns ?  
a. Seeds      b. Medicines      c. Plants      d. Mud
3. The Ancient Egyptian doctors were .....  
a. clever      b. patient      c. brave      d. kind
4. We still use some of these ..... today like them.  
a. tools      b. plants      c. doctors      d. pumps

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali is telling Amr about his father's job.

Amr : Hello, Ali. How are you ?

Ali : Hello, (1) .....

Amr : (2) ..... ?

Ali : My father is a famous doctor.

Amr : (3) ..... ?

Ali : He works in a big hospital in Cairo.

Amr : Does he go to work in his car ?

Ali : (4) ..... He goes on foot.

Amr : Why does he walk to work ?

Ali : (5) .....

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- 1. A/An ..... is an organisation that gives money, food, etc. to people who are in need. (Beni Suef – Beba 2022 / Minia - Samalut 2024)  
a. emergency      b. charity      c. countryside      d. university
- 2. **SB** Lungs take in air and help us to .....  
a. release      b. relax      c. please      d. breathe
- 3. "Special" has the same meaning as " .....".  
a. serious      b. usual      c. natural      d. unusual

- 4. Yasser was ..... a school project when I met him.  
a. looking      b. doing      c. taking      d. spending
- 5. **SB** We know about Ancient Egyptian doctors because they .....  
down their ideas.  
a. removed      b. went      c. made      d. wrote
- 6. He is 69 years now. He ..... working 9 years ago.  
a. started      b. looked      c. joined      d. stopped
- 7. Salma's father is a/an ..... at the hospital; they don't pay him  
for his work. *(Sharkia - East Zagazig 2023)*  
a. adult      b. coach      c. volunteer      d. patient
- 8. Ali ..... use to swim when he was young. *(Menofia – Tala 2023)*  
a. don't      b. doesn't      c. isn't      d. didn't
- 9. .... Ali use to work as a surgeon before 2010 ?  
a. Does      b. Was      c. Did      d. Had
- 10. Who did you ..... to play with at break ?  
a. used      b. using      c. used to      d. use

**4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

- 1. I used to swim a lot when I ..... (am) younger. *(Suez - North Suez 2024)*
- 2. **SB** I used to play basketball, but I ..... (didn't) now.
- 3. Where ..... (you used) to park your car ? *(Qena – Doshna 2023)*
- 4. When I was 10, I used to ..... (was) funny.

**5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**"Our body"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

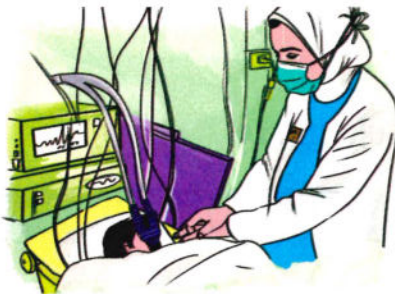
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## I

## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

scared (adj)	خائف - مرعوب	organisation (n)	منظمة
education (n)	التعليم	championship (n)	بطولة
rubbish collectors (n)	جامعي القمامة	street cleaners	منظفي الشوارع
heroic (adj)	بطولي - نبيل	manager (n)	مدير
nursing (n)	[مهنة] التمريض	society (n)	المجتمع



## Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

## • Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

education - manager - championship - heroic - society

1. Our team won a football ..... this year.
2. My mother is the ..... of our school.
3. He went to England to complete his ..... .
4. Saving children from a dangerous fire is a ..... act.

## Lesson 5

SB page 29 WB page 90

painting (n)	لوحة فنية [مرسومة]	collect (ed) (v)	يجمع
discussion (n)	مناقشة	statue (n)	تمثال
internet (n)	الإنترنت	explain (ed) (v)	يشرح / يفسر

## Lesson 6

SB page 30 WB page 91

continue (d) (v)	يستمر	confuse (d) (v)	يحبير / يربك
Faculty of Nursing (n)	كلية التمريض	captain (n)	قائد / كابتن الفريق
main idea (n)	الفكرة الرئيسية	introduce (d) (v)	يقدم
Athens (n)	مدينة أثينا [عاصمة اليونان]	The Island of Crete	جزيرة كريت
England (n)	دولة إنجلترا	writer (n)	كاتب
The Parthenon (n)	معبد البارثينون	firefighter (n)	رجل الإطفاء

### UNIT THREE

#### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
teach يعلم - يُدرس	taught	taught
learn يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
understand يفهم	understood	understood

#### Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>heroic</b>	very brave or great	بطولي / نبيل
<b>manager</b>	a person whose job is to organise people in a company or business	مدير
<b>scared</b>	frightened or afraid that something bad could happen	خائف

#### Vocabulary Study

##### Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
true صحيح / حقيقي	right	wrong / false خطأ
difficult صعب	hard	easy سهل
modern حديث	new - recent	ancient قديم
famous مشهور	popular - known	unknown غير معروف

##### Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ic	تكون الصفة من الاسم	heroic بطولي
-er	تكون اسم الفاعل من الفعل	manager مدير writer كاتب
-ation	تكون الاسم من الفعل	organisation منظمة



### Exercise

#### on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This story isn't true, so it's .....

a. factual

b. false

c. easy

d. ancient

2. To get the name of a person from the verb "manage", we add ".....".  
 a. -ity                      b. -ation                      c. -er                      d. -or
3. This scientist is famous, this means he is .....  
 a. ugly                      b. popular                      c. coward                      d. unknown
4. The words "modern" and "....." have the same meaning.  
 a. old                      b. new                      c. famous                      d. popular
5. To get the adjective from the word "hero", we add the suffix ".....".  
 a. -ic                      b. -ation                      c. -er                      d. -or



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 scared - scary

\* **scared (adj)**

خائف

▶ Noha is **scared**. She doesn't like the dark.

\* **scary (adj)**

مخيف

▶ Dogs are **scary**. I don't like them.

(SB page 29)

### 2 nursing - nursery

\* **nursing (n)**

التمريض/ مهنة التمريض

▶ Sama studied **nursing** to look after patients.

\* **nursery (n)**

حضانة

▶ Heba sent her daughter to a **nursery** school.

(SB page 30)

### 3 contain - include

\* **contain (v)**

يحتوى على

▶ The museum **contains** a number of old statues.

\* **include (v)**

يشتمل - يتضمن

▶ The menu **includes** fish, salad and rice.

(SB page 30)

### 4 reason - cause

\* **reason (n) (for)**

سبب ميرر (معنوى)

▶ He lost his mobile. This is the **reason** for his anger.

\* **cause (n) (of)**

سبب (مادى)

▶ What's the **cause** of the fire ?

(WB page 91)

## UNIT THREE

### Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
have a class discussion يقوم بعمل مناقشة صفية / دراسية	in other ways بطرق أخرى
get better يتحسن - يتعافى	collect ... from يجمع ... من
put other people first يضع الآخرين في اعتباره أولاً	in other words بمعنى آخر
try their best يبذلون قصارى جهدهم	answer to إجابة / رد على
do something very useful يقوم بشئ مفيد جداً	scared of خائف من

### Confusing words

- لاحظ أن بعض الكلمات الآتية لها نفس النطق :

- بمعنى لكى ويتبعها (inf.)

**to (prep.)**

► - She also used to work **to** help pay for her studies. (WB page 91)

- I went **to** the zoo last week.

بمعنى إلى ويتبعها مكان

**two (number)**

► - I bought **two** books yesterday. (WB page 91)

رقم اثنين [عدد]

**too (adv)**

► - Warda is good at maths, and she's good at English, **too**. (WB page 91)

بمعنى أيضاً وتأتى فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة

**know (v)**

► - I didn't think I **know** the answer to this question. (WB page 91)

يعرف

**no**

► - **No**, I didn't use to go to school by bus. (WB page 86)

تستخدم للتعبير عن النفي أو عدم الموافقة

**than (prep)**

► - Are you taller **than** your brother ? (WB page 91)

«من» تستخدم فى المقارنة أو التفضيل [حرف جر]

**then (adv)**

► - My father got a job in Cairo. My parents **then** lived in a small flat. (WB page 86)

تستخدم كظرف للتعبير عن توالى الأحداث بمعنى [ثم]

**their (adj)**

► - My brothers have the same bags. **Their** bags are blue.

صفة ملكية [جمع] ويأتى بعدها اسم بمعنى [ملكهم]

**there (adv)**

► - We went to my cousin's house, but nobody was **there**. (WB page 91)

ظرف مكان بمعنى هناك

**it's = it is**

► - This is my primary school. **It's** a nice school.

هذا / هذه تكون [لغير العاقل]

**its (adj)**

► - Athens is a great city and the Parthenon is **its** most famous building. (WB page 91)

صفة ملكية لغير العاقل ويأتى بعدها اسم بمعنى [ملكها - ملكها]



## Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

### Lesson [6] SB page 30

1. My mother is a **heroic**<sup>(1)</sup> mother.
2. My mother is an important nurse.
3. Her life used to be difficult.
4. She studied at the **Faculty of Nursing**<sup>(2)</sup>.
5. She got a job at a big hospital in Cairo.
6. She **continued**<sup>(3)</sup> to work hard and studied, too.
7. She became one of the most important nurses in Cairo.
8. In 2020, many people became ill.
9. She worked hard for many weeks.
10. It was difficult, but heroic work.
11. Most of the people **got better**<sup>(4)</sup>.
12. Now, she is a **nursing manager**<sup>(5)</sup>.
13. She helps nurses.
14. I think she is a hero.
15. She studied and worked very hard.
16. She always tells me that **education**<sup>(6)</sup> is very important.
17. If I work hard, I can do anything.

\* Your heroic mother

\* A job of a nurse

### Lesson [6] WB page 91

1. My name is Adam.
2. I want to write about a person I am very proud to know.
3. She is called Mrs Karima Mohamed.
4. When she was young, she used to study very hard.
5. She worked to **pay for**<sup>(7)</sup> her studies.
6. In 2020, there was a health **emergency**<sup>(8)</sup>.
7. Many people were in hospital.
8. I became ill and I was in hospital for two weeks.
9. Mrs Karima helped me.
10. She helped other people in the hospital.
11. She was always very **kind**<sup>(9)</sup>.
12. I now know that she is one of the most important nursing managers.
13. I am very happy and I am proud of her.

استمر (3)	كلية التمريض (2)	بطولي (1)
التعليم (6)	مديرة التمريض (5)	تحقق (4)
طبيب / عطوف (9)	حالة طوارئ (8)	يدفع لمن لـ (7)

الجمال السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية أخرى:

\* Hardworking mother

## 1. Reading and Listening

## Listening

## Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الفهم  
ونصوص الاستماع



## • on Lesson 5 SB page 29

**Mona** : What is a hero<sup>(1)</sup>, Huda ?

**Huda** : I think a hero is someone who is very brave<sup>(2)</sup>.

**Mona** : What do you mean ?

**Huda** : I mean a hero isn't scared<sup>(3)</sup> of anything.

**Mona** : I think a hero is someone who is scared, but still tries his or her best.

**Huda** : I'm not sure what you mean.

**Mona** : In other words<sup>(4)</sup>, they often do difficult or dangerous things.

**Huda** : It's also about putting other people first.

**Mona** : Sorry, I don't understand.

**Huda** : I mean a hero helps other people.

**Mona** : Yes, I agree<sup>(5)</sup>!



(1) بطل (2) شجاع (3) خائف (4) بمعنى آخر (5) اتفق معك

## Reading

## • on Lesson 5 SB page 29

**A** : I think rubbish collectors<sup>(1)</sup> can be heroes.

**B** : What do you mean<sup>(2)</sup> ?

**A** : I mean, we need rubbish collectors.

**B** : Sorry, I don't understand.

**A** : I mean, they do something very useful<sup>(3)</sup>.

They collect rubbish from our homes. The city would be terrible<sup>(4)</sup> without<sup>(5)</sup> them!

**B** : That's true<sup>(6)</sup>. What about street cleaners<sup>(7)</sup> ?

**A** : I'm not sure what you mean.

**B** : I mean, street cleaners are also important because they help to keep our cities clean.

**A** : Yes, that's true!



(1) جامعي القمامة (2) يعني / يقصد (3) مفيد (4) فظيع / رهيب (5) بدون (6) هذا صحيح (7) منظمي الشوارع

• on Lesson 5 WB page 90

**Soha** : All **art**<sup>(1)</sup> is important.

**Sara** : What do you mean ?

**Soha** : We all **need**<sup>(2)</sup> art.

**Sara** : I'm not sure what you mean.

**Soha** : In other words, art can **teach**<sup>(3)</sup> us things.

**Sara** : Sorry, I don't understand.

**Soha** : I mean, when we see a **painting**<sup>(4)</sup> or a **statue**<sup>(5)</sup>, we can learn things about life.



(1) الرسم / الفن (2) يحتاج (3) يعلم / يدرس (4) لوحة مرسومة (5) تمثال

• on Lesson 5 WB page 90

**Karim** : I think that all teachers are heroes.

**Tarek** : What do you mean ?

**Karim** : I mean, without teachers, we would not learn anything.

**Tarek** : There's the internet.

**Karim** : Sorry, I don't understand. I'm not sure what you mean.

**Tarek** : In other words, we don't need teachers because we have the internet.

**Karim** : I don't agree. We will always need teachers.



• on Lesson 6 SB page 30

### My heroic<sup>(1)</sup> mother

1. Today, my mother is an important nurse, Mrs Karima Mohamed, but I know that her life used to be **difficult**<sup>(2)</sup>. She studied to be a nurse at the **Faculty of Nursing**<sup>(3)</sup> in Ain Shams **University**<sup>(4)</sup> and used to work as a nurse, too, sometimes at night, to learn all she could. She then got a job at a big hospital in Cairo. She **continued**<sup>(5)</sup> to work hard but did not stop her studies, and soon she became one of the most important nurses in Cairo.



2. Now, she works in a big hospital in Cairo. In 2020, many people became ill and she worked every day for many weeks. It was difficult, but heroic work, because most of them got better. She is also a **nursing manager**<sup>(6)</sup> and she helps to teach younger nurses.

(1) بطولى (2) صعب (3) كلية التمريض (4) جامعة (5) إستمرت (6) مديرة التمريض

## UNIT THREE

3. I think she is a hero because she studied and worked very hard to get an important job and now she helps people every day. She always tells me that **education** <sup>(7)</sup> is very important, and that if I work hard, I can do anything.

(7) التعليم

### on Lesson 6 WB page 91

Hi!

My name's Adam and I want to **write about** <sup>(1)</sup> a person I am very proud to know. Her name is Mrs Karima Mohamed.



When she was younger, she used to study very hard because she wanted to be a nurse. She also used to work to help **pay for** <sup>(2)</sup> her studies, but that is not the reason I am **proud of** <sup>(3)</sup> her! In 2020, there was a **health emergency** <sup>(4)</sup> and many people were in hospital. I became ill, too. I was in hospital for two weeks and Mrs Karima Mohamed helped me and other people in the hospital.

She was always very kind. I now know that she is one of the most important nursing managers in Cairo, so I am very happy she helped me. I am very proud of her!

- (1) يكتب عن  
(2) يدفع مالا لـ  
(3) فخور بـ  
(4) حالة طوارئ صحية

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

#### Critical thinking skill

**Learn**

1. Why do you think Mrs Karima is one of the most important nursing managers in Cairo ?

- Because she is kind and hard-working.

**Practise**

2. Do you think Mrs Karima is a hero ? Why ?

مهارة التفكير النقدي



## Exercise

### on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### Key vocabulary

1. The streets would be terrible without .....

a. rubbish collectors

b. trainers

c. farmers

d. managers

2. .... help us to keep our city clean.  
 a. Firefighters                      b. Vets  
 c. Computer programmers        d. Street cleaners
3. A doctor's work is really ..... They fight diseases in hospitals to help patients.  
 a. heroic                      b. dirty                      c. ugly                      d. easy
4. Nour El Sherbini won the World Squash ..... in 2020.  
 a. Painting                      b. Race                      c. Championship        d. Test
5. My sister will join the Faculty of ..... She wants to help doctors.  
 a. Medicine                      b. Engineering        c. Nursing                      d. Arts

#### SB , WB & Previous Exams

6. What is the ..... idea of the story ? *(Sharkia - East Zagazig 2024)*  
 a. main                      b. mean                      c. man                      d. men
7. **SB** Did he use to be the ..... of the football team ?  
 a. scientist                      b. writer                      c. captain                      d. cleaner  
*(Menofia - El-Sadat 2023)*
8. **SB** She always tells me that ..... is very important.  
 a. infection                      b. education                      c. pollution                      d. smoking  
*(Suez – North Suez 2024)*

#### El-Moasser Exercises

9. Tamer ..... me to his parents during his birthday party.  
 a. agreed                      b. introduced                      c. managed                      d. kept
10. I went to the museum and saw many ..... of Ancient Egyptian kings there.  
 a. emails                      b. statues                      c. villas                      d. selfies
11. "Ancient" is the opposite of " ..... ".  
 a. dangerous                      b. serious                      c. modern                      d. famous

#### ► Definitions

12. When you are afraid that something bad could happen, then you're .....  
 a. heroic                      b. scared                      c. proud                      d. pleased
13. A/An ..... is a person whose job is to organise people in a company or business.  
 a. firefighter                      b. officer                      c. hero                      d. manager

## UNIT THREE

14. "....." is very brave or great .

- a. Necessary      b. Heroic      c. Scared      d. Broken

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. What is the reason ..... coming home late ?

- a. of      b. for      c. at      d. in

16. I don't understand, so can you tell me the question in ..... words?

- a. difficult      b. great      c. another      d. other

## 2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

### ► Checking your understanding :

التحقق من استيعابك لحديث ما :

هناك عبارات تستخدم للتأكيد على الفهم والإدراك أثناء المحادثة.

• What do you mean ?	ماذا تعنى / ماذا تقصد ؟
• I mean .....	أنا أقصد ...
• I'm not sure what you mean.	أنا لست متأكدًا مما تعنيه.
• In other words, ....	بمعنى آخر، ...
• Sorry, I don't understand.	آسف، أنا لا أفهم ذلك.

## 3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

### ► Writing tips :

نصائح للكتابة :

- Start a new paragraph for each main idea.      ابدأ فقرة جديدة لكل فكرة أساسية.
- The first sentence of a paragraph is the topic sentence that introduces the main idea.      الجملة الأولى من الفقرة الإنشائية هي الجملة الافتتاحية التي تقدم الفكرة الأساسية.

### Your favourite hero      مثلك الأعلى / بطلك المفضل

1. My hero is my mother. She is an important nurse, but I know that her life used to be difficult.

مثلى الأعلى هي والدتى. فهي تعمل كممرضة ذات شأن ولكنى أعلم أن حياتها اعتادت أن تكون شاقة.

2. She studied hard to be a nurse at the Faculty of Nursing at Ain Shams University.

قامت والدتى بالدراسة بجد فى كلية التمريض بجامعة عين شمس.

3. In 2020, many people became ill and my mother worked every day for many weeks. It was difficult, but heroic work.

فى عام ٢٠٢٠، أصيب كثير من الأشخاص بالمرض وكانت والدتى تعمل كل يوم لعدة أسابيع. كان عملاً شاقاً ولكنه كان بطولياً (نبيلًا).

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5 & 6

● Understand

● Apply

● Create

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- Mohamed is a .....  
a. doctor                      b. scientist                      c. nurse                      d. surgeon
- He works in a big .....  
a. clinic                      b. hospital                      c. charity                      d. lab
- Mohamed is kind and .....  
a. brave                      b. helpful                      c. strong                      d. busy
- When did many people become ill ? - In .....  
a. 2010                      b. 2006                      c. 2011                      d. 2020

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Salwa is asking Hoda about street cleaners.

Salwa : What do you think of street cleaners ?

Hoda : (1) .....

Salwa : (2) ..... ?

Hoda : I mean by "heroes" that they do something useful.

Salwa : Why do you think so ?

Hoda : (3) .....

Salwa : (4) ..... ?

Hoda : We should encourage them and give them more money .

Salwa : But I think money is not enough .

Hoda : (5) ..... (Sharkia - Diarb Nigm 2024)

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- SB There was a/an ..... emergency and many people were in hospitals.  
a. wealth                      b. health                      c. clue                      d. expression  
(Fayoum – Senoris 2024)
- Some people think that rubbish ..... can be heroes.  
a. actors                      b. actress                      c. collectors                      d. masters  
(Beheira – Rasheed 2023)

- 3. Teachers, doctors, nurses and other jobs are useful for our .....  
a. society      b. club      c. gallery      d. museum
- 4. Last week, there was a big fire, but the brave ..... stopped it.  
a. police officers      b. nurses      c. firefighters      d. doctors
- 5. **SB** The topic should ..... the main idea of the paragraph.  
a. clean      b. end      c. hide      d. include
- 6. Tarek ..... better after two weeks in a hospital.  
a. knew      b. made      c. got      d. read
- 7. What is the ..... for the fire of the hotel ?  
a. cause      b. statue      c. reason      d. answer
- 8. **WB** Are you taller ..... your brother ?  
a. them      b. then      c. than      d. their
- 9. My grandfather ..... football when he was young.  
a. used to playing      b. used to play      c. uses to play      d. used playing
- 10. **WB** Did Ali ..... to the shops yesterday ? (Menofia – Sadat 2023)  
a. went      b. goes      c. gone      d. go

**4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. Ahmed ..... (visits) Alexandria three months ago.
2. I didn't ..... (used) to know much about my family history.  
(Qena - Naga – Hammadi 2023)
3. Where did Mahmoud ..... (found) his mobile ?
4. Did Sally ..... (used) to go camping ?

**5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**"Rubbish collectors"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(Menofia – Tala 2024)

## Understanding reference

هنا تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [Understanding reference] وهنا تحتاج لتحديد ما تشير إليه الكلمة التي تحتها خط.

اقرأ و قم بالإجابة.

## Read and answer the question :

I was in a hospital for two weeks and Mrs Karima Mohamed helped me and other people in the hospital. She was always very kind. I now know that she is one of the most important nursing managers in Cairo, so I am very happy that she helped me.

• The underlined pronoun "she" refers to .....

- a. Mrs Karima      b. Adam  
c. the doctor      d. the teacher

التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في ما تشير إليه الكلمة التي تحتها خط.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة جيداً سوف نستطيع أن نحدد ما تشير إليه الكلمة التي تحتها خط.

## Your hero

هنا تختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من اللغة (language functions) والتي غالباً ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

اقرأ و قم بالإجابة.

## Complete the following dialogue :

Fatma asks her friend Sarah about her favourite sport.

**Fatma** : Hello Sara. What's your favourite sport ?

**Sarah** : (1) .....

**Fatma** : Who is your favourite footballer ?

**Sarah** : (2) .....

**Fatma** : (3) .....

**Sarah** : Mo Salah plays for Liverpool.

**Fatma** : And which is your favourite football team ?

**Sarah** : (4) .....

**Fatma** : (5) .....

**Sarah** : Yes, they score many goals.

التحدي تريد [التحدث عن بطلك المفضل] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بينك وبين الشخص الآخر.

# 3

## Correction notes

### الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

### Review

#### ◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

I / He / She / It / مفرد → was (wasn't)	ضمائر الفاعل مع [v to be] في الماضي
You / We / They / جمع → were / (weren't)	في الاثبات والنفي
	وفي حالة السؤال يبدأ بـ was / were
Subj. فاعل → [التصريف الثاني للفعل]	في جملة [الماضي البسيط] نستخدم
Subj. فاعل → didn't + [inf. المصدر]	[التصريف الثاني]
Did → subj. فاعل → [inf. المصدر]?	وفي النفي نستخدم didn't وبعدها المصدر
	وفي السؤال نستخدم did كفعل مساعد
Subj. فاعل → used to → [inf. المصدر]	نستخدم [used to] للتعبير عن عادات في
Subj. فاعل → didn't use to → [inf. المصدر]	زمن الماضي ولم تعد تحدث الآن
Did → subj. فاعل → use to [inf. المصدر]?	

### Learn

#### ◀ تعلم

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 Yesterday, I ... [am not] at school.	wasn't	ماضي بسيط لوجود yesterday
2 I didn't ... [used] to get up early.	use	نستخدم [المصدر] بعد [didn't]
3 ... [Does] Dina go to Cairo last week?	Did	ماضي بسيط لوجود last

### Practice

#### ◀ تدرب

#### ◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة

1 I .... [not / used] to give money to a charity, but now I do.	didn't use	.....
2 ... [Did] they at home last night?	Were	.....
3 They .... [use] to play basketball, but they don't now.	used	.....
4 When I ... [am] young, I used to play in the street.	was	.....

#### ◀ Write the Correction :

#### ◀ اكتب التصحيح

1 .... [Do] he use to live in Cairo? Yes, he did.	.....	ماضي بسيط لوجود did في الإجابة
2 We ... [don't] have a good meal last night.	.....	النفي بـ didn't مع الماضي البسيط وبعدها مصدر الفعل
3 I didn't ... [drove] to work yesterday.	.....	نستخدم [المصدر] بعد [didn't]
4 ... [Do] you use to ride a bike when you were young?	.....	سؤال مبدوء بفعل مساعد في زمن الماضي البسيط



# Review

## on unit 3

يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

قيم مستواك

### مراجعة عامة على Unit 3 في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
<p>عالم طبيب جراح راغ/كفيل مدرب رياضي ناشئ / حديث السن الأكثر سنًا مسابقة جمعية خيرية الريف طوارئ كارثة طبيعية متطوع مخ قلب رئتين حروق جروح عدوى / إصابة يعدى / يصيب مدير تريض</p>	<p><b>1. The Past Simple Tense</b> <b>Affirmative</b> صفة إيجابيات التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل Subject - I went out for a walk yesterday. <b>Negative</b> صفة النفي Subj. الفعل + didn't + inf. Mصدر الفعل - I didn't go out for a walk yesterday. <b>Usage</b> الاستخدام - I visited my cousin last week. <b>Key words</b> الدالة yesterday, last..., .. ago, once upon a time, one day .... <b>Interrogative</b> صفة الإستفهام Did + subj. + inf. ... ? - Did you study your lessons ? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't. - Where did you spend your last summer holiday ? I spent it in Alexandria.</p> <p><b>2. Subject + used to + inf.</b> نستخدم للتعبير عن عادة كانت فعل الماضي وانتهت الآن - He used to play tennis, but now he doesn't.</p>	<p><b>1. Asking and answering questions about what makes a hero :</b> - What makes a hero ? - A hero should be brave, kind and patient.</p> <p><b>2. Checking your understanding</b> التدقق من استيعابك لحديث ما : <b>Soha</b> : All art is important. <b>Sara</b> : What do you mean ? <b>Soha</b> : We all need art. <b>Sara</b> : I'm not sure what you mean. <b>Soha</b> : In other words, art can teach us things. <b>Sara</b> : Sorry, I don't understand. <b>Soha</b> : I mean, when we see a painting or a statue, we can learn things about life.</p>

## Questions collected from previous exams

تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

- Ahmed is a ..... . He works for no money.  
(Qena 2024)  
a. volunteer b. voluntary c. pioneer d. charity
- Huda went to the surgeon to ..... the cut in her hand.  
(Alexandria - El-Montazah 2024)  
a. plant b. cook c. sew d. break
- The ..... is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature.  
(Beheira / Mahmodia 2023)  
a. mountain b. earthquake c. countryside d. crescent
- Sir Magdy Yacoub is a heart .....  
(Beheira / Kom-Hamada 2022)  
a. surgeon b. patron c. coach d. baker
- A lot of rubbish is ..... and this can lead to climate change.  
(Beheira / Kafr Al-dwar 2024)  
a. washed b. used c. collected d. burned
- A ..... doesn't fear anything.  
(Dakahlia / Nabaro 2023)  
a. hero b. cleaner c. thief d. child
- The ..... pumps blood around the body.  
(Qalyoubia / Qalyoub 2024)  
a. ear b. liver c. heart d. eye
- Wael ..... a junior chess competition when he was only 12!  
(Dakahlia / Sherbeen 2022)  
a. wins b. winning c. won d. is winning

- Hend ..... use to get up early, but now she does.  
(Cairo - Rod El-Farag 2022)  
a. didn't b. wasn't c. don't d. doesn't
- Did Yara ..... play chess when she was young?  
(Minia - Beni Mazaar 2024)  
a. using b. used c. use to d. using to
- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :
- I used to play tennis, but now I .....  
(Port Said - East Port Said 2024)  
(am not).
- Yesterday, we ..... (have) lunch in a big restaurant.  
(Menofia - Tala 2022)
- In 2000, Tarek ..... (become) the number one chess player in our city. (Menofia - Bajor 2023)
- Noha ..... (reads) a nice story yesterday.  
(Luxor 2022)
- I ..... (not used) to smoke. (Beni Suef 2023)
- What ..... (do) you visit last week?  
(Assuit - Manfalut 2022)
- Magdy ..... (not / be) at home yesterday.  
(Assuit - Manfalut 2023)
- Mona didn't ..... (used) to make pizza.  
(Beheira - Hosh Eisa 2024)
- Who ..... (win) the Africa cup of Nations in 2018?  
(Beni Suef - Al Fashm 2023)
- They ..... (are) at the club yesterday.  
(Beni Suef - Beba 2022)

# Test

## on unit 3

● Understand

● Apply

● Create

تنويه  
يمكنك حل الاختبار  
إلكترونياً وتصويبه

### A. Listening

قم بحل اختبار تراكمي في الملحق

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



استمع إلى ماعلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- What's Mrs Karima's job ? .....  
a. A teacher      b. A nurse      c. A doctor      d. An engineer
- Where does she work ? .....  
a. In a hospital      b. In a museum      c. In a shop      d. At home
- What did Mrs Karima use to do when she was young ? .....  
a. To study very hard      b. To play tennis  
c. To go shopping      d. To drive a car
- Why did she use to work when she was young ? .....  
a. To pay for her parents      b. To pay for her studies  
c. To pay for her brother      d. To pay for her sister

### B. Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nada is telling Eman what she did last weekend.

Eman : What did you do last weekend ?

Nada : (1) .....

Eman : Does your brother love video games ?

Nada : (2) .....

Eman : (3) .....

Nada : We played them at home.

Eman : Did you enjoy playing ?

Nada : (4) .....

Eman : (5) .....

Nada : Sure. We'll be happy.

(Beheira - Tahrir 2023 / Assuit - Manflut 2024)

### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

We should all be proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but his family used to travel to many places because his father was

an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he stopped working in 2001, he worked in a special hospital in London. At this hospital, Magdy helped to give people new hearts for the first time. Before the 1980s, people with heart problems often used to die. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The underlined pronoun "**he**" refers to .....  
 a. Magdy Yacoub                      b. Magdy's father  
 c. Magdy's grandfather            d. Magdy's great grandfather
2. The underlined word "**special**" means ".....".  
 a. usual                  b. very big                  c. not usual                  d. very old
3. The birthplace of Dr Magdy is .....  
 a. Aswan                  b. Cairo                      c. London                      d. Bilbeis

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.
- .....
5. Why did Magdy Yacoub's family use to travel to many places ?
- .....
6. Why do you think Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children ?
- .....

### D. Vocabulary & Structure

**4** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- 1. The doctor asked me to stay in bed for three days to ..... better.  
a. give                      b. make                      c. do                      d. get  
*(Assuit - Manflut 2024)*
- 2. We are ..... of being Egyptians.  
a. pride                      b. proud                      c. sad                      d. tired
- 3. **SB** A/An ..... is someone who works for no money.  
a. volunteer                      b. engineer                      c. teacher                      d. patient  
*(Cairo – El-Sherabia 2022)*
- 4. A brave person shows .....  
a. happiness                      b. sadness                      c. courage                      d. darkness  
*(Beheira - Damanhour 2023)*

- (Giza – Al-Haram 2023)

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- (Sharkia - Kafr Sakr 2024)

### E. Writing

**6** Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مُجَاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

## “Dr Magdy Yacoub”

[illegible]

(Sharkia - Fakous 2023 / Suez - North Suez 2024)

## 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ahmed loves playing .....  
a. football b. handball c. volleyball d. tennis
2. When he was ....., he played in a junior competition.  
a. seven b. nine c. eight d. five

## 2. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Ibrahim and Ahmed are talking about their favourite sports.

Ibrahim : Hello, Ahmed.

Ahmed : Hello, Ibrahim .

Ibrahim : (1) .....

Ahmed : My favourite sport is football. What about you ?

Ibrahim : (2) .....

Ahmed : Well, chess is a great hobby.

Ibrahim : (3) .....

Ahmed : Yes, I won Alexandria chess competition last year.

Ibrahim : When is the next competition ?

Ahmed : Tomorrow.

## 3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Some words ..... me like "too" and "two" when I hear them.  
a. learn b. keep c. mean d. confuse
2. Most famous people were born ..... poor families.  
a. on b. in c. into d. to
3. The person who gives money to help people or places is called a .....  
a. scientist b. patron c. surgeon d. senior
4. .... he use to play tennis when he was young ?  
a. Does b. Do c. Did d. Doing
5. They didn't ..... to the club three days ago.  
a. went b. going c. go d. goes

## 4. Read the following, then answer the questions :

Ten years ago, Salma who was eight years old then, went into her father's library and asked him if she could borrow some books.

Salma's father thought that his daughter was interested in reading. She chose many big books and took them to the garden outside the house and put **them** under an orange tree. Salma's father and mother followed her to see what she would do with the books. They were surprised when they saw her standing on the books to pick some oranges.

## a. Answer the following questions :

1. Why was Salma's father happy at first ?
2. Why did Salma need the books ?
3. What does the underlined word "**them**" refer to ?

## b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Salma is ..... years old now.  
a. eight b. ten c. eighteen d. eighty
5. Salma's parents were ..... when they saw her standing on the books.  
a. surprised b. happy c. angry d. lazy

(Al-Azhar - Fayoum Zone 2023)

## 5. Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

1. do - job - does - manager - **What** - a - nursing ?
2. I - a school - **Last week**, - did - project .
3. isn't - anything - **A hero** - of - scared.
4. think - teachers - heroes - are - that - **I** - all .

## 6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about :

"An Egyptian hero"

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

**Ola and Mona are talking about heroes.**

**Ola** : Hello Mona ! Nice to meet you.

**Mona** : (1) .....  
 a. Nice to meet you , too **b.** You're welcome  
 c. I'm fine **d.** You are good

**Ola** : Can I ask you a question ?

**Mona** : (2) .....  
 a. Yes, he does **b.** No, sorry  
 c. No, they aren't **d.** Yes, sure

**Ola** : (3) .....  
 a. What do you want to be ?  
 b. What do you think about teachers ?  
 c. Why are teachers heroes ?  
 d. Where do teachers work ?

**Mona** : I think that all teachers are heroes.

**Ola** : (4) .....  
 a. What about you ?  
 b. What do you mean ?  
 c. What do you have ?  
 d. What are you doing ?

**Mona** : I mean without teachers, we wouldn't learn anything.

**Ola** : (5) .....

- a. We can go to school.
- b.** We can use the internet.
- c. We don't need more time.
- d. I like my school.

**Mona** : The internet is just a way that helps teachers do their job better.

- Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

6. My favourite team ..... (win) the match last Friday.

- a. wins **b.** won
- c. was winning **d.** winning

7. My uncle ..... (using) to be a taxi driver five years ago.

- a. uses **b.** use
- c. is using **d.** used

8. I used to play basketball, but I ..... (didn't) now.

- a. don't **b.** wasn't
- c. did **d.** is

9. A police officer ..... (visit) the school today.

- a. visits **b.** are visiting
- c. visited **d.** is visited



## Listening

## • on lesson 1 SB page 32

**Dalia** : Hi Dad, I'm doing a school project about our **family history**<sup>(1)</sup>. Can I ask you some questions ?

**Dad** : Of course, what do you want to know ?

**Dalia** : Where did you live when you were a child ? Was it in Luxor ?

**Dad** : No, I moved to Luxor when I was a teenager. When I was a child, I used to live in a **village**<sup>(2)</sup> outside the city.

**Dalia** : Oh, I see. Who did you live with ?

**Dad** : I lived with my mum, dad, my sisters and also my **grandparents**<sup>(3)</sup>. We used to live in my grandparents' house.

**Dalia** : What time did you usually get up ?

**Dad** : Very early ! On a school day, I got up at about 4.30 am !

**Dalia** : Really ? Why did you get up so early ?

**Dad** : Because my school was very far from where we lived. It took me an hour to get there.

**Dalia** : How did you travel to school ?

**Dad** : I went on my bike. We didn't have a car then.

**Dalia** : What subjects did and didn't you like at school ?

**Dad** : My favourite subject was maths, but I didn't like history.



(1) تاريخ العائلة (2) قرية (3) أجداد



## Reading

## • on lesson 2 SB page 33

Life in Antarctica<sup>(1)</sup>

Why did you come to work in Antarctica ?

**a** I used to work as a scientist at a university. Then I saw a **job advertisement**<sup>(2)</sup> for scientists to work in Antarctica for a year and I thought it looked interesting.



(1) القارة القطبية الجنوبية (2) إعلان عن وظيفة

**b** What is daily life like in Antarctica ?

Some things are the same as home ! We usually get up at about 7 am. We have breakfast and do some exercise. Then we start work at 9 am and finish at 5 pm. We eat dinner together and then watch TV, play some games or read.

What is different about life in Antarctica ?

**c** At the moment it is **winter**<sup>(3)</sup> so it is **dark**<sup>(4)</sup> all day and night ! The weather is very cold and **windy**<sup>(5)</sup>. Only 20 people are working here now. I **miss**<sup>(6)</sup> my friends and family, but it is an **amazing experience**<sup>(7)</sup> !

(7) تجربة رائعة (6) يفتقد (5) عاصف (4) مظلم (3) فصل الشتاء

• on lesson 2 SB page 33

Hi !

How are you ? I wanted your help with something. My homework is to write about life for children around the world. I have some questions about life in Egypt when you were a little child. What games did you use to play ? What did your favourite toy use to be ? What did you use to eat ? I hope you can answer the questions for me.

Write soon !

Max

**Listening**

• Lesson 1 WB page 93

My name's Hana. This is a picture of my class. We are **walking through**<sup>(1)</sup> **an attractive park**<sup>(2)</sup> on a school trip. There are three teachers with us. Our English teacher, Miss Badria, is on the left, near a large **lake**<sup>(3)</sup>. I am in **the foreground**<sup>(4)</sup>, with my best friends Lamia and Ola. I am in **the middle**<sup>(5)</sup> and Lamia is on the right. My twin cousins Azza and Randa are in the **background**<sup>(6)</sup>. Azza has a **dark blue**<sup>(7)</sup> **jumper**<sup>(8)</sup> and a **striped**<sup>(9)</sup> school bag.



(1) يمشي خلال (2) منتزه رائع (3) بحيرة (4) المقدمة (5) المنتصف / الوسط (6) الخلفية (7) أزرق داكن (8) بلوفر (9) مقلوم/مخطط



# GENERAL Revision

تدريبات على الوحدات (١ ، ٢ و ٣)

## Based on Units 1, 2 & 3

► If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى

● ممتاز  
● جيد جداً  
● جيد  
● غير جيد

6. You can see yourself in the .....  
a. lamp    b. mirror    c. castle    d. carpet
7. He put ..... on the windows to keep out the light.  
a. carpets    b. curtains    c. floors    d. maps
8. Can I ..... a cup of tea, please ?  
a. have    b. has    c. having    d. had
9. How did you ..... to go to school ?  
a. used    b. using    c. uses    d. use
10. Fady isn't ..... a jacket today because it is very hot.  
a. wears    b. wearing    c. wear    d. wore

### 3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I ..... (use) to swim a lot when I was young.
2. Ali and I ..... (not have) got any pens.
3. Yesterday, I ..... (be) at the club.
4. I usually ..... (having) my breakfast before I go to school.

### 4. Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on :

"A person you are proud of"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

### 1. Complete the following dialogue :

**Heba is telling Rahma about her last weekend.**

Heba : Where did you go last Friday ?

Rahma : (1) .....

Heba : (2) ..... ?

Rahma : I went to my uncle's farm by car.

Heba : (3) ..... ?

Rahma : I helped my uncle with his work.

Heba : How long did you stay there ?

Rahma : (4) .....

Heba : Did you enjoy there ?

Rahma : (5) .....

### 2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My parents tell me that ..... is very important.  
a. infection    b. pollution  
c. smoking    d. education
2. The ..... is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature.  
a. infection    b. charity  
c. countryside    d. city
3. That story is ..... ; you should read it.  
a. fantastic    b. bad    c. boring    d. terrible
4. Our computer is broken. Can you ..... it ?  
a. mix    b. repair    c. do    d. text
5. Shall I help you ..... these bags ? - No, thanks.  
a. sail    b. pump    c. carry    d. infect



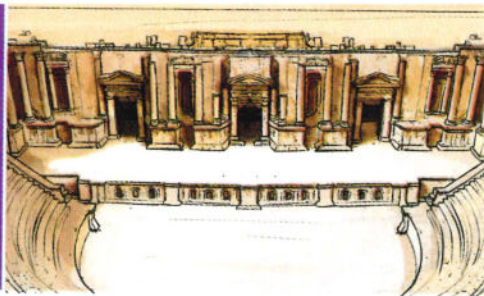
# UNIT FOUR

## Into the past

SB pages 34 : 43 WB pages 95:101

### Unit Objectives :

- **Reading :**  
Reviews of historic places in Egypt; a student's account of Jerash; information about a museum; a text about ancient objects; a text about the Stone Circles of Senegambia
- **Writing :**  
A paragraph describing a historic place; a report about a historic site
- **Listening :**  
A talk about a school trip; a talk about a historic place; an account of a trip to a museum; a class debate
- **Speaking :**  
Describing a historic place; a telephone call asking for information; a debate about the effects of tourism
- **Language :**  
Past continuous
- **Life Skills :**  
Self-management; Critical thinking
- **Values :**  
Coexistence values; Responsible behaviour
- **Issues :**  
Environmental and developmental issues



## I

## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

historic (adj)	تاريخي	statue (n)	تمثال
arch (n)	قوس / قنطرة	stadium (n)	استاد [رياضي]
castle (n)	قلعة / حصن	ruins (n)	بقايا / آثار
mosque (n)	مسجد	awesome (adj)	رائع / مدهش
museum (n)	متحف	entrance (n)	مدخل
pyramid (n)	هرم	view (n)	منظر طبيعي / رؤية
theatre (n)	مسرح	ancient (adj)	قديم جدًا / عتيق
temple (n)	معبد	facts (n)	حقائق



## Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

facts - awesome - Ruins - Stadium - Temple

1. Cairo ..... is the home of the Egyptian football.
2. .... are incomplete ancient buildings.
3. The place is ..... It's really amazing!
4. Karnak ..... is a great ancient building.

## Lesson 1

SB pages 34 &amp; 35 WB page 95

stones (n)	أحجار	rules (n)	قواعد / قوانين
rubbish = litter (n)	قمامة	pray (ed) (v)	يصلّي
touch (ed) (v)	يلمس	walls (n)	حوائط / أسوار
properly (adv)	بطريقة مناسبة	complete (d) (v) , (adj)	يكمل / كامل
straight away (adv)	في الحال/على الفور	road (n)	طريق
packed (adj)	معبأ	picnic (n)	نزهة [في الهواء الطلق]
culture (n)	ثقافة	finally (adv)	في النهاية
protect (ed) (v)	يحمي	pool (n)	حمام سباحة
objects (n)	أشياء	Muslims (n)	المسلمون

## Lesson 2

SB pages 36 & 37 WB page 96

Roman (adj)	روماني [من العصر الروماني]	race (n)	سباق
hill (n)	تل	explain (ed) (v)	يشرح / يفسر
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف / يسلك	recommend (ed) (v)	يوصي / يرشح
guide (n)	مرشد	review (n)	مقال نقدي
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	amazing (adj)	مدهش

## Famous places

## أماكن مشهورة

Leptis Magna	مدينة لبدة العظمى [موقع أثري في ليبيا]	Djemila	مدينة جميلة [موقع أثري في الجزائر]
Petra	مدينة البتراء [في الأردن]	The South Theatre	المسرح الجنوبي [في الأردن]
Elephantine Island	جزيرة فيلة [في أسوان]	The Pyramids of Dahshur	أهرامات دهشور
The Roman Theatre	المسرح الروماني [في مدينة الإسكندرية]	Karnak Temple	معبد الكرنك [مدينة الأقصر]
Abydos	مدينة أبيدوس [موقع أثري في سوهاج]	National Stadium	الاستاد الوطني
		the Sacred Lake	البحيرة المقدسة

## Different countries & cities

## دول ومدن مختلفة

Mali	دولة مالي	Baalbeck	مدينة بعلبك [في لبنان]
Algeria	دولة الجزائر	Jerash	مدينة جرش [في الأردن]
Lebanon	دولة لبنان	Djenne	مدينة جنى [في مالي]
Jordan	دولة الأردن	Libya	دولة ليبيا

## Study these definitions

## ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>stadium</b>	a place where you can watch a sports match	استاد رياضي
<b>arch</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>an entrance to another place</li> <li>a curved (half circle) part of buildings</li> </ul>	قنطرة
<b>mosque</b>	a place where Muslims pray	مسجد
<b>castle</b>	a place which has very strong walls	قلعة
<b>ruins</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>not a complete building</li> <li>the broken parts that are left of a building or city</li> </ul>	حطام / أطلال / آثار
<b>historic</b>	concerning history or connected with the past	تاريخي
<b>awesome</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>amazing</li> <li>very good / great</li> </ul>	مدهش / مذهل

## UNIT FOUR

<b>guide</b>	a person who can show you round a place	مرشد سياحي
<b>ancient</b>	very old	قديم / أثري
<b>view</b>	what you can see from the top of something	منظر طبيعي - رؤية
<b>touch</b>	put your hand (or another part of your body) on something	يلمس

### Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms		مترادفات ومتضادات
Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
strong قوى	powerful	weak ضعيف
national قومي	local	international عالمي/دولي
ancient قديم	very old	modern/new حديث
go in يدخل	enter	go out يخرج
amazing مذهش	awesome - wonderful	bad سيئ

Prefixes & Suffixes		مقاطع بادئة ونهاية
Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
- ing	تكون الاسم من الفعل تكون الصفة من الفعل	building مبنى interesting شيق amazing مذهل
- ic	تكون الصفة من الاسم	historic تاريخي
- ance	تكون الاسم من الفعل	entrance مدخل



### Exercise

#### on Vocabulary Study

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Let's go in, it's getting cloudy. "Go in" means ".....".  
a. protect      b. enter      c. recommend      d. pack
- To get the adjective from the word "history", we add the suffix ".....".  
a. - ing      b. - ful      c. - ic      d. - ance
- Messi is an amazing player. The synonym of "amazing" is ".....".  
a. old      b. awesome      c. national      d. modern
- "Weak" and "....." are opposites.  
a. good      b. strong      c. lazy      d. tiny



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 historic - historical

- \* **historic (adj)** (تاريخي / مهم تاريخيًا (متعلق بالأمكن والمباني التاريخية)  
 ▶ This building is very old. It's **historic**.
- \* **historical (adj)** (تاريخي (متعلق بالتاريخ ودراسته)  
 ▶ I've read a **historical** book. (SB page 37)

### 2 ruin

- \* **ruin (v)** يخرّب - يدمر  
 ▶ Azza **ruined** her mobile. It works no more.
- \* **ruin (s) (n)** بقايا المبنى - الأطلال  
 ▶ **SB** The **ruins** at the Karnak Temple were amazing. (SB page 36)

### 3 so that + فاعل + can/could + inf. ...

- لكي  
 ▶ **SB** We must protect historic places **so that** people **can** visit in the future. (SB page 37)

### 4 recommend

- يوصي بـ / يُزكي  
 • يتبعها اسم أو فعلاً مضاف له -ing
- ▶ - I **recommend** visiting the Egyptian Museum.
- ▶ - I **recommend** a visit to the Egyptian Museum. (WB page 96)

### Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
leave straight away يغادر على الفور	entrance to مدخل إلى ...
drop litter يلقي القمامة	from the top of ... من على قمة ...
a day out يوم بالخارج	interested in مهتم بـ
It was great fun. لقد كانت ممتعة جدًا.	in time في الوقت المناسب [قبل الموعد المحدد]
It's a good idea to + (inf.) إنها فكرة جيدة أن	excited about متحمس بخصوص
It's a long drive جولة طويلة بالسيارة	for the whole day ليوم كامل
It is easy to ... إنه من السهل ...	walk for a long way through يمشي على امتداد الطريق من خلال
It dates to يرجع تاريخه إلى	on time في الوقت المحدد [بالضبط]



## Main points on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## Lesson [1] SB page 35

- The teacher is talking about visiting the Pyramids.
- It is important to plan the **trip**<sup>(1)</sup> properly.
- The teacher is talking about the rules of the trip.
- Students must arrive on time.
- It's a long drive to Giza from the school.
- Students must bring a **packed lunch**<sup>(2)</sup>.
- Students must bring a hat and a bottle of water.
- The pyramids are important to the history and **culture**<sup>(3)</sup> of our country.
- Students mustn't climb them or sit on them.
- Students mustn't drop litter.
- The teacher asks if there are questions about the trip.

## Lesson [2] SB page 36

## A. An amazing day out

- Maged had an amazing **day out**<sup>(4)</sup>.
- Maged visited Abydos last week. He went with his cousins.
- They saw amazing art, temples and **ruins**<sup>(5)</sup> in the desert.
- Maged is not usually interested in history.
- This place is awesome and really amazing for him.

## B. Get a guide :

- Laila is from Assiut.
- The ruins at the **Karnak Temple**<sup>(6)</sup> were amazing.
- The place is big, so you need hours to walk around.

## Lesson [2] SB page 37

- Jerash is a Roman city in Jordan.
- It is more than 2,000 years old.
- The first thing you see is the **entrance**<sup>(9)</sup>.
- The **arch**<sup>(10)</sup> is very tall.
- You must buy a ticket before you go in.
- The stadium is for Roman **horse races**<sup>(11)</sup>.
- You can watch races there today.
- Jerash has three Roman theatres.
- The biggest theatre is the South Theatre.
- 5,000 people can sit there.
- There is an amazing view of the city from there.

رحلة قصيرة (1)	وجبة غداء معبأه (3)	ثقافة (4)	يوم بالتحاح (5)
بقايا / آثار (6)	معبد الكرك (7)	مرشاح (8)	المسرح الروماني (9)
مدخل (10)	قوس / قنطرة (11)	سباقات خيول	

تنويه :

الجمال السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

\* A visit to a tourist place \* The Pyramids \* A famous ancient city \* Protecting historic places

II

Skills

1. Reading and Listening



Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 35

**Teacher :** I'm sure you're all **excited**<sup>(1)</sup> about visiting the pyramids next Sunday. It's important that we plan our trip properly, so I need to **talk to**<sup>(2)</sup> you about rules. On Sunday morning, you must arrive at school **on time**<sup>(3)</sup> so that we can leave **straight away**<sup>(4)</sup>. It's a **long drive**<sup>(5)</sup> to Giza from the school. We are going to be **away from**<sup>(6)</sup> school **for the whole day**<sup>(7)</sup>, so you must bring a **packed lunch**<sup>(8)</sup>. It's going to be very hot, so you must also bring a hat and a bottle of water. Of course, the pyramids are very important to the history and culture of our country. We must help to protect them. You mustn't climb the pyramids or sit on them. You mustn't **drop litter**<sup>(9)</sup>. We must bring all of our rubbish home with us. So, are there any questions about the trip ?

**Answer**  
Listening  
skill

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

**Practise** It is a long ..... to Giza from the school.  
a. like      b. dive      c. drive      d. ride

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الفهم  
ونصوص الاستماع



- (1) متحمس
- (2) يتحدث إلى
- (3) في الوقت المحدد
- (4) على الفور
- (5) جولة طويلة بالسيارة
- (6) بعيداً عن
- (7) ليوم كامل
- (8) وجبة غذاء معبأة
- (9) يلقي القمامة



Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 35



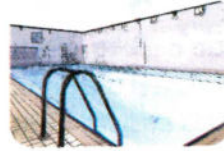
You mustn't eat or drink. You must be quiet.



You must listen to the teacher. You mustn't be **noisy**<sup>(1)</sup> in class.



You mustn't touch the **stones**<sup>(2)</sup>. You must put your **rubbish**<sup>(3)</sup> in the **bin**<sup>(4)</sup>.



You must have a **shower**<sup>(5)</sup> before you swim. You mustn't run near the **pool**<sup>(6)</sup>.

(1) صاخب / مزعج (2) أحجار (3) قمامة (4) سلة المهملات (5) دُش (6) حمام سباحة

## UNIT FOUR

### • on Lesson 1 WB page 95

It is a long walk to the temple so you must all listen carefully. It is hot today, so you must all wear a hat. You must take some water, too. Cars mustn't drive on this road so we can walk on it **safely**<sup>(1)</sup>. However, you must stay on the road and you must walk. You mustn't run there. When we arrive at the **temple**<sup>(2)</sup>, you mustn't **touch**<sup>(3)</sup> any of the **buildings**<sup>(4)</sup> because it is very old. We can eat our **picnic lunches**<sup>(5)</sup> after we visit the temple, but you mustn't eat in the temple. Finally, you mustn't forget to write about what you see!



(1) بأمان (2) معبد (3) يلمس (4) مبانٍ (5) وجبات الغذاء الخاصة بالنزهة

### • on Lesson 2 SB page 36

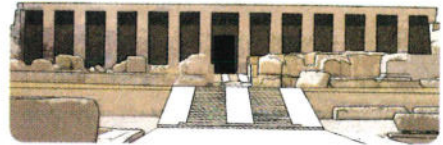
#### An amazing day out!<sup>(1)</sup> ★★★★★

I visited Abydos last week with my cousins. There's so much to see: temples, amazing art and ruins in the desert.

I'm not usually very **interested in**<sup>(2)</sup> history, but this place is awesome!

It is really amazing!

*Maged, Cairo*



#### Get a guide<sup>(3)</sup> ★★★★★

The ruins at the Karnak Temple were amazing and we really enjoyed our visit! It's a big place, so you need a few hours to **walk around**<sup>(4)</sup> it. It's **also a good idea to**<sup>(5)</sup> get a guide to tell you all about the history.

*Laila, Assiut*

#### Go back to<sup>(6)</sup> Roman times! ★★★★★

I visited the Roman theatre in Alexandria with my cousins last week.

It is **easy to**<sup>(7)</sup> imagine what life in Roman times was like here. There are also statues and the **ruins of**<sup>(8)</sup> a temple in the museum there. It was **great fun**<sup>(9)</sup>.

*Samir, Giza*

(1) يوم بالخارج	(2) مهتم بـ	(3) يحصل على مرشد	(4) يتجول	(5) إنها فكرة جيدة أن
(6) يرجع / يعود إلى	(7) إنه من السهل أن...	(8) بقايا من	(9) لقد كانت ممتعة جدًا	

on Lesson 2 SB page 37

## The City of Jerash By Azza

Jerash is a Roman<sup>(1)</sup> city in Jordan<sup>(2)</sup>. It is more than 2,000 years old !

When you go there, the first thing you see is the entrance<sup>(3)</sup> to the city. The arch<sup>(4)</sup> is very tall. You must buy a ticket<sup>(5)</sup> before you go in.

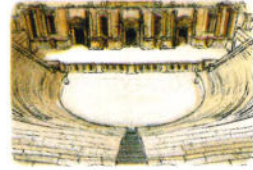
The Romans enjoyed watching sport. This stadium<sup>(6)</sup> is for Roman horse races<sup>(7)</sup>. You can watch races there today.

Jerash has three Roman theatres<sup>(8)</sup>. The biggest theatre is the South Theatre.

Five thousand people can sit here.

This temple<sup>(9)</sup> is on a hill. There is an amazing view<sup>(10)</sup> of the city from here.

I think it is important to learn about historic<sup>(11)</sup> places around the world. We must protect them so that people can visit in the future, too.



### Answer

the following questions :

- Extracting information

استخراج معلومات

Learn

1. How old is the city of Jerash ?

- It is more than 2,000 years old.

Practise

2. What can you see from the temple ?

(1) روماني	(2) دولة الأردن	(3) مدخل	(4) قنطرة / قوس	(5) تذكرة	(6) استاد رياضي
(7) سباقات	(8) مسارح	(9) معبد	(10) منظر طبيعي	(11) تاريخي	

on Lesson 2 WB page 96

## My trip to Petra

I love historic places like Petra in Jordan. It dates to<sup>(1)</sup> around 300 BCE, so it is more than two thousand years old! You must buy a ticket to visit, but when you are inside, you can walk for a long way through<sup>(2)</sup> the old city and the views from some of the higher places are awesome, but you must be careful! Our guide explained how old the temples are : they are really ancient. I really enjoyed our day there and recommend a visit!<sup>(3)</sup>



(1) يعود تاريخه إلى (2) يمشى على امتداد الطريق من خلال (3) يوصى بزيارة



## Exercise

## on Vocabulary

☉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► Key vocabulary

1. A lot of Muslims go to ..... to pray.  
a. entrances      b. castles      c. mosques      d. markets
2. Salah El-din built the ..... to protect Cairo.  
a. stadium      b. hospital      c. castle      d. arch
3. The arch can be a/an ..... to another place.  
a. entrance      b. subject      c. scene      d. project
4. It isn't a complete building. They're just .....  
a. museums      b. pyramids      c. ruins      d. castles
5. You can enjoy watching amazing plays in the national .....  
a. cinema      b. stadium      c. theatre      d. hospital

SB , WB & Previous Exams

6. We can see big ..... in the Egyptian Museum.  
a. statues      b. stations      c. gardens      d. parks  
(Cairo - El-Mostaqbal 2024)
7. **SB** It's a good idea to get a/an ..... to tell you about the history.  
a. guide      b. policeman      c. engineer      d. driver  
(Cairo - Al-Basateen 2022)
8. **WB** I really enjoyed our day in Petra and recommended a/an ..... !  
a. view      b. visit      c. entrance      d. arch  
(Beni Suef - Beba 2024)
9. The Pyramids of Dahshur are ..... , I went there last year and I loved them.  
a. awesome      b. terrible      c. boring      d. bad  
(Behiera - Damanhour 2024)
10. You can enjoy watching a sports match at the .....  
a. museum      b. library      c. stadium      d. castle  
(Monofia - Tala 2023 / Giza - Hawamdia 2024)

### El-Moasser Exercises

11. It's important to ..... historic places from thieves.  
a. destroy      b. delete      c. protect      d. sell
12. You should ..... well when you visit historic places in other countries.  
a. behave      b. enter      c. imagine      d. recommend

### ► Definitions

13. A/An ..... is an entrance to another place.  
a. view      b. race      c. arch      d. fact
14. The "....." is the person who can show you round a place.  
a. doctor      b. guide      c. nurse      d. teacher

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. The Great Pyramid is an important ..... monument.  
a. historical      b. historic      c. historian      d. history
16. I'm interested ..... reading short stories.  
a. on      b. at      c. in      d. of

## 2. Speaking

### مهارة التحدث

### ► Asking and answering questions about historic places :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الأماكن التاريخية :

Questions	Answers
<p>1. What can we learn from historic places ? ١. ماذا يمكننا أن نتعلم من الأماكن التاريخية ؟</p>	<p>- We can learn about the history of our country and other countries. - يمكننا أن نتعلم عن تاريخ بلدنا والبلاد الأخرى.</p>
<p>2. How should we behave when we visit historic places in other countries ? ٢. كيف ينبغي علينا أن نتصرف عند زيارتنا إلى الأماكن التاريخية للبلاد الأخرى ؟</p>	<p>- We should protect them so that people can visit in the future. - ينبغي علينا أن نحميها حتى يتمكن الناس من زيارتها مستقبلاً.</p>
<p>3. Which historic places did you visit and you loved ? ٣. أي الأماكن التاريخية التي قمت بزيارتها وأعجبتك ؟</p>	<p>- The Pyramids of Dahshur are awesome! I went there with my family last year and we loved them. - أهرامات دهشور رائعة. ذهبت إليها مع أسرتي العام الماضي وأعجبنا بها.</p>

## UNIT FOUR

### القواعد التي يجب اتباعها عند زيارة مكان ما Rules you must follow on visiting a place

يمكنك التحدث عن القواعد التي يجب اتباعها عند زيارة مكان ما باستخدام الجمل التالية :

1. In a museum, you **mustn't** touch the objects. داخل المتحف، يجب عليك عدم ملامسة الأشياء.
2. You **must** put your rubbish in the bin. يجب أن تضع المخلفات الخاصة بك في السلة.
3. In a temple, you **mustn't** run. داخل المعبد، لا يجب أن تجري.
4. In a temple, you **mustn't** forget to write about what you see. داخل المعبد، لا يجب أن تنسى أن تكتب عما ترى.
5. You **must** protect the historic place so that people can visit it in the future, too. يجب أن تحمي المكان التاريخي حتى يستطيع الناس زيارته في المستقبل أيضًا.

### 3.

### Writing

### مهارة الكتابة

#### مكان تاريخي قديم قمت بزيارته An ancient historic place you visited

1. Last week, I went to the Karnak Temple. لقد ذهبت إلى معبد الكرنك الأسبوع الماضي.
2. I went there with my family. لقد ذهبت إلى هناك مع أسرتي.
3. It is one of the most important historic places in the world. إنه أحد أهم الأماكن التاريخية ذات الأهمية في العالم.
4. It's a famous place in Luxor. إنه مكان مشهور بمدينة الأقصر.
5. You need a few hours to walk around it. تحتاج إلى ساعات قليلة للتجول حول المعبد.
6. It's a good idea to get a guide. إنها لفكرة جيدة أن ترافق مرشد.
7. A guide can tell you all about the history. يمكن للمرشد أن يخبرك بكل شيء عن التاريخ.
8. You can see many awesome things, such as ancient statues and temples. يمكنك مشاهدة الكثير من الأشياء الرائعة، مثل التماثيل القديمة والمعابد.
9. You mustn't touch any of the statues and the ruins of a temple there. يجب عليك ألا تلمس أي من التماثيل وبقايا آثار المعبد هناك.
10. The ruins at the Karnak Temple were amazing. كانت بقايا الآثار في معبد الكرنك مذهلة.
11. We really enjoyed our visit!. لقد استمتعنا حقًا بزيارتنا !.

#### المسرح الروماني Roman theatre

1. I visited the Roman theatre in Alexandria yesterday. لقد قمت بزيارة المسرح الروماني في مدينة الإسكندرية أمس.
2. It is easy to imagine what life in Roman times was like there. إنه من السهل أن تتخيل كيف كانت الحياة في العصور الرومانية هناك.
3. There were also statues and the ruins of a temple in the museum. كان يوجد أيضًا تماثيل وبقايا آثار معبد في المتحف.
4. It was great fun. كان الأمر ممتعًا للغاية.

### III Language

#### Remember تذكر

#### 1. must + inf. يجب أن

We use (must) to talk about things that are necessary to do.

تستخدم (must) بمعنى [يجب أن] للتعبير عن الضرورة لفعل شيء ما.

ex. - You **must** arrive on time.

#### 2. mustn't + inf. يجب ألا

We use (mustn't) to talk about things that are necessary not to do.

تستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى [يجب ألا] للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة (المنع أو الحظر) لفعل شيء ما.

ex. - You **mustn't** talk in the library.

#### 3. We use the infinitive without "to" after must / mustn't :

لاحظ أننا نستخدم مصدر الفعل بدون (to) بعد (must / mustn't).

ex. - You must **listen** to the teacher.

- You mustn't **climb** the pyramids.

#### 4. Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(A) Yes/No question : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

Must + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ... ?

ex. \* Must I park here ? - Yes, you **must**. - No, you **mustn't**.

(B) Wh-question : (ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word +  $\frac{\text{must}}{\text{mustn't}}$  + subject + inf. ... ?  
كلمة استفهام + + الفاعل + مصدر الفعل

ex. \* What **must** I do to my parents ? - You **must** obey تطيع them.



### Exercises on Language

#### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. You ..... eat or drink in the school library.

a. can

b. must

c. mustn't

(Cairo – El-Maadi 2024)

d. should

## UNIT FOUR

2. Students ..... follow their school rules. *(Fayoum - East Fayoum 2023)*  
a. are                      b. have                      c. must                      d. had
3. .... I visit my uncle today ? - No, you mustn't.  
a. Should                      b. Can                      c. Must                      d. Will
4. **WB** What must or mustn't you ..... in a historic place ?  
a. doing                      b. does                      c. do                      d. did

### El-Moasser Exercises

5. You ..... park here. It's not allowed.  
a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. shouldn't                      d. haven't
6. Eating fast is bad for you. You ..... eat more slowly.  
a. must to                      b. must                      c. have                      d. will have
7. You ..... talk to your classmates during lessons.  
a. can                      b. must                      c. mustn't                      d. haven't

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. What ..... (can't) I do before the exam ? - You must revise well.  
*(Fayoum - East Fayoum 2024)*
2. You ..... (must) touch the statues in the museum. *(Cairo - El-Salam 2024)*
3. **SB** Students must ..... (arrives) at school on time.
4. **WB** You mustn't ..... (running) in a museum.

### El-Moasser Exercises

5. We ..... (mustn't) look after our health.
6. I ..... (not must) make noise during the lesson.
7. You must ..... (been) careful when you cross the road.
8. Must I come early ? - Yes, you ..... (mustn't).
9. Noran mustn't ..... (drives) carelessly.
10. **A:** Why mustn't I ..... (parking) here ?  
**B:** Because it's against the law.

# Speaking & Writing Corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة  
Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues  
القم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

Step 1 Vocabulary	Step 2 Speaking	Step 3 Writing
اختبر إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث	اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
<p><b>Read and complete :</b></p> <p>1. A : Shall we go to the ..... ? القلمة B : Yes, that's a good idea.</p> <p>2. A : Who ..... the citadel ? بنى B : Salah Al-Din Al Ayoubi.</p> <p>3. A : Why did he build it ? يحمى B : To ..... Cairo !</p>	<p><b>Complete the following dialogue :</b></p> <p>Hani is suggesting going to the Citadel :</p> <p>Hani : Hi Nader. Shall we go to the Citadel ?</p> <p>Nader : (1) ..... ?</p> <p>Hani : (2) ..... ?</p> <p>Nader : We can go by bus.</p> <p>Hani : Great ! (3) ..... ?</p> <p>Nader : Salah Al-Din Al Ayoubi built it.</p> <p>Hani : Why did he build it ?</p> <p>Nader : (4) ..... .</p> <p>Hani : To protect Cairo ! Is it a historic building ?</p> <p>Nader : (5) ..... . (Belhira - Delengat 2023)</p>	<p><b>Write a paragraph on :</b></p> <p>"A historic place you visited"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>(Sharkia - Hehia 2023)</p>
<p><b>The Karnak Temple</b></p> <p>1. A : Can I ask you some questions ? بالتأكيد B : .....</p> <p>2. A : Is the Karnak Temple ..... from here ? بعيد B : Yes, it is.</p> <p>3. A : How can I go ..... ? هناك B : By train.</p>	<p><b>Sama is helping a tourist to get to the Pyramids.</b> (Giza - El-Haram 2023)</p> <p>Tourist : Excuse me. Can I ask you some questions?</p> <p>Sama : (1) ..... .</p> <p>Tourist : (2) ..... ?</p> <p>Sama : The Pyramids are in Giza</p> <p>Tourist : Are they far from here ?</p> <p>Sama : (3) ..... .</p> <p>Tourist : How can I go there ?</p> <p>Sama : (4) ..... .</p> <p>Tourist : (5) ..... ?</p> <p>Sama : The Ancient Egyptians built them.</p>	<p><b>"The Karnak Temple"</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>(Cairo - New Cairo 2022)</p>

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 1 & 2

● Understand   ● Apply   ○ Create

### 1 Complete the following dialogue :

A tourist is asking Emad about the Karnak Temple in Luxor.

**Tourist :** Excuse me. Can I ask you some questions ?

**Emad :** (1) .....

**Tourist :** Where is the Karnak Temple ?

**Emad :** (2) .....

**Tourist :** (3) ..... ?

**Emad :** Yes. It is far from here.

**Tourist :** (4) ..... ?

**Emad :** By train.

**Tourist :** Thank you so much.

**Emad :** (5) .....

(Beheira – Shoubraakheit 2022)

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Jerash is a Roman city in Jordan. It is more than 2000 years old! When you go there, the first thing you see is the entrance to the city. The arch is very tall. You must buy a ticket before you go in. The Romans enjoyed watching sport. This is stadium for Roman horse races. You can watch races there today. Jerash has three Roman theatres. The biggest theatre is the South Theatre. Five thousand people can sit **there**. This temple is on a hill. There is an amazing view of the city from there. I think it is important to learn about historic places around the world. We must protect them so that people can visit in the future, too.

(Gharbia - East El Mahalla El Kubra 2024)

#### a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**there**" refers to the .....  
a. North Theatre   b. South Theatre   c. stadium   d. temple
2. There are three Roman ..... in Jerash.  
a. Theatres   b. Races   c. Entrances   d. Cities
3. The underlined word "**watch**" means ".....".  
a. play   b. take   c. make   d. see

#### b. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title for the passage .  
.....
5. What can you see from the temple ?  
.....
6. Why do you think it is important to protect historic places ?  
.....

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Good students should follow the school ..... (Gharbia - East Tanta 2024)  
a. roles                      b. rules                      c. lines                      d. ruins
2. Ayman is interested in horse .....  
a. theatres                      b. temples                      c. columns                      d. races
3. Egypt has a lot of ..... sites which date back to the pharaohs.  
(Sharkia - Fakus 2024)  
a. ancient                      b. modern                      c. recent                      d. new
4. We visited the ..... at the Karnak Temple yesterday. It was great fun.  
a. rules                      b. ruins                      c. pyramids                      d. tickets
5. I'd love to see that film. The ..... says it is very funny.  
a. review                      b. lesson                      c. history                      d. research
6. I ..... that you do more exercises regularly.  
a. touch                      b. comment                      c. recommend                      d. forget
7. People wear sunglasses to ..... their eyes from the sun. (Gharbia - Kotour 2022)  
a. affect                      b. protect                      c. infect                      d. give
8. Be careful! You ..... eat healthy food. (Alexandria - Montazah 2023)  
a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. shouldn't                      d. can't
9. **SB** In the museum, you ..... touch the objects.  
a. must                      b. can                      c. mustn't                      d. don't
10. All the students must ..... to their teachers at school.  
(Beheira - Kafr El-Dwar 2024)  
a. listens                      b. listen                      c. listening                      d. listened

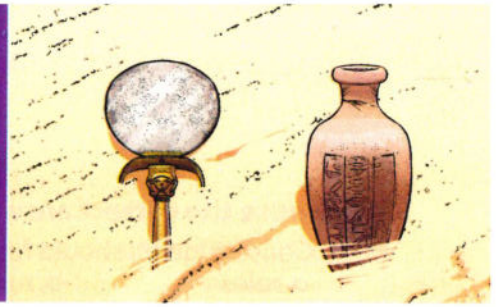
### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. You ..... (mustn't) put your rubbish in the bin. (Sohag - Juhainah 2024)
2. **SB** Must we ..... (following) the rules ?
3. **WB** You mustn't ..... (runs) in a museum. (Gharbia - Samanoud 2022)
4. .... (Can) I get on a train with a ticket ? - Yes, you must.  
(Giza - Kerdasa 2024)

### 5 Write an email of about NINETY(90) words :

محتاج عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Omar about an amazing day out. Your name is Hussien and your email address is hussien@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is omar@gmail.com.



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

Museum objects أشياء توجد بالمتحف	
tool (n) أداة	mask (n) قناع
vase (n) زهرية [إناء للزينة]	figure (n) تمثال [لشخصية بارزة]
bowl (n) وعاء / سلطانية	ring (v), (n) يرن / خاتم
pot (n) إناء [من الفخار]	necklace (n) عقد / قلادة
coin (n) عملة معدنية	
Materials مواد خام	
papyrus (n) نبات / ورق البردي	wood (n) خشب
clay (n) صلصال	metal (n) معدن
Museums in Egypt متاحف في مصر	
Museum of Islamic Art متحف الفن الإسلامي	Museum of History متحف التاريخ
Museum of Arts متحف الفنون	



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

coin - figures - papyrus - vase - clay

1. These bowls are made of .....
2. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... for writing.
3. The tomb مقبرة contains many golden .....
4. The pot used for holding flowers is called a .....

### Lesson 3

SB pages 38 & 39 WB page 97

web page (n) صفحة على الإنترنت	designs (n) تصميمات
magazine (n) مجلة	equipment (n) معدات
opening times (n) أوقات العمل	jewellery (n) مجوهرات
price (n) سعر	model (n) نموذج / مثال مجسم
doorbell (n) جرس الباب	cover (ed) (v), (n) يغطي / غطاء

sculpture(n)	تمثال منحوت / فن النحت	except (prep)	باستثناء / ما عدا
ticket officer (n)	موظف حجز التذاكر	runner (n)	عداء / متسابق
customer (n)	زبون / عميل	call (ed) (v)	ينادي / يتصل تليفونيا

#### Lesson 4

SB pages 40 WB page 98

insects (n)	حشرات	senet (n)	[السينيت] لعبة فرعونية قديمة
mirrors (n)	مرايا	chemical (n)	مادة كيميائية
mix (ed) (v)	يخلط / يمزج	mosquitos (n)	بعوض / ناموس
ingredients (n)	مقادير / مكونات	wind (n)	رياح

#### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
ring يرن / يدق	rang	rung
hold يمسك	held	held
cost يتكلف	cost	cost
draw يرسم	drew	drawn
keep away يبعد	kept away	kept away

#### Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>coins</b>	• small, flat pieces of metal, usually round in shape that we use as money • pieces of money made of metal	عملات معدنية
<b>figure</b>	a model of a person / a picture of someone	نموذج أو تمثال [بشرى]
<b>mask</b>	something people wear to cover or protect their face	قناع
<b>necklace</b>	jewellery you wear around your neck	عقد / قلادة
<b>tool</b>	a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things	أداة / آلة
<b>vase</b>	a pot used for holding flowers	زهريّة [إناء للزينة]
<b>clay</b>	a type of mud (earth and water). It is soft when it is wet, but becomes hard when it is dry, and you can make things with it	طين / صلصال
<b>design</b>	a pattern used to decorate something	تصميم
<b>papyrus</b>	a type of paper made from plants that was used in ancient Egypt	ورق البردى
<b>senet</b>	an Ancient Egyptian game	السينيت [لعبة فرعونية قديمة]

## UNIT FOUR

### Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms			مترادفات ومتضادات		
Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
huge	ضخم	enormous		tiny	ضئيل [صغير الحجم]
adult	بالغ	grown-up		child - kid	طفل
certainly	بالتأكيد	surely - definitely		probably	من المحتمل

Prefixes & Suffixes			مقاطع بادئة ونهاية
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة	Function	أمثلة
un-	تعطى العكس		unpopular غير شائع
- ment	تكون الاسم		equipment معدات
- er	تكون الاسم		officer موظف runner عداء
- ic	تكون الصفة		Islamic إسلامي



### Exercise

#### on Vocabulary Study

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- When we are sure about something, we can start our sentence with ".....".  
a. Certainly      b. Probably      c. Finally      d. Firstly
- The synonym of the word "adult" is ".....".  
a. kid      b. grown-up      c. old      d. child
- To get the opposite from the word "popular", we add the prefix ".....".  
a. dis-      b. un-      c. im-      d. in-
- "Enormous" and "....." are synonyms.  
a. huge      b. weak      c. tiny      d. tall
- To get the noun from the word "equip", we add the suffix ".....".  
a. - ance      b. - ment      c. - ous      d. - er



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 tool - instrument

#### \* tool

عدة (أدوات بسيطة تستخدم لعمل مهمة)

▶ A hammer is a **tool**.

#### \* instrument

جهاز (أكثر تعقيداً) / آلة موسيقية / أدوات طبية للإسعاف

▶ - A piano is a musical **instrument**.

- The dentist used **an instrument** to pull out my tooth. (SB page 38)

### 2 made of - made from

#### \* made of

مصنوع من (شئ لا يتغير بعد التصنيع)

▶ These bowls are **made of** clay.

#### \* made from

مصنوع من (شئ يتغير بعد التصنيع)

▶ Glass is **made from** sand. (WB page 98)

### 3 (be) used for + (v + ing) / (be) used to + inf.

يستخدم في

▶ - Papyrus was **used for** writing.

- Clay was **used to make** pots for cooking. (SB page 40)

### Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
paint around their eyes يقومون بالطلاء حول أعينهم	protect ... from يحمى ... من
travel home يسافر عائداً إلى أرض الوطن	for a long time لفترة طويلة
mix ingredients يمزج / يخلط مقادير	keep away يُبعد
What's on ? ما الشئ المعروض ؟	on the web page على صفحة الإنترنت
look good يبدو جميلاً	walk into the museum يمشي في المتحف
take a photo يلتقط صورة	on the floor على الأرضية
	take off my shoes أقوم بخلع حذائي



## Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

### Lesson [3] SB page 39

1. Last Tuesday, Ahmed went to the Museum of Islamic Art<sup>(1)</sup>.
2. Ahmed went with his family.
3. While waiting to go into the museum, Ahmed saw Amir.
4. Ahmed's parents were buying the tickets.
5. They were looking around the museum.
6. Amir and Ahmed found some tall doors.
7. The doors had amazing **designs**<sup>(2)</sup> on them.
8. Ahmed wanted to take a photo.
9. They stayed in the museum for two hours.
10. While they were travelling home, Amir phoned Ahmed.
11. Amir found Ahmed's bag which he **left**<sup>(3)</sup> in the museum.
12. Amir arrived while Ahmed was **taking off**<sup>(4)</sup> his shoes.
13. He gave Ahmed his bag.

### Lesson [4] WB page 98

1. Chess pieces are usually made of wood. People use them to play a game.
2. Sunglasses are made of plastic. They protect your eyes from the sun.
3. Windows are made of glass or wood. They help to keep away **insects**<sup>(5)</sup>.
4. The **mixer**<sup>(6)</sup> is made of metal and plastic. People use it to mix **ingredients**<sup>(7)</sup> to cook.

### Lesson [4] SB page 40

1. Objects from the past can help us.
2. They help us to understand what life was like.
3. In Ancient Egypt, people used mirrors.
4. They used mirrors to paint around eyes.
5. The pain helped to protect their eyes.
6. The paint **kept away**<sup>(8)</sup> insects.
7. The mirrors were metal.
8. The mirrors had interesting designs.
9. The Ancient Egyptians used **pots**<sup>(9)</sup> and **bowls**<sup>(10)</sup>.
10. They were made of **clay**<sup>(11)</sup>. The clay came from the River Nile.
11. People were mixing ingredients for bread in bowls.
12. Ancient Egyptians liked games like **senet**<sup>(12)</sup>.
13. Senet boxes have 30 squares.
14. This box is made of wood and is about 3500 years old.
15. Some people didn't have senet boxes. They played by drawing squares on the floor.

(1) الفن الإسلامي	(2) تصميّات	(3) ترك	(4) يتّبع (أداء)
(5) حشرات	(6) كُتّاب	(7) مكُونات / مقادير	(8) يبتعد / يبتغ
(9) أواني من الفخار	(10) أوعية	(11) صُنع	(12) لصية فرعونية قديمة

تنويه :

الجمال السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية أخرى:

\* The Museum of Islamic Art \* Different materials \* Objects from the past \* Ancient Egyptian objects

II

Skills

1. Reading and Listening



Listening

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الفهم  
ونصوص الاستماع



• on Lesson 3 SB page 39

Boy :

Last Tuesday, I went to the **Museum of Islamic Art**<sup>(1)</sup> with my family. While we were waiting to go into the museum, I saw my friend Amir with his mum and dad!



While my parents were buying the tickets, Amir and I decided what we wanted to see first.

While we were **looking around**<sup>(2)</sup> the museum, Amir and I found some tall doors with amazing designs on them. They were very interesting, so I wanted a photo. I put my bag **on the floor**<sup>(3)</sup> while I was **taking the photo**<sup>(4)</sup>.

We stayed in the museum for two hours before we went home. While we were **travelling home**<sup>(5)</sup>, Amir phoned me. He had my bag - I left it in the museum! We got home an hour later. Amir arrived while I was **taking off my shoes**<sup>(6)</sup>! He gave me my bag.

(1) متحف الفن الإسلامي (2) يتجول (3) على الأرضية (4) يلتقط صورة (5) يسافر عائداً إلى المنزل (6) أقوم بخلع حذائي



Reading

• on Lesson 3 WB page 97

**Ticket officer**<sup>(1)</sup> : Good morning, City Museum. How can I help you ?

**Customer**<sup>(2)</sup> : Good morning. Can you tell me what times the museum is **open**<sup>(3)</sup> ?

**Ticket officer** : **Certainly**<sup>(4)</sup>. We open from 9.30 to 6.30 every day **except**<sup>(5)</sup> Friday. We **close**<sup>(6)</sup> then.

**Customer** : I'd like to know how much a ticket for two adults and one child is, please.

**Ticket officer** : Of course. **Adults**<sup>(7)</sup> are 150 pounds and children under 12 are 75 pounds.

**Customer** : Can I buy the **tickets**<sup>(8)</sup> at the museum ?

**Ticket officer** : Yes, or you can buy them **online**<sup>(9)</sup>.

**Customer** : Thank you for your help. Goodbye.

(1) موظف حجز التذاكر (2) زيون / عميل (3) مفتوح (4) بالتأكيد (5) ما عدا (6) يغلق (7) البالغين (8) تذاكر (9) عبر الإنترنت

## UNIT FOUR



### Listening

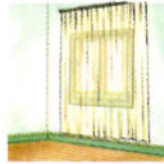
- on Lesson 4 WB page 98



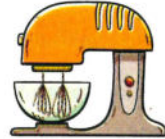
1. These are made of wood. People use them to play a game.



2. These are usually made of plastic. They help to **protect your eyes from** <sup>(1)</sup> the sun.



3. These are made of glass or wood. They help to **keep away** <sup>(2)</sup> insects.



4. This is made of metal and plastic. People use it to **mix ingredients** <sup>(3)</sup> when they are cooking.

(1) تحمي عينك من (2) يبعد (3) يمزج / يخلط مقادير



### Reading

- on Lesson 4 SB page 40

#### Objects from Egypt's past

**Objects** <sup>(1)</sup> from the past can help us to **understand** <sup>(2)</sup> what life was like many years ago. **They** can also show us that we use many of the same objects today!

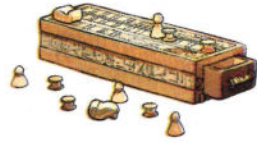
In **Ancient Egypt** <sup>(3)</sup>, many people used **mirrors** <sup>(4)</sup> to help them **paint** <sup>(5)</sup> around their eyes. This was not just to make them **look good** <sup>(6)</sup>: the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and **kept away** <sup>(7)</sup> **insects** <sup>(8)</sup>. The mirrors were **metal** <sup>(9)</sup> and had interesting **designs** <sup>(10)</sup>. Where do you have mirrors in your home?

The Ancient Egyptians used **pots** <sup>(11)</sup> and **bowls** <sup>(12)</sup> for making food such as bread. These objects were made of **clay** <sup>(13)</sup>, which came from the **River Nile** <sup>(14)</sup>. While some people were **mixing** <sup>(15)</sup> **ingredients** <sup>(16)</sup> for bread in bowls, other people used large stones to mix the ingredients in a bowl. How do we make bread today?



(1) أشياء	(2) يفهم	(3) مصر القديمة	(4) مرآيا	(5) يلون	(6) يبدو جميلاً	(7) يبعد/يمنع	(8) حشرات
(9) معدن	(10) تصميمات	(11) ألوان من الفخار	(12) أوعية	(13) صلصال	(14) نهر النيل	(15) يخلط	(16) مكونات/مقادير

Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like **senet**<sup>(17)</sup>. Senet boxes have 30 **squares**<sup>(18)</sup>. This box is made of **wood**<sup>(19)</sup> and is about 3,500 years old. Some people did not have senet boxes, but **they** still played the game. They drew the squares on the floor. What games are **popular**<sup>(20)</sup> in Egypt today ?



**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

- Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

**Learn**

1. What does the pronoun "**They**" in the first paragraph refer to ?

- It refers to objects from the past.

**Practise**

2. What does the pronoun "**they**" in the last paragraph refer to ?

لعبة فرعونية قديمة (17)

مربعات (18)

خشب (19)

محبوب/مشهور (20)



## Exercise

### on Vocabulary

☉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### ► Key vocabulary

- Coins are made of .....  
a. wool      b. plastic      c. metal      d. clay
- The Pharaohs were the first to write on .....  
a. papyrus      b. clay      c. metal      d. figure
- I bought a new ..... to hold some flowers in my room.  
a. bowl      b. mask      c. vase      d. garden
- She is wearing a nice ..... on her neck.  
a. ring      b. shirt      c. necklace      d. coin

#### SB , WB & Previous Exams

- SB** Can you tell me the ..... of the ticket, please ?  
a. coin      b. prize      c. price      d. pound  
(Qalubia - Shebein El Qanater 2024)
- WB** Bees and ants are important .....  
a. birds      b. planes      c. insects      d. guides  
(Sharkia - Belbeis 2024)
- This shop sells goods and cheap things, so there are a lot of ..... there.  
a. figures      b. customers      c. designers      d. patients  
(Sharkia - East Zagazig 2024)
- SB** People ..... the ingredients in big bowls in Ancient Egypt.  
a. mixed      b. painted      c. fixed      d. repaired

## UNIT FOUR

### El-Moasser Exercises

9. In the museum, there are more than 2,000 .....  
 a. animals      b. chemicals      c. objects      d. subjects
10. The ticket ..... sells tickets at the museum.  
 a. doctor      b. officer      c. engineer      d. driver
11. The ..... on this building are really wonderful.  
 a. designs      b. pages      c. objects      d. subjects

### ► Definitions

12. .... are pieces of money made of metal.  
 a. Cans      b. Coins      c. Pots      d. Bowls
13. A ..... is a pot used for holding flowers.  
 a. mask      b. vase      c. clay      d. mirror
14. A ..... is a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things.  
 a. tool      b. type      c. table      d. mask

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. We should protect ourselves ..... pollution.  
 a. on      b. from      c. at      d. in
16. Papyrus was used ..... writing in ancient Egypt.  
 a. on      b. at      c. for      d. of

## 2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

### Remember تذكر

السؤال عن معلومات عبر الهاتف : Asking for information on the telephone :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. How can I help you ? ١. كيف يمكنني مساعدتك ؟	- I want to know what times the museum is open. - أريد أن أعرف ما أوقات فتح المتحف.
2. Hello, can you tell me what times the museum is open ? ٢. مرحبًا، هل يمكن أن تخبرني عن مواعيد العمل لديكم بالمتحف ؟	- Certainly./Of course. It's open from 9:30 to 6:30 every day except Fridays. It's closed then. - بالتأكيد/بالطبع. إنه مفتوحا من الساعة التاسعة والنصف إلى الساعة السادسة والنصف كل يوم ما عدا يوم الجمعة. إنه مغلق في ذلك الوقت.

3. I'd like to know how much a ticket for two adults and one child is, please.

٣. أريد أن أعرف كم تكلفة التذكرة لفردين بالغين وطفل من فضلك.

- It is 150 pounds for adults and children under 12 are 75 pounds.

- إنها بمائة وخمسين جنيهًا للبالغين وبخمس مائة وسبعين جنيهًا للأطفال تحت سن اثنتي عشرة سنة.

4. Can I buy the tickets at the museum ?

٤. هل يمكنني شراء التذاكر من المتحف ؟

- Yes, or you can buy them online.

- نعم أو يمكنك شرائها عبر الإنترنت.

5. Thank you for your help.

٥. شكرًا لك لمساعدتك.

- You're welcome.

- على الرحب والسعة.

### 3. Writing

### مهارة الكتابة

جمل تساعدك على حل سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية ورسالة البريد الإلكتروني في الورقة الامتحانية.

#### A visit to the Museum of Islamic Art

#### زيارة إلى متحف الفن الإسلامي

1. Last week, I went to the Museum of Islamic Art in Cairo.

لقد ذهبت إلى متحف الفن الإسلامي بالقاهرة.

2. I went there on a school trip.

لقد ذهبت إلى هناك في رحلة مدرسية.

3. It is one of the greatest museums in the world.

هو أحد أعظم المتاحف في العالم.

4. We found about 4,500 artifacts in 25 halls.

لقد وجدنا حوالي ٤٥٠٠ قطعة أثرية في ٢٥ قاعة.

5. We stayed in the museum for two hours before we went home.

لقد مكثنا في المتحف لمدة ساعتين قبل أن نعود إلى المنزل.

#### Objects from Egypt's past

#### أشياء من مصر في الماضي

1. In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors.

في مصر القديمة، استخدم الكثير من الناس المرايا.

2. They used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes.

استخدموا المرايا لمساعدتهم في الطلاء حول أعينهم.

3. The paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun.

ساعد الطلاء على حماية أعينهم من الشمس.

4. It also kept away insects.

قام أيضا بإبعاد الحشرات.

5. The mirrors were made of metal.

صنعت المرايا من المعدن.

6. They had interesting designs on them.

كانت لديهم على المرايا تصميمات مثيرة للاهتمام.

# III Language

## Remember تذكر

### The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

#### Formation التكوين

1

#### Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة

I / He / She / It + was + inf. + ing  
فاعل مفرد مصدر الفعل

ex. - I **was eating** my dinner.

We / You / They + were + inf. + ing  
فاعل جمع مصدر الفعل

ex. - They **were studying** maths.

2

#### Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المنفية

I / He / She / It + was + not + inf. + ing  
فاعل مفرد مصدر الفعل

ex. - I **was not eating** my dinner.

We / You / They + were + not + inf. + ing  
فاعل جمع مصدر الفعل

ex. - They **were not studying** maths.

• لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية :

was not → wasn't      were not → weren't

#### (A) Yes/No question :

(أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

3

#### Interrogative

صيغة  
الاستفهام

Was / Were + subject + inf. + ing ..... ?  
الفاعل مصدر الفعل

ex. - **Was** she **holding** a camera?

\* Yes, she **was**.

\* No, she **wasn't**.

- **Were** they **watching** TV?

\* Yes, they **were**.

\* No, they **weren't**.

(B) Wh-question : (ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word + was / were + subject + inf. + ing + .... ?  
كلمة الاستفهام + were + الفاعل + مصدر الفعل + ing + .... ?

- ex. - What **were** you **doing** at 5 o'clock yesterday ?  
\* I **was doing** my homework.  
- What **was** she **doing** yesterday evening ?  
\* She **was brushing** her teeth.

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا في وقت معين في الماضي.

ex. - I **was watching** TV at 6 o'clock yesterday.

كما يستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر أيضًا للتعبير عن فعل كان مستمرًا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر قصير في زمن الماضي البسيط.

ex. - While I **was doing** my homework, the telephone rang.

• لاحظ الآتي :

While/As/Just as      past continuous tense      past simple tense  
بينما / أثناء      زمن الماضي المستمر      ,      زمن الماضي البسيط

ex. - While we **were waiting** to go into the museum, I **saw** my friend Amir.

Past Simple Tense      while/as/just as      past continuous tense  
زمن الماضي البسيط      بينما / أثناء      زمن الماضي المستمر

ex. - I **saw** my friend Amir while we **were waiting** to go into the museum.

When      past simple tense      past continuous tense  
عندما      زمن الماضي البسيط      ,      زمن الماضي المستمر

ex. - When I **saw** Ahmed, he **was playing** football.

Past Continuous Tense      when      past simple tense  
زمن الماضي المستمر      عندما      زمن الماضي البسيط

ex. - Ali **was reading** a book when the light **went** out.

## • Add to your knowledge

## • أضيف إلى معلوماتك :

١. لاحظ إذا لم يتبع (While) فاعل فيكون الفعل بعدها كالتالي :

While + [inf. + ing] , past simple tense  
 زمن الماضي البسيط

ex.- While **running**, Reham fell down.

٢. لاحظ أن (During) يأتي بعدها اسم كالتالي :

During + noun , past simple tense  
 أثناء / خلال زمن الماضي البسيط

ex.- During the film, he **fell** asleep.

٣. لاحظ عند وصف حدثين كانا يحدثان في نفس الوقت دون أن يقطع أحدهما الآخر تستخدم الترتيب التالي :

While/As/Just as past continuous tense , past continuous tense  
 بينما / أثناء زمن الماضي المستمر , زمن الماضي المستمر

ex.- While Salma **was eating**, Mona **was watching** TV.



## Exercises

## on Language

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB & Previous Exams

- They ..... TV at 7 yesterday. (Cairo - El-Mostaabal 2024)  
 a. watches      b. watch      c. were watching      d. are watching
- As Zaki ..... photos of the animals, he lost his phone. (Sohag - Tahta 2024)  
 a. took      b. taking      c. takes      d. was taking
- I ..... the football match at 6 o'clock yesterday. (Cairo - Ain Shams 2022)  
 a. watch      b. watching      c. was watching      d. watches
- It started to rain while they ..... home. (El Fayoum - Sonoras 2023)  
 a. walking      b. walk      c. were walking      d. walked
- SB** We were looking around the museum ..... Amir found some tall doors.  
 a. while      b. when      c. as      d. during

6. **WB** When we ..... down for a picnic, lots of runners were running through the park. *(Minia - Beni Mazar 2024)*  
 a. are sitting      b. sat      c. sits      d. sit

### El-Moasser Exercises

7. .... his homework when the phone rang ?  
 a. Did he do      b. Was he doing      c. Does he do      d. Is he doing
8. What was Samar ..... yesterday evening ?  
 a. did      b. do      c. doing      d. to do
9. While ..... in the garden, I saw my friend.  
 a. works      b. worked      c. work      d. working
10. .... his visit to the museum, he met his friend Ali.  
 a. When      b. During      c. While      d. As

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. When Mona arrived, her mum ..... (cook) in the kitchen. *(Cairo - Ain Shams 2024)*
2. **SB** As we ..... (walk) into the museum, we saw some huge statues.
3. **WB** Lots of birds ..... (fly) in the sky as we were sitting down on the beach. *(Cairo – West East Nasr City 2022 / Dakahlia - Meet Ghamr 2024)*
4. My mobile rang ..... (during) I was doing my homework. *(Kafr El-Sheikh – Qeleen 2022)*

### El-Moasser Exercises

5. Hana ..... (were) reading at 6 yesterday.
6. .... (Is) they doing their homework at 7 yesterday ?
7. He ..... (falls) down while he was playing football.
8. She was cooking while her father ..... (read) a book.
9. Adam and I ..... (be) studying English yesterday evening.
10. Salma was reading a story when her son ..... (drop) the toy.

[illegible]

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3 & 4

○ Understand    ● Apply    ○ Create

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. What game did the Ancient Egyptians like ?  
a. Football      b. Basketball      c. Handball      d. Senet
2. How many squares do senet boxes have ?  
a. 60      b. 30      c. 40      d. 50
3. What is the senet box made of ?  
a. Metal      b. Plastic      c. Wood      d. Glass
4. Where did they draw the squares ?  
a. On the wall      b. On the floor      c. On the door      d. On the window

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

**Mona is calling the Museum of History.**

**Receptionist:** Good morning. The Museum of History.

**Mona:** Good morning. (1) ..... ?

**Receptionist:** We are open from 9:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m.

**Mona:** (2) ..... ?

**Receptionist:** No, we are open daily except Friday.

**Mona:** Can I buy the tickets online for the museum ?

**Receptionist:** (3) .....

**Mona:** How much does the ticket cost ?

**Receptionist:** (4) ..... Would you like to buy a ticket ?

**Mona:** (5) .....

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She is wearing a nice ..... on her finger. (Sharkia - Kafr Sakr 2024)  
a. ring      b. shirt      c. necklace      d. coin
2. A/An ..... is a model of a person or a picture of someone.  
a. face      b. object      c. ingredient      d. figure
3. The main ..... of koshari are pasta and rice.  
a. ingredients      b. squares      c. pots      d. coins
4. I can answer all the questions ..... the last one.  
a. expect      b. except      c. accept      d. excepted

5. People made ..... with clay from the River Nile.  
a. bats                      b. pots                      c. bits                      d. beets
6. **SB** The Ancient Egyptians used ..... to help them paint around their eyes.  
a. coins                      b. pots                      c. mirrors                      d. rings
7. **WB** This ..... helps to keep away mosquitos.  
a. design                      b. square                      c. chemical                      d. necklace
8. They ..... the book when the light went out.  
a. were reading                      b. reads                      c. are reading                      d. read
9. While they were playing cards, Ali's father ..... home.  
a. coming                      b. were coming                      c. comes                      d. came
10. What ..... at eight o'clock yesterday morning ? (*Sohag - Tema 2024*)  
a. did you do                      b. do you do  
c. you were doing                      d. were you doing

**4** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. He was painting ..... (while) the phone rang. (*Monofia – Tala 2024*)
2. I was reading a book while mum ..... (cook). (*Assiut – Sedfa 2022*)
3. What ..... (you do) when I phoned you ?
4. As I ..... (take) photos, I dropped my phone.

(Dakahlia – West Mansoura 2023)

**5** Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

مُجَاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

### "A visit to the museum"

[illegible]



## I

## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

tourism (n)	سياحة	local people (n)	المحليون [سكان البلد]
tourists (n)	سائحون	needle (n)	إبرة / مسلة [فرعونية]
environment (n)	البيئة	Pharaoh (n)	فرعون
damage (d) (v)	يدمر / يتلف	debate (n)	مناقشة / مناظرة
company (n)	شركة	pollution (n)	تلوث



## Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

company - Pollution - Tourism - tourists - environment

1. We should be kind to ..... who visit our country.
2. .... can bring a lot of money to Egypt.
3. I look forward to working in a big .....
4. .... is a serious problem in our community.

## Lesson 5

SB page 41 WB page 99

holiday companies (n)	شركات السياحة	oil company (n)	شركة بترول
drop (ped) (v)	يلقى / يسقط	plan (ned) (v), (n)	يخطط / خطة
area (n)	منطقة / مساحة	travel (led) (v)	يسافر
add (ed) (v)	يضيف	injure (d) (v)	يصيب / يجرح

## Famous people and places

أشخاص وأماكن مشهورة

Stone Circles of Senegambia	الدوائر الحجرية بسينغامبيا [في السنغال]
Cleopatra's Needle	مسلة كليوباترا
Thutmose III	الملك تحتمس الثالث

## Famous rivers

أنهار مشهورة

the River Gambia	نهر غامبيا
the River Thames	نهر التايمز [في إنجلترا]

## UNIT FOUR

### Countries & Cities

دول و مدن

Senegambia	مدينة سينيجامبيا	United Arab Emirates	الإمارات العربية المتحدة
Senegal	دولة السنغال	Wassu	واسو [مدينة في غامبيا]
England	دولة إنجلترا	Gambia	دولة غامبيا

### Lesson 6

SB page 42 WB page 100

report (n)	تقرير (مكتوب)	the British (n)	البريطانيون
stone circles (n)	الدوائر الحجرية (مكان أثري)	weigh (ed) (v)	يزن
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع / يقتفى أثر	storm (n)	عاصفة
label (led) (v)	يلصق / يرفق [بطاقة]	earthquake (n)	زلزال
diagrams (n)	رسوم توضيحية	later (adv)	فيما بعد
sign (n)	لافتة / علامة	nearly (adv)	تقريبًا
across (prep)	عبر	monuments (n)	آثار

### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
pay يدفع [مال]	paid	paid
sink يغوص / يغرق [للأشياء]	sank	sunk
bring يحضر / يجلب	brought	brought

### Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>company</b>	a business that makes money by producing or selling things or services شركة
<b>debate</b>	when different people with different ideas talk about a subject مناقشة أو مناظرة
<b>damage</b>	have a bad or harmful effect on something so that it is broken or spoiled يتلف / يدمر

### Vocabulary Study

#### Synonyms and Antonyms

مرادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
agree يوافق	accept	disagree/refuse يرفض
sink يغرق	go down	float يطفو
strange غريب	unusual	usual عادي
more أكثر	extra	less أقل

Prefixes & Suffixes		مقاطع بادئة ونهاية	
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples	
dis-	تكون العكس	disagree	لا يوافق
- ion	تكون الاسم	pollution	تلوث
- able	تكون الصفة	valuable	قيم
- ing	تكون الاسم من الفعل	driving	القيادة
- ful	تكون الصفة من الاسم	beautiful	جميل



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 needle

\* needle (n)

إبرة خياطة

► My mum used a **needle** and thread to sew my torn shirt.

\* needle (n)

مسلة (حجر تاريخي)

► Cleopatra's **Needle** has beautiful designs on it.

(WB page 100)

### 2 sink - drown

\* sink / sank / sunk

يغرق / يغوص للأشياء

► **WB** The ship nearly **sank** in a storm.

\* drown / drowned / drowned

يفرق (للأشخاص)

► The child **drowned** in the sea as he couldn't swim.

(WB page 100)

### Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
have a class debate	walk up
يقوم بمناقشة أو مناظرة في الفصل	بترق لأعلى
bring money to	in other ways
يجلب مال إلى	بطرق أخرى
give work to	pay for
يوفر عمل لـ ...	يدفع لـ
follow the sign	plan for
يتبع اللافتة / العلامة	يخطط / خطة لـ ...
behave well	make ... for
يتصرف تصرفاً حسناً	يصنع شيئاً من أجل
make pollution	good / bad for
يسبب تلوث	مفيد / ضار لـ
drop litter	think of
يلقي القمامة	يفكر في
	at the moment
	في هذه اللحظة

## Main points on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## Lesson [5] WB page 99

1. We visited the beach<sup>(1)</sup> last month.
2. We decided it was a great place to build a new hotel.
3. The hotel will give work to<sup>(2)</sup> a lot of people.
4. We are a big company<sup>(3)</sup>, so we can ask people to work.
5. They will work in the summer.
6. This is the time when the hotel will be busy.
7. There isn't much water near the beach.
8. There is a lake on the way.
9. We can use water from the lake for the hotel.
10. Let me know what you think of our plan.

## Lesson [6] SB page 42

1. This is a report<sup>(4)</sup> on the Stone Circles.
2. There are more than 1,000 Stone Circles of Senegambia.
3. They follow<sup>(5)</sup> the River Gambia for 350 km.
4. The river goes across two countries : Senegal and Gambia.
5. The Stone Circles are very important.
6. They tell us about the people who made them.
7. The oldest stone circles are around 2,300 years old.
8. The youngest are around 500 years old.
9. People were building the circles for more than 1,800 years.

\* A visit to the beach

\* A business trip

\* Cleopatra's Needle

\* Stone Circles of Senegambia

## Lesson [6] WB page 100

10. Tourists can visit them, but they mustn't damage<sup>(6)</sup> them.
  11. Money from tourism<sup>(7)</sup> helps to pay for<sup>(8)</sup> local people.
  12. Local people look after the stones.
  13. It is important to protect the stones.
1. Cleopatra's Needle<sup>(9)</sup> is a large stone.
  2. It is an important stone with beautiful designs on it.
  3. You can see it next to the River Thames in London.
  4. The Ancient Egyptians made it for pharaoh<sup>(10)</sup> Thutmose III.
  5. It is about 3,500 years old.
  6. The stone is more than 20 meters high.
  7. It weighs<sup>(11)</sup> about 200,000 kilograms.
  8. The British made a special<sup>(12)</sup> ship for the stone in 1877.
  9. While the ship was travelling to London, it nearly sank in a storm.
  10. Another ship helped the stone to arrive in England a year later.

(1) شاطئ	(2) يوفر عمل	(3) شركة	(4) تقرير	(5) يتبع
(6) يدمر	(7) السياحة	(8) يدفع لـ	(9) مسلة كليوباترا	(10) فرعون
(11) يزن	(12) موزن / خاص			

تنويه :

الجميل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

II

Skills

1. Reading and Listening



Listening

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الفهم  
ونصوص الاستماع



On Lesson 5 SB page 41

**Amira** : What do you think, Hana ?

Is **tourism**<sup>(1)</sup> good for **historic**<sup>(2)</sup> places ?

**Hana** : Yes, Amira, I think it is. **Tourists**<sup>(3)</sup> bring money to **an area**<sup>(4)</sup>. This helps the **local people**<sup>(5)</sup>.

**Amira** : I don't think so. A lot of the money goes to big **companies**<sup>(6)</sup>, not local people.

**Hana** : Maybe, but some holiday companies help the **environment**<sup>(7)</sup> and the local people.

**Amira** : I don't agree that tourism helps the environment. Tourists drop **litter**<sup>(8)</sup> and **damage**<sup>(9)</sup> places in other ways, like sitting on **ancient ruins**<sup>(10)</sup>.

**Hana** : I see what you mean, but most tourists **behave**<sup>(11)</sup> well. They know it's important to protect historic places.

الشركات (6)	السكان المحليون (5)	منطقة (4)	سائحون (3)	تاريخي (2)	السياحة (1)
يسلك (7)	البيئة (7)	قمامة (8)	يدمر/يتلف (9)	بقايا الآثار القديمة (10)	يتصرف / يسلك (11)



Reading

on Lesson 5 WB page 99

**Fady** : Do you think this **plan for**<sup>(1)</sup> a new hotel is a good idea, Baher ?

**Baher** : I don't think so<sup>(2)</sup>. It only has jobs for people in the city.

**Fady** : I don't agree<sup>(3)</sup>. More tourists in the area can help the local people.

**Baher** : Maybe, but what about the water ? Taking water from the lake will damage the environment.

**Fady** : I see what you mean<sup>(4)</sup>. It's important to protect the environment.

خطأ (1)	لا أعتقد ذلك (2)	لا أوافق (3)	افهم ما تقصده (4)
---------	------------------	--------------	-------------------

## UNIT FOUR

### • on Lesson 5 WB page 99

While we were visiting the beach last month, we decided it was a great place to build a new hotel. The hotel will **give work to**<sup>(1)</sup> a lot of people. We are a big company, so we can ask people from our city hotels to work here in the summer. This is the time when the hotel will be busy. There is not much water near the beach **at the moment**<sup>(2)</sup>, but while we were driving to the area, we saw a big lake. We can use the water from the lake for the new hotel. **Let me know**<sup>(3)</sup> what you **think of**<sup>(4)</sup> our plan.

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

#### Critical thinking skill

#### مهارة التفكير النقدي

##### Learn

1. Do you think this plan for a new hotel is a good idea ?  
- **Yes, I think so.**

##### Practise

2. Why do you think a new hotel is good for the city ?  
.....

(1) يوفر عمل لـ

(2) في هذه اللحظة

(3) دعني أعرف

(4) يفكر في

### • on Lesson 6 SB page 42

## Report on the Stone Circles of Senegambia

Where are the **stone circles**<sup>(1)</sup>?

- There are more than 1,000 Stone Circles of Senegambia. They **follow**<sup>(2)</sup> the River Gambia for 350 kilometres across two countries: Senegal and Gambia.

#### Why are the stone circles important ?

- The stone circles are very important to the history of Senegal and Gambia. They tell us about the people who made them and how they lived.

#### How old are the stone circles ?

- The oldest stone circles are around 2,300 years old and the youngest are around 500 years old. This means that people were building the circles for more than 1,800 years.



#### Can tourists visit them ?

- Tourists can visit them, but they must not damage them. Money from tourism helps to pay for local people to look after the stones. It is important to protect the **stones**<sup>(3)</sup>.

(1) الدوائر الحجرية (مكان أثرى) (2) يتبع / يقتفى أثر (3) أحجار

• on Lesson 6 WB page 100

## Report on Cleopatra's Needle

### Where is Cleopatra's Needle ?

- Cleopatra's **Needle**<sup>(1)</sup> is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it. You can see it next to the **River Thames**<sup>(2)</sup> in London, England.

### How old is it ?

- The Ancient Egyptians made the stone for **Pharaoh**<sup>(3)</sup> Thutmose III and it is about 3,500 years old.



### How big is it ?

- The stone is more than 20 metres high and **weighs**<sup>(4)</sup> about 200,000 kilograms.

### How did it get to this country ?

- The **British**<sup>(5)</sup> made a **special**<sup>(6)</sup> ship for the stone in 1877. While the ship was travelling to London, it nearly **sank**<sup>(7)</sup> in a storm. Another ship helped the stone to arrive in England a year later.

(1) مسلة (2) نهر التايمز (في إنجلترا) (3) فرعون (4) يزن (5) البريطانيون (6) خاص (7) غرقت

• on Lesson 7 WB page 101

### What do these signs mean ?



1. You **mustn't** drink this.

١- يجب عليك ألا تشرب هذا.



2. You **mustn't** touch this.

٢- يجب عليك ألا تلمس هذا.



3. You **must** turn right.

٣- يجب عليك أن تتجه يمينًا.



4. You **must** watch out for cows.

٤- يجب عليك الحذر من البقر أثناء القيادة.



## Exercise

### on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### ▶ Key vocabulary

- Cleopatra's ..... is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it.  
a. String      b. Needle      c. Pyramid      d. Mask
- ..... is a great problem for the environment. We should solve it.  
a. Population      b. Tourism      c. Solution      d. Pollution

## UNIT FOUR

3. .... is a title of an ancient Egyptian king.  
a. Needle      b. Pharaoh      c. Tourist      d. Runner
4. .... is one of the most important activities which brings money to Egypt.  
a. Diagram      b. Tourism      c. Rubbish      d. Pollution

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

5. We must stop pollution. It ..... the environment.  
a. saves      b. pays      c. adds      d. damages  
*(Cairo - Heliopolis 2024)*
6. **SB** Money from tourism helps to ..... for local people to look after the stone circles.  
a. travel      b. pay      c. add      d. injure  
*(Multidisciplinary - Beheira – El-Delengat 2021)*
7. **WB** Ali's uncle works for a big oil ..... in the United Arab Emirates.  
a. work      b. job      c. company      d. hotel  
*(Cairo - El-Nozha 2023)*

### El-Moasser Exercises

8. We should ..... the school rules.  
a. think      b. damage      c. follow      d. refuse
9. The ..... damaged the city at 5 in the evening.  
a. earthquake      b. environment      c. tourism      d. company
10. Plastic doesn't ..... in water.  
a. drown      b. sink      c. injure      d. include
11. The manager read a ..... about what the workers did.  
a. passage      b. subject      c. report      d. title

### ► Definitions

12. To ..... is to have a bad or harmful effect on something so that it is broken or spoiled.  
a. design      b. damage      c. bring      d. plan
13. A ..... is when different people with different ideas talk about a subject.  
a. deal      b. debate      c. skill      d. patron

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. A little boy fell into the river and .....  
a. sank      b. drowned      c. brought      d. taught
15. Most factories ..... pollution and harm the environment.  
a. make      b. give      c. do      d. pay
16. How much did you pay ..... that new car ?  
a. on      b. to      c. for      d. with

## 2. Speaking

### مهارة التحدث

#### 1. A debate about the effects of tourism : مناقشة / مناظرة حول تأثيرات السياحة :

Stimulus	Response
A : Is tourism good for historic places ? هل السياحة جيدة للأماكن التاريخية ؟	B : Yes. I think it is good. نعم، أعتقد أنها جيدة.
A : Why do you think it is good ? لماذا تعتقد إنها جيدة ؟	B : No, I don't think so. لا، لا أعتقد ذلك.
A : Why do you think it is bad ? لماذا تعتقد إنها سيئة / ضارة ؟	B : As tourists bring money to our country. لأن السياح يقومون بجلب المال إلى بلدنا.
A : I see what you mean, but most tourists behave well in historic places. أفهم ما تقصد ولكن معظم السياح يتصرفون بطريقة جيدة في الأماكن التاريخية.	B : Because some tourists drop litter and damage places in other ways, like sitting on ancient ruins. لأن بعض السياح يلقون القمامة ويلحقون أضرارًا بالأماكن بطرق أخرى، مثل الجلوس على بقايا الآثار القديمة.
	B : I hope all tourists protect our monuments. أتمنى أن يحافظ جميع السياح على سلامة معالمنا الأثرية.

#### 2. Asking for opinions, agreeing and disagreeing :

٢. السؤال عن الرأي، الموافقة وعدم الموافقة :

Asking for opinion	Replies
Do you think visiting historic places is fun ? هل تعتقد أن زيارة الأماكن التاريخية ممتعة ؟	<p><b>الموافقة</b></p> <p><b>Agreeing :</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Yes, I think so. نعم أعتقد ذلك</li> <li>- I agree. اتفق معك</li> </ul> <p><b>الرفض</b></p> <p><b>Disagreeing :</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I don't think so. لا أعتقد ذلك.</li> <li>- I don't agree with that... لا أتفق معك في ذلك ...</li> <li>- I don't agree. لا أوافق.</li> <li>- I see what you mean, but ... أفهم ما تعني ولكن، ....</li> </ul>



### Pop Quiz on Speaking

- Complete the following dialogue :

**Adham is talking to a tourist at a hotel.**

**Adham :** Are you visiting Egypt on business or on holiday ?

**Tourist :** (1) .....

**Adham :** (2) ..... ?

**Tourist :** I come from London.

**Adham :** (3) ..... ?

**Tourist :** Big Ben and the Queen's palace are the most famous places in London.

**Adham :** What do you like most in Egypt ?

**Tourist :** (4) .....

**Adham :** I hope you will enjoy your stay in our country.

**Tourist :** (5) ..... (Monofia – Monof 2023 / Giza – Al-Warraq 2024)



### Writing

مهارة الكتابة

#### Writing tips :

نصائح للكتابة :

**When you write a report:**

عند كتابة تقرير يجب مراعاة الآتي :

- Include subheadings for each paragraph. أن يتضمن عناوين فرعية لكل فقرة.
- Label maps, pictures, photos and diagrams. أن ترفق بطاقات وصفية لخرائط، صور، ورسومات التوضيحية.
- Use a bullet point (•) for each fact. أن تستخدم النقطة (•) لكل حقيقة.

#### Cleopatra's Needle

#### مسلة كليوباترا

1. Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important stone. مسلة كليوباترا حجر كبير الحجم ذو أهمية.
2. There are many beautiful designs on the Needle of Cleopatra. يوجد العديد من النقوش الجميلة على مسلة كليوباترا.
3. The Ancient Egyptians made the stone for Pharaoh Thutmose III. قام قدماء المصريين ببناء المسلة للفرعون تحتمس الثالث.
4. The stone is more than 20 metres high. يبلغ ارتفاع المسلة أكثر من ٢٠ مترا.
5. It weighs about 200,000 kilograms. تزن حوالى ٢٠٠,٠٠٠ كيلو جرام.
6. The British made a special ship for the stone in 1877. أقام البريطانيون سفينة خاصة لنقل المسلة فى عام ١٨٧٧.

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5 & 6

○ Understand    ● Apply    ○ Create

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- What's Cleopatra's Needle ?  
a. A small stone                      b. A large stone  
c. A large statue                      d. A small statue
- What can you see on Cleopatra's Needle ?  
a. Diagrams                      b. Ships                      c. Designs                      d. Views
- Where's Cleopatra's Needle ?  
a. In England                      b. In France                      c. In Egypt                      d. In Germany
- Where's the River Thames ?  
a. In London                      b. In Paris                      c. In Cairo                      d. In Athens

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

**Ali is doing research about the Stone Circles of Senegambia.**

**Nour :** What are you doing, Ali ?

**Ali :** (1) .....

**Nour :** Where are the Stone Circles of Senegambia ?

**Ali :** (2) .....

**Nour :** Senegal and Gambia ! (3) .....

**Ali :** They are in Africa.

**Nour :** (4) .....

**Ali :** Because they tell us about the people who made them and how they lived.

**Nour :** Can anyone visit them ?

**Ali :** (5) ..... It is for free.

(Gharbia - Mahalla 2024)

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The ancient Egyptian made this stone for ..... Thutmose III.  
a. manager                      b. guide                      c. patron                      d. Pharaoh
- According to the ....., you should turn right to get to the museum.  
a. point                      b. diagram                      c. storm                      d. report
- Smoking can ..... your health.  
a. damage                      b. plan                      c. weigh                      d. bring
- You should ..... the names of places on the map.  
a. win                      b. label                      c. rain                      d. mean

## UNIT FOUR • Understand • Apply • Create

- 5. Heba and Mayar are having a class ..... today.  
a. heading      b. subheading      c. debate      d. storm
- 6. I see what you ..... . It's important to do the project.  
a. eat      b. give      c. pay      d. mean
- 7. That project will ..... work to a lot of people in our city.  
a. take      b. give      c. have      d. make  
(Giza - North Giza 2022)
- 8. I heard a strange noise ..... I was walking through the park.  
a. so      b. while      c. during      d. through
- 9. **WB** Most of the people ..... when the earthquake started.  
a. sleep      b. were sleeping      c. slept      d. sleeps
- 10. In the museum, you ..... touch the objects. (Alexandria - Montaza 2023)  
a. must      b. can      c. mustn't      d. don't

### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- 1. They ..... (watching) TV at 7 yesterday. (Menofia - Menouf 2024)
- 2. As Mr Ali was walking to school, he ..... (see) an old friend.
- 3. You must ..... (to help) the poor. (Ismailia 2023)
- 4. **SB** You ..... (mustn't) protect all parts of the environment.  
(Minia - Bani Mazar 2022)

### 5 Write an email of about NINETY(90) words :

محتاج عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Khalid about Cleopatra's Needle. Your name is Sherif and your email address is sherif@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is khalid@gmail.com.

The image shows a web browser window with a 'New message' form. The form has three input fields: 'From:', 'To:', and 'Subject:'. Below these is a large text area for the email body. The browser's address bar shows 'Secure https:' and there are navigation icons on the left and right.

## Extracting information

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [استخراج المعلومات]  
(Extracting information) وهنا تحتاج لإستخراج معلومات من النص.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it. You can see it next to the River Thames in London, England.

The Ancient Egyptians made the stone for Pharaoh Thutmose III and it is about 3,500 years old.

- Where is Cleopatra's Needle ?
- Or Where can you see Cleopatra's Needle ?
- Or Where is Cleopatra's Needle located ?

التحدي : قد تجد صعوبة في استخراج معلومة من النص.

مفتاح الحل : لا بد من قراءة الفقرة جيداً لاستخراج المعلومة.

## A telephone conversation

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

Soha is booking a ticket to visit the Egyptian Museum.

**Ticket officer :** Good morning, the Egyptian Museum.  
How can I help you ?

Soha : Good morning, (1) .....

**Ticket officer :** We are open from 9.00 am to 6.00 p.m.

Soha : (2) .....

**Ticket officer :** Yes, we are open daily except Friday.

Soha : Can I buy the tickets online ?

**Ticket officer :** (3) .....

Soha : How much does the ticket cost ?

**Ticket officer :** (4) .....

Soha : Can I get my children with me ?

**Ticket officer :** Sure, you're welcome.

Soha : (5) .....

التحدي : تريد [إجراء حوار عبر الهاتف] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل : يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بينك وبين الموظف.

# 3

## Correction notes

- الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

### Review

◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

must / mustn't → (inf. مصدر الفعل)	يستخدم [مصدر الفعل] بعد [must/mustn't]
was / were → (inf.+ing)	في [الماضي المستمر] نستخدم [was / were] وبعدهم الفعل مضاف له ing
While → ماضى بسيط، ماضى مستمر	نستخدم الماضى المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمر وقطعه حدث آخر زمنه ماضى بسيط بعد While/As/Just as
When → ماضى مستمر، ماضى بسيط	تستخدم When وبعدها ماضى بسيط

### Learn

◀ تعلم

Sentence	Correction	Reason
① As we ... [walk], we saw our friend.	were walking	نستخدم ماضى مستمر بعد [As]
② While I was studying, the phone ..... [ring].	rang	نستخدم الماضى البسيط مع الحدث القصير
③ You mustn't ..... [climbs] the fence.	climb	نستخدم [المصدر] بعد [mustn't]
④ I was reading when my father ..... [arrive].	arrived	نستخدم ماضى بسيط بعد [when]

### Practice

◀ تدرب

◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة

① As I was going home, Amir .... [phone] me.	phoned	.....
② Must I ... [parking] here?	park	.....
③ You mustn't .... [touches] anything in the museum.	touch	.....
④ I saw my friend while I ... [run] in the street.	was running	.....

◀ اكتب التصحيح

① You mustn't .... [eating] at the library.	.....	نستخدم [المصدر] بعد [mustn't]
② As we were travelling, we ... [see] an accident.	.....	نستخدم ماضى بسيط مع الحدث القصير
③ The teacher was ... [talks] when the bell rang.	.....	نستخدم ماضى مستمر مع الحدث الطويل



# Review

## on unit 4

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

### مراجعة عامة على Unit 4 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
arch	1. Expressing rules using must/mustn't	1. A telephone call asking for information
castle	<div> <div>فاعل</div> <div>+</div> <div>يجب must / يجب mustn't</div> <div>+</div> <div>المصدر inf.</div> </div>	السؤال عن معلومات عبر الهاتف
mosque		
museum		
pyramid	- You must listen to the teacher.	- How can I help you ?
ruins	- You mustn't eat or drink in a museum.	- Hello, can you tell me .... ?
stadium	2. The past continuous tense.	- Certainly. / Of course. It's .....
statue	زمن الماضي المستمر	- I'd like to know what time .....
temple		- Can I buy .... ?
theatre	(I - He - She - It) + was + inf. + ing	- Thank you for your help.
awesome	(We - You - They) + were + inf. + ing	2. A debate about the effects of tourism
historic	- I was studying my lessons.	
bowl	- They were having lunch.	
papyrus		
mask		
figure	<div> <div>While / As / Just as</div> <div>+</div> <div>ماضى مستمر past cont.</div> <div>+</div> <div>ماضى بسيط past simple.</div> </div>	مناظرة حول تأثيرات السياحة
ring	- While Salma was watching TV, the doorbell rang.	A : Is tourism good for historic places ?
necklace		B : Yes, I think it is good.
coin	- The light went out as Mona was reading a book.	B : No, I don't think so.
clay		
designs		
jewellery		
except		
runner		

## Questions collected from previous exams

تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egypt has a lot of ..... sites which date back to the pharaohs.  
a. ancient   b. modern   c. busy   d. new  
(Cairo - Al-Basateen 2024)
2. I love going to the ..... places such as museums and ancient ruins.  
a. historic   b. busy   c. culture   d. modern  
(Menofia - Monof 2024)
3. These bowls are made of .....  
a. flour   b. air   c. clay   d. oil  
(Assuit - Manflaat 2023)
4. .... are pieces of money made of metal.  
a. Figures   b. Coins   c. Food   d. Tools  
(Assuit - Sedfja 2022)
5. .... are not a complete building.  
a. Ruins   b. Castles   c. Statues   d. Arches  
(Ismailia - Ismailia 2023)
6. We should go to the ..... The plane takes off at 7 pm.  
a. stadium   b. airport   c. station   d. wedding  
(Assuit - El Badary 2023)
7. You can watch a sports match at a .....  
a. lab   b. library   c. museum   d. stadium  
(Luxor - Luxor 2022)
8. What ..... when I phoned you?  
a. were you doing   b. you were doing   c. are you doing   d. did you do  
(Menofia - El-Sadat 2024)
9. You mustn't ..... the objects in the museum.  
a. touches   b. touch   c. touching   d. is touching  
(Luxor - El Bayde 2023)

10. While they ..... into the zoo, they saw an angry lion.  
a. were walking   b. walk   c. walked   d. walks  
(Menofia - Monof 2024)
2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
1. You ..... (must) eat or drink in the museum.  
(Qalyubia - West Shobra Elkhelima 2024)
2. They ..... (have) food when the doorbell rang.  
(Gharbia - Zefja 2022)
3. I was listening to music while he ..... (talk).  
(Dakahlia - Nabroa 2023)
4. We must ..... (to help) the poor.  
(Qalyubia - El Khanka 2023)
5. The phone rang ..... (during) we were eating.  
(Sharkia - El Hossinai 2022)
6. Drivers ..... (must) smoke at petrol stations.  
(Fayoum - Tamia 2023)
7. While Ali was watching TV, he ..... (fall) asleep.  
(Suez 2024)
8. I was watching a film when my father ..... (comes).  
(Beheira - Kafr Eldawar 2023)
9. While I ..... (study) my lesson, my father called me.  
(Giza - Giza North 2022)
10. You mustn't ..... (to stop) here. (Cairo - El-Shorok 2023)

# Test

## on unit 4

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه  
يمكنك حل الاختبار  
إلكترونياً وتصويبه

### A. Listening

قم بحل اختبار تراكمي في الملحق



#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- The Ancient Egyptians were very .....  
a. bad                      b. evil                      c. clever                      d. stupid
- The Ancient Egyptians used ..... for making food.  
a. pots                      b. bowls                      c. pots and bowls                      d. plastic plates
- Pots were made of .....  
a. mud                      b. clay                      c. wood                      d. metal
- Clay was taken from the .....  
a. sea                      b. beach                      c. lake                      d. River Nile

### B. Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

A guide is showing some tourists the Karnak Temple.

Tourist : Excuse me. What is this tall stone called ?

Guide : (1) .....

Tourist : (2) ..... ?

Guide : The needle is nearly thirty metres high.

Tourist : (3) ..... ?

Guide : They're hieroglyphic writings.

Tourist : Who built it ?

Guide : (4) ..... They were great people.

Tourist : (5) .....

Guide : You're welcome.

(Gharbia - Santa 2023)

### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Objects from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. **They** can also show us that we use many of the same objects today!

In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good: the paint helped to **protect** their eyes from the sun and kept away insects. The

mirrors were made of metal and had interesting designs. Where do you have mirrors in your home ?

The Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food. These objects were made of clay, which came from the River Nile. While some people were mixing ingredients in bowls, other people used stones to mix the ingredients in a bowl. How do we make bread today?

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to .....  
 a. years      b. objects      c. designs      d. mirrors
- The underlined word "protect" means ".....".  
 a. make      b. attack      c. help      d. keep safe
- You can look at yourself at the .....  
 a. bowls      b. mirror      c. pots      d. clay

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.

.....

5. What did the Ancient Egyptians use mirrors for ?

.....

6. What do you think of the Ancient Egyptians ?

.....

## D. Vocabulary & Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- A/An ..... is a business that makes money by producing or selling things or services. (Gharbia - East Tanta 2024)  
 a. monument      b. company      c. earthquake      d. diagram
- SB** We must ..... the historic places around the world.  
 a. connect      b. suspect      c. protect      d. affect
- Can you ..... what you mean ?  
 a. explain      b. plan      c. know      d. recognize
- Many tourists go to Luxor to enjoy visiting the .....  
 a. pyramids      b. temples      c. towers      d. beaches  
(Behira - Edko 2022)
- WB** The Cleopatra's Needle is next to the ..... Thames in London.  
 a. Canal      b. Ocean      c. Sea      d. River



## 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Jerash is a Roman city in .....  
a. China    b. Japan    c. Jordan    d. India
- The ..... is very tall.  
a. stadium    b. arch    c. temple    d. tower

## 2. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

A tourist is asking Sama about the Pyramids

Tourist : Excuse me. Can I ask you some questions ?

Sama : (1) .....

Tourist : (2) .....

Sama : The pyramids are in Giza.

Tourist : How can I get there ?

Sama : (3) .....

## 3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- People made ..... with clay from the River Nile.  
a. boxes    b. tables    c. pots    d. pens
- Samy is interested ..... watching TV.  
a. for    b. in    c. at    d. of
- Pupils mustn't ..... dirty water.  
a. drink    b. drinks    c. drank    d. drunk
- While Samy was eating, the phone .....  
a. rings    b. ringing    c. ring    d. rang
- A lot of muslims go to ..... to pray.  
a. banks    b. schools    c. mosques    d. markets

## 4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

Objects from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. They can also show us that we use many of the same objects today! In ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes. This wasn't just to make them look good. The paint helped them to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects.

The mirrors were made of metal and had an interesting designs. Where do you have mirrors in your home ? The ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food. These objects were made of clay which came from the River Nile.

## a. Answer the following questions:

- How can objects from the past help us ?  
.....
- What did the Ancient Egyptians use for making food ?  
.....
- What did the Ancient Egyptians use mirrors for ?  
.....

## b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to .....  
a. years    b. objects    c. design    d. mirrors
- In Ancient Egypt, mirrors were made of .....  
a. glass    b. wood    c. metal    d. clay

(Al-Azhar - Qena Zone 2024)

## 5. Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- at - Karnak Temple - The ruins - the - amazing - were.  
.....
- boxes - 30 - have - squares - Senet.  
.....
- the history - learn - to - our country - It's - important - of.  
.....
- Senet - Ancient - liked - playing - Egyptians.  
.....

## 6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about:

"The Ancient Egyptians"

.....  
.....  
.....

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

**A tourist is asking Emad about the temples of Luxor.**

Tourist : Excuse me. Can I ask you some questions ?

Emad : (1) .....

- a. No, he can't.
- b. Yes, of course.
- c. Yes, they can.
- d. You're right.

Tourist : Where are the temples ?

Emad : (2) .....

- a. In Luxor
- b. For two hours
- c. By train
- d. At six o'clock

Tourist : (3) .....

- a. Are they modern ?
- b. Are they far ?
- c. Are they ancient ?
- d. Are they high ?

Emad : Yes, they are far from here.

Tourist : (4) .....

- a. How are you doing ?
- b. What can you see ?
- c. How can I get there ?
- d. Why did you go there ?

Emad : You can take a train.

Tourist : Thank you so much.

Emad : (5) .....

- a. No, thanks
- b. Pardon me
- c. I'm sorry
- d. You're welcome

- Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

6. You mustn't ..... (to stop) here.

- a. stopped
- b. stop
- c. stops
- d. stopping

7. Hala ..... (read) a story when her son dropped the toy.

- a. was reading
- b. reading
- c. reads
- d. is reading

8. In a library, you ..... (must) eat or drink.

- a. must to
- b. mustn't
- c. should
- d. doesn't

9. What were you doing when I ..... (phone) ?

- a. phones
- b. phoning
- c. was phoned
- d. phoned



# UNIT FIVE

## Helping you, helping me

SB pages 44 : 53

WB pages 102:108

### Unit Objectives :

- **Reading :**  
An article about kindness; blogs about volunteering for charities; A Little Princess; a news report about a charity; a blog about a project
- **Writing :**  
A blog post on how to help your community
- **Listening :**  
Conversations about jobs in the house; descriptions of photos; stories about people who helped; people making suggestions
- **Speaking :**  
A discussion about jobs in the house; discussing random acts of kindness; making suggestions
- **Language :**  
who, which, that, where
- **Life Skills :**  
Participation; Collaboration
- **Values :**  
Coexistence values; Sharing; Random acts of kindness
- **Issues :**  
Community participation



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

cooking (n)	الطبخ	stranger (n)	شخص غريب
tidying up (n)	ترتيب - تنظيم [الأشياء]	fantastic (adj)	رائع
washing up (n)	غسل [الأواني]	smile (d) (v), (n)	ابتسامة - يبتسم
taking out the rubbish	إخراج القمامة	distance (n)	مسافة
putting away my clothes	وضع ملابسى فى مكانها المعتاد	messy (adj)	فوضوى [غير مرتب]
looking after my brother	الاعتناء بأخى	random (adj)	عشوائى [غير مقصود]
kindness (n)	حسن المعاملة - طيبة / عطف	apartment (n)	شقة سكنية



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

random - smile - tidy - fantastic - strangers

- I'm lucky because she helps me to ..... up my room.
- Heba doesn't speak in front of ..... . She's shy.
- I like the ..... on my grandmother's face.
- They gave all the players ..... tests to check their health.

### Lesson 1

SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 102

teenager (n)	مراهق	sort (n)	نوع
floor (n)	طابق - أرضية	wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك
lift (n)	مصعد [أسانسير]	stairs (n)	درجات السلم

### Lesson 2

SB pages 46 & 47 WB page 103

shopkeeper (n)	صاحب [متجر / محل تجارى]	footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم
care (d) (v), (n)	يهتم - عناية / اهتمام	surprised (adj)	مندعش
shape (n)	شكل	check (ed) (v)	يتحقق - يفحص
acts (n)	أفعال / أعمال	advertisement (n)	إعلان
Random Acts of Kindness Day		tips (n)	نصائح
يوم أفعال الخير غير المخططة [العشوائية]		thief (n)	لص

## UNIT FIVE

### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
put away يضع شيء في مكانه المعتاد	put away	put away
take out يُخرج	took out	taken out
sit down يجلس	sat down	sat down

### Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>fantastic</b>	extremely good; excellent	رائع
<b>give back</b>	return something to someone	يعيد
<b>kindness</b>	the quality of being kind, generous, helpful and caring towards other people	حسن المعاملة / العطف / الطيبة
<b>make friends</b>	become friends with someone for the first time	يكون صداقات
<b>messy</b>	not tidy / very untidy	فوضوي (غير مرتب)
<b>put away</b>	put something in the place where you usually keep it when you are not using it	يضع شيء في مكانه المعتاد
<b>random</b>	• done or happening by chance and not according to any plan • happening without a plan	عشوائي
<b>run after</b>	run quickly to catch or stop someone or something	يلاحق / يطارد
<b>shopkeeper</b>	a person who owns and runs a shop	صاحب المحل
<b>smile</b>	the shape of your mouth that shows you are happy	ابتسامة
<b>tidy up</b>	make a place look better by putting things in their correct places	يُرتب الأشياء
<b>lift</b>	a machine that carries people up or down in a tall building	المصعد [الأسانسير]

### Vocabulary Study

#### Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
tidy مرتب	clean	messy/untidy غير مرتب
full مملوء	filled	empty فارغ
heavy ثقليل	massive	light خفيف
borrow يستعير	take	lend يُسلف
lucky محظوظ	fortunate	unlucky غير محظوظ

**Prefixes & Suffixes****مقاطع بادئة ونهاية**

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-er	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	stranger شخص غريب
-ness	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	kindness طيبة / عطف
-ful	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	careful حريص

**General Notes on Reading & Listening****1 lift - left****\* lift (n)**

مصعد (أسانسير)

▶ I take the **lift** to the seventh floor.**\* lift (v)**

يرفع

▶ I'm sorry, I can't **lift** this heavy bag.**\* left (adv)**

اليسار

▶ Nahed is sitting on the **left**.**\* left (v) (past - p.p of leave)**

غادر

▶ Ayman **left** for Amman last Monday.

(SB page 45)

**2 wash - wash up****\* wash (v)**

يفسل

▶ When he gets up, he **washes** his face.**\* wash up (v)**

يفسل (أطباق)

▶ My mum is **washing up** in the kitchen.

(SB page 45)

**Important Expressions & Prepositions****تعابير و حروف جر هامة**

Expressions	Prepositions
What sort of ..... ? ما نوع ..... ؟	tidy up (a room) يرتب [غرفة]
take the lift to يأخذ المصعد إلى	put away يضع الشيء في مكانه المعتاد
get ready for ... يستعد لـ ... / يجهز لـ ...	take out يخرج [شيء]
do the cooking يطبخ	get on the bus يصعد إلى الأتوبيس
give ... back يعيد شيئاً في مكانه	on the third floor في الطابق الثالث
give a seat to يعطي مقعد إلى	go down to ... ينزل / يصل إلى
do/practise random acts of kindness يمارس / يقوم بأعمال خير غير مخططة [عشوائية]	run after يلاحق / يطارد
for no reason بدون سبب / مبرر	care about يهتم بـ



## Main points on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

## Lesson [1] SB page 45

## Hala

1. Hala has to make her bed every day.
2. She has to **tidy up**<sup>(1)</sup> her bedroom once a week.
3. Her mother isn't happy because she is **messy**<sup>(2)</sup>.
4. She always tidies up once a week.
5. She has to **put away**<sup>(3)</sup> all her clothes.

## Munir

1. Munir and his sister **take turns**<sup>(4)</sup> to wash up.
2. Munir washes up on Mondays and Wednesdays.
3. His sister washes up after dinner on Tuesdays.
4. Sometimes, Munir helps his grandmother do the cooking.

## Adam

1. Adam helps with different things at home.
2. His most difficult job is **taking out**<sup>(5)</sup> the rubbish.
3. He usually takes out the bins in the evening.
4. His flat is on the third floor.
5. He has to go down to the street in the **lift**<sup>(6)</sup>.

## Nader

1. He has to look after his brother after school.
2. They play games and Nader gives his brother a **snack**<sup>(7)</sup>.
3. He doesn't have to do any homework yet.
4. He has to get his bag ready for school.
5. Nader makes sure his brother has the right books.

\* Helping at home

\* Doing the housework

## Lesson [2] SB page 46

## Photo (1)

1. The girl looks sad to be **alone**<sup>(8)</sup>.
2. She is new in the school.
3. She doesn't have any friends yet.
4. Students should try to **make friends**<sup>(9)</sup> with her.

## Photo (2)

1. A man forgot his bag.
2. Someone should run after him to give him the bag back.
3. They should look inside the bag to find his name.

## Photo (3)

1. The woman looks really tired.
2. Someone should make her a cup of tea.
3. She should have a rest.
4. They should take the children outside to play with them.

## Photo (4)

1. The girl shouldn't carry all those things.
2. Someone should carry some of the things for her.

## Lesson [2] SB page 47

## Random acts of kindness

1. In 1982, some friends were in a restaurant in California.
2. They wanted to make the world better.
3. Anne Herbert **wrote down**<sup>(10)</sup> her idea.
4. The idea was to practise **random**<sup>(11)</sup> acts of kindness.
5. A random act of kindness is a kind thing you do.

أخرج	(1) يتناول
(11) عشوائي	(2) فطوئى
(4) يتبادل الدور	(3) يطفئ شئ في مكانه
(10) يكتب	(7) وجبة خفيفة
(9) يكون صدقات	(8) يفرده
(6) يصعد (الساندوتش)	

## تنويه :

الجمال السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

\* Random acts of kindness

## II

## Skills

## Reading and Listening



## Listening

## Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الفهم  
ونصوص الاستماع



• on Lesson 1 SB page 45

**Hala** : I'm Hala. I have to **make my bed**<sup>(1)</sup> every day and **tidy up my bedroom**<sup>(2)</sup> once a week. My mother isn't happy about how messy I am, but I always tidy up once a week on Saturday morning. It **takes a long time**<sup>(3)</sup>. I have to put away all my clothes.



**Munir** : My name's Munir. During the week, my sister and I **take turns**<sup>(4)</sup> to **wash up**<sup>(5)</sup> after meals. I wash up after dinner on Mondays and Wednesdays and she washes up after dinner on Tuesdays and Thursdays. Sometimes, I help my grandmother to **do the cooking**<sup>(6)</sup>. I love making koushari.



**Adam** : I'm Adam. I help with different things at home but my most difficult job is **taking out our rubbish**<sup>(7)</sup>. I don't have to do this every day; only when the bins are full. I usually take out the bins in the evening on Wednesdays and Sundays. Our apartment is **on the third floor**<sup>(8)</sup> so I have to **go down to**<sup>(9)</sup> the street in the lift. The bins are heavy when they are full!



**Nader** : I sometimes have to **look after**<sup>(10)</sup> my brother after school, but I like doing this. We play games and I give him a snack to eat. He doesn't have to do any homework yet, but he has to **get his bag ready for**<sup>(11)</sup> school and I **make sure**<sup>(12)</sup> he has the right books.



### Answer

#### Listening skill

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

## Practise

Hala has to put away all her ..... once a week.

a. books    b. bins    c. clothes    d. toys

(6) يطبخ	(5) يغسل الألوان	(4) يتبادل الأدوار	(3) يستغرق وقت طويل	(2) أرتب حجرة النوم الخاصة بي	(1) ارتب سريري
(12) يتأكد	(11) يجهز حقيبته لـ	(10) يعتني بـ	(9) ينزل/ يصل إلى	(8) في الطابق الثالث	(7) يخرج القمامة

## Reading

### on Lesson 1 WB page 102

We're going on a **boat**<sup>(1)</sup> today. It's going to be hot, so you have to wear **sunglasses**<sup>(2)</sup> and a hat. Boats are **fun**<sup>(3)</sup> but they can be **dangerous**<sup>(4)</sup>. Dina uses a **wheelchair**<sup>(5)</sup>, so she has to go on the boat first. You all have to be careful when you get on the boat. You also have to sit down when the boat is moving, but you don't have to sit when the boat stops. You can stand up then. Finally, if you see a dolphin, you have to tell us! That is why we are going!

(1) قارب (2) نظارة شمسية (3) متعة (4) خطر (5) كرسي متحرك

## Listening



### On Lesson 2 SB page 46

**Aya** : The girl looks sad to be alone. I think she is new in the school and doesn't have any friends yet. The other students shouldn't forget how it feels when you start school. They should try to **make friends**<sup>(1)</sup> with her.



**Samir** : A man forgot his bag. Someone should **run after**<sup>(2)</sup> him and **give the bag back**<sup>(3)</sup> to him. Or they should look inside the bag to find his name and address.



**Aya** : The woman looks really tired! I think someone in her family should make her a cup of tea and she should **have a rest**<sup>(4)</sup>. They should take the children outside and play with them.



**Samir** : She shouldn't carry all those things. Someone should carry some of the things for her.



(1) يكون صداقات (2) يلحق (3) يُعيد الحقيبة (4) يأخذ قسطاً من الراحة



## Reading

### On Lesson 2 SB page 47

## Random<sup>(1)</sup> acts<sup>(2)</sup> of kindness<sup>(3)</sup>

In 1982, some friends were in a restaurant in California, USA. They wanted to **make the world better**<sup>(4)</sup>. One of the friends, Anne Herbert, **wrote down**<sup>(5)</sup> her idea : **Practise**<sup>(6)</sup> random acts of kindness.



A random act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone, **for no reason**<sup>(7)</sup>. You can do random acts of kindness for the people you know : **for example**<sup>(8)</sup>, buy flowers for your mother. You can also be kind to strangers : for example, **give your seat to**<sup>(9)</sup> someone on a bus. Now, February 17<sup>th</sup> is Random Acts of Kindness Day. **All over the world**<sup>(10)</sup>, people **do kind things for**<sup>(11)</sup> the day : not because they have to, but because they want to **see a smile on**<sup>(12)</sup> a person's face. Isn't that a fantastic idea ?

### Choose

the correct  
answer from  
a, b, c or d :

#### - Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

#### Learn

1. The word "....." means happening without a plan.

a. kindness b. random c. stranger d. smile

#### Practise

2. The word "....." means very good.

a. terrible b. horrible c. fantastic d. bad

(1) عشوائي

(2) أفعال

(3) طيبة / عطف

(4) يجعل العالم أفضل

(5) يدون

(6) يمارس

(7) بدون سبب / مبرر

(8) على سبيل المثال

(9) اترك مقعدك إلى

(10) في جميع أنحاء العالم

(11) يقوم بأعمال لطيفة لـ

(12) يرى ابتسامة على

### on Lesson 2 WB page 103

## Do you want to start running<sup>(1)</sup> ?

Follow<sup>(2)</sup> these tips<sup>(3)</sup> !

- Start running short **distances**<sup>(4)</sup>.
- Don't run too far, but go **a bit further**<sup>(5)</sup> each day.
- Go with a friend if you can-it will help!
- Don't run if your legs **hurt**<sup>(6)</sup>.
- Drink lots of water after a run, but not before!
- Eat **healthy**<sup>(7)</sup> food.
- Don't eat a lot of sweets.



(1) الجرى (2) يتبع (3) نصائح (4) مسافات (5) أبعد قليلاً (6) يؤلم (7) صحي

**Exercise on Vocabulary**

☉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► **Key vocabulary**

1. My uncle lives in a big ..... in Alexandria.  
a. shop                      b. apartment                      c. factory                      d. castle
2. The teacher was very angry when he found the class .....  
a. tidy                      b. arranged                      c. clean                      d. messy
3. The teacher told the students to ..... up after they made a model for the project.  
a. do                      b. tidy                      c. make                      d. take
4. Munir has to ..... up the dishes after dinner on Mondays and Wednesdays.  
a. wash                      b. tidy                      c. look                      d. take
5. He is asking about directions. He seems to be a/an ..... to this part of the city.  
a. shopkeeper                      b. stranger                      c. actor                      d. waiter
6. Ali has to ..... his toys away when he finishes playing with them.  
a. put                      b. take                      c. go                      d. make

**SB , WB & Previous Exams**

7. Karim is a happy person and always has a ..... on his face!  
a. sad                      b. smell                      c. smile                      d. small
8. **WB** The police ran after the ..... when they saw him leaving the bank.  
a. customer                      b. thief                      c. shopkeeper                      d. manager
9. What is the ..... between Cairo and Alexandria ? - It is 216 km.  
a. distance                      b. rail                      c. road                      d. way

(Giza - Omraniya 2024)

(Cairo - East Nasr City 2022 / Luxor – Luxor 2024)

**El-Moasser Exercises**

10. We study numbers and ..... in maths.  
a. shops                      b. ships                      c. shapes                      d. sheep
11. You can put a/an ..... in the newspaper to sell your old flat.  
a. purse                      b. choice                      c. advertisement                      d. village
12. My father gave me some ..... about studying English.  
a. tips                      b. tabs                      c. tapes                      d. trips

### ► Definitions

13. A /An ..... is a machine that carries people up or down in a tall building.

- a. plane      b. needle      c. bin      d. lift

14. The man who owns and runs a shop is called a/an .....

- a. shopkeeper      b. nurse      c. engineer      d. builder

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. You should ..... ready for the next exam.

- a. make      b. get      c. do      d. give

16. We should care ..... our environment.

- a. to      b. around      c. out      d. about

## 2. Speaking

### مهارة التحدث

#### ► 1. A discussion about jobs in the house : مناقشة عن المهام في المنزل :

##### Questions



1. Do you have to do jobs at home?

١. هل أنت مضطر لأداء مهام في المنزل؟

2. What sort of jobs do you have to do at home ?

٢. ما نوع الأعمال التي يجب عليك القيام بها في المنزل ؟

##### Answers



Yes, I have to do some jobs at home.

- نعم، إنني مضطر لأداء بعض الوظائف في المنزل.

- I have to do the washing up, tidying up and looking after my little sister.

- يجب على غسل الأواني وترتيب الحجرات والاعتناء بأختي الصغيرة.

#### ► 2. Discussing random acts of kindness :

٢. مناقشة الأعمال الخيرية العشوائية (الغير مخطط لها) :

##### Questions



1. Do you think people should always do random acts of kindness ? Why ?

١. هل تعتقد أن الناس يجب عليهم أن يقوموا دومًا بأعمال الخير الغير مخطط لها ؟ لماذا ؟

2. What would you like to do on Random Acts of Kindness Day ?

٢. ماذا تود أن تفعل في يوم أعمال الخير (الغير مخطط لها) ؟

##### Answers



- Yes, I think so because we should all do acts of kindness to help each other.

- نعم، أعتقد ذلك لأنه ينبغي علينا أن نقوم جميعًا بأعمال الخير (الغير مخطط لها) لمساعدة بعضنا البعض.

- I'd like to give my seat in the bus to older people.

- أود أن أعطي مقعدي في الأتوبيس إلى كبار السن.

## III

## Language

**Necessity** التعبير عن الضرورة**have to / has to** يجب أن / من الضروري أن / لابد أن**Usage** الاستخدام

We use **(have to / has to)** to talk about things that other people say are necessary.  
 نستخدم **(have to / has to)** للحديث عن الأشياء التي يعتبرها الناس ضرورية [إلزام خارجي].

**Formation** التكوين

**1 Affirmative** الإثباتات

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع	+	have to	+	inf. المصدر
ex. - <b>SB</b> I <b>have to</b> walk to school.				
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+	has to	+	inf. المصدر
ex. - He <b>has to</b> buy the book. [تعبير عن الضرورة في المضارع]				

**2 Negative** النفي

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع	+	don't have to	+	inf. المصدر
ex. - <b>SB</b> My mother <b>doesn't have to</b> go to work today because it's a holiday. [تعبير عن عدم الضرورة في المضارع]				
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+	doesn't have to	+	inf. المصدر

**(A) Yes / No questions :** (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

**3 Interrogative** صيغة الاستفهام

Do +	I / you / we / they / اسم جمع	+	have to	+	inf. المصدر	..... ?
ex. - <b>Do</b> you <b>have to</b> finish your work tonight ? * <b>Yes</b> , I do.                      * <b>No</b> , I don't.						
Does +	he / she / it / اسم مفرد	+	have to	+	inf. المصدر	..... ?
ex. - <b>Does</b> Bassem <b>have to</b> travel to Hurgada ? * <b>Yes</b> , he does.                      * <b>No</b> , he doesn't.						

**(B) Wh - questions :****(ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :**

Question word + do / does + subject + have to .... ?  
 كلمة الاستفهام + does + subject + have to .... ?

ex. - When do you have to arrive at work ?

**Remember تذكر****Giving advice using "should & shouldn't"**

إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام (should & shouldn't) بمعنى ينبغي أن / لا ينبغي أن .

**Usage الاستخدام**

We use (should / shouldn't) to talk about things that are good ideas to do or not to do.  
 نستخدم (should / shouldn't) عندما نريد أن نتحدث عن أشياء جيدة أو غير جيدة للقيام بها.

**Formation التكوين****should**

• ينبغي أن «تستخدم للنصح بفعل شيء جيد أو مفيد»

Subject الفاعل + should + inf. المصدر

ex. - You should eat a lot of fruit and vegetables daily.

**shouldn't**

• لا ينبغي أن «تستخدم للنصح بعدم فعل شيء غير جيد أو غير مفيد»

Subject الفاعل + shouldn't + inf. المصدر

ex. - You shouldn't eat too many crisps and sweets.

**Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام****A. Yes / No question :**

أ. السؤال بـ (هل) :

Should + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر ?

ex. - Should we eat lots of fish ? \* Yes, you should. \* No, you shouldn't.

**B. Wh - question :**

ب. السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام :

Question word + should + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر ?  
 كلمة الاستفهام + should + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر ?

ex. - What should I eat ? - You should eat healthy food.



## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. **SB** At the weekends, I ..... get up early; I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock. *(Giza - Kerdasa 2024)*  
 a. don't have to    b. not have to    c. don't have    d. have not to
2. Mona ..... to wear a uniform at school. *(Qalyobia - El Qanater - 2023)*  
 a. have    b. has    c. must    d. should
3. What does she ..... to wear for the party ?  
*(Kafr-El-Sheikh - East Kafr-El-Sheikh 2024 )*  
 a. having    b. has    c. have    d. had
4. **WB** You ..... run if your legs hurt.  
 a. should    b. shouldn't    c. could    d. doesn't
5. **WB** You ..... start running short distances.  
 a. shouldn't    b. couldn't    c. should    d. have
6. Does your best friend ..... walk to school ? *(Cairo - El-Mokattam 2023)*  
 a. has to    b. haven't to    c. have to    d. hasn't to

#### El-Moasser Exercises

7. What game do you have ..... ?  
 a. practised    b. practising    c. to practise    d. practise
8. What should I ..... to come first ?  
 a. do    b. does    c. doing    d. did
9. Should I drink lots of water after a run ? – Yes, you .....  
 a. should    b. shouldn't    c. couldn't    d. had

### 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

#### SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. **SB** Do you have to ..... (drives) to work ? *(Sharkia - Hehia 2024)*
2. .... (Do) Ahmed have to get up early ? *(Minia - Beni Mazaar 2024)*
3. **WB** You ..... (not have) to sit when the boat stops.

#### El-Moasser Exercises

4. .... (You) have to look after your baby brother at the weekend ?
5. Does Nader ..... (has) to get up early ?
6. What ..... (you have) to do ?

<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p>Vocabulary</p> <p>اختر إقناك للمفردات اللغوية</p>	<p><b>Read and complete :</b></p> <p>1. A : Do you have to do at home ? B : Yes, I have to do some jobs at home.</p> <p>2. A : What sort of jobs do you have to do at home ? B : I have to do ..... and tidying up.</p> <p>3. A : How often do you have to ..... ? B : I always do that once every day.</p>	<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Speaking</p> <p>اختر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث</p>	<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p>Writing</p> <p>اختر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة</p>
<p><b>Random acts of kindness"</b></p> <p>1. A : What is the random acts of kindness ? B : It is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no .....</p> <p>2. A : Is it difficult to do random acts of kindness ? B : No. It's very .....</p> <p>3. A : Can you give me an example for random acts of kindness ? B : To give your seat to older people on a bus.</p>	<p><b>Complete the following dialogue :</b></p> <p>Rehab is asking Hend about jobs she does at home. <b>Rehab:</b> Hi, Hend. Do you have to do jobs at home? <b>Hend :</b> Hi, Rehab. (1) ..... <b>Rehab:</b> (2) ..... ? <b>Hend :</b> I have to do the washing up and tidying up. <b>Rehab:</b> Does it take a long time to do ? <b>Hend :</b> (3) ..... <b>Rehab:</b> (4) ..... ? <b>Hend :</b> I always tidy up once every day. <b>Rehab:</b> Does your sister help with you ? <b>Hend :</b> (5) .....</p>	<p>Rana and Reem are talking about random acts of kindness. <b>Rana :</b> Good evening Reem! What are you doing ? <b>Reem :</b> (1) ..... <b>Rana :</b> What's this book about ? <b>Reem :</b> (2) ..... <b>Rana :</b> (3) ..... ? <b>Reem :</b> It is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no reason. <b>Rana :</b> (4) ..... ? <b>Reem :</b> No. It's very easy. <b>Rana :</b> Can you give me an example for random acts of kindness ? <b>Reem :</b> (5) .....</p>	<p><b>"Jobs you do at home"</b></p> <p>Write a paragraph on : "Jobs you do at home" ..... ..... ..... ..... ..... ..... .....</p> <p>(Dakahlia – Aga 2023)</p>
	<p><b>"Random acts of kindness"</b></p> <p>..... ..... ..... ..... ..... ..... .....</p> <p>(Sohag - Tema 2024)</p>		

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 1 & 2

● Understand    ● Apply    ○ Create

### 1 Complete the following dialogue :

**Farah and Hala are at school.**

**Farah :** Do you have to study tonight, Hala ?

**Hala :** (1) ..... I have a geography test tomorrow.

**Farah :** What about your brother ? (2) ..... ?

**Hala :** No, he doesn't, but he has to tidy up his bedroom.

**Farah :** Where do we have to go for the next lesson ?

**Hala :** (3) .....

**Farah :** The laboratory ! (4) ..... ?

**Hala :** Yes, we have science the next session.

**Farah :** Are you good at science ?

**Hala :** (5) .....

(Fayoum - East Fayoum 2024)

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Mohamed likes doing random acts of kindness. They are kind things that we do for someone, for no reason. We can do **them** for the people we know. We can also be **kind** to strangers.

Mohamed usually helps his mother with the housework. He sometimes shares his breakfast with his friends. He gives his seat to old people on a bus. He likes doing that not because he has to, but because he wants to see a smile on a person's face. Now February 17<sup>th</sup> is Random Acts of Kindness Day. All over the world, people do kind things for the day.

(Sohag - Tahta 2024)

#### a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**kind**" means ".....".

- a. bad                      b. terrible                      c. cruel                      d. good

2. The Random Acts of Kindness Day is on .....

- a. April 17<sup>th</sup>    b. February 17<sup>th</sup>    c. May 17<sup>th</sup>    d. July 17<sup>th</sup>

3. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to .....

- a. Mohamed                      b. flowers  
c. random acts of kindness                      d. smiles

#### b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of this passage ?

.....

5. What act of kindness does Mohamed do for his mother ?

.....

6. What random acts of kindness do you usually do in your life ?

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. He can't walk at all. He needs a ..... . (Behira - Damanhour 2024)  
a. boat                      b. hat                      c. wheelchair      d. chair
2. Karim's cousin is ..... and never puts his books away.  
a. messy                      b. active                      c. serious              d. tidy  
(Behira - Abo Homos 2023)
3. **WB** This building is very tall, but we can go to the top in the ..... .  
a. stairs                      b. left                      c. lift                      d. attic
4. Mum made a cake. It tasted ..... . I liked it very much.  
a. terrible                      b. fantastic                      c. horrible              d. bad  
(Cairo - Heliopolis 2024)
5. **SB** ..... means something is happening without a plan.  
a. Random                      b. Full                      c. Friendly              d. Tidy
6. **WB** Please, can you ..... back the book you borrowed ?  
a. take                      b. give                      c. make                      d. spend
7. I usually ..... my baby brother when my parents are away.  
a. look after                      b. wash up                      c. tidy up                      d. look up
8. Does she have to ..... up early on Fridays ?  
a. got                      b. get                      c. gets                      d. getting
9. You ..... drink lots of water after you do sports.  
a. shouldn't                      b. does                      c. should                      d. mustn't
10. What does Ahmed ..... do to win the next match ?  
a. has to                      b. have to                      c. had to                      d. having to  
(Cairo - Zaytoun 2023)

**4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. I have to ..... (listening) carefully to my teachers.
2. He ..... (not has) to speak loudly.
3. Where ..... (you do) have to study your lessons ? (Fayoum - Itsa 2024)
4. Everyone ..... (shouldn't) do a random act of kindness.  
(Alexandria - El-Montazah 2024)

**5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on :**

محتاج عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**"Jobs to do at home"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

(Giza - Kerdasa 2023)



## I

## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

volunteer (ed) (v), (n)	متطوع / يتطوع	behave (d) (v)	يتصرف / يسلك
donate (d) (v)	يتبرع	beggar (n)	متسول
boarding school (n)	مدرسة داخلية	community (n)	مجتمع / جماعة
cruel (adj)	قاسى	disabled (adj)	عاجز / مُفَقَد
servant (n)	خادم / خادمة	owner (n)	مالك / صاحب



## Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

beggar - servant - boarding school - owner - cruel

1. The ..... works in someone's home.
2. The ..... asks people for food and money.
3. The new ..... of the hotel changed its name and design.
4. You shouldn't be ..... with young children.

## Lesson 3

SB pages 48 &amp; 49 WB page 104

maths exams (n)	اختبارات رياضيات	trainers (n)	حذاء رياضي
maths teacher (n)	معلم رياضيات	volleyball team (n)	فريق الكرة الطائرة
schoolbooks (n)	كتب مدرسية	identify (ied) (v)	يتعرف على
secondary school (n)	مدرسة ثانوية	local (adj)	محلي

## Lesson 4

SB page 50 WB page 105

princess (n)	أميرة	role (n)	دور
die (d) (v)	يموت	café (n)	مقهى - كافيتريا
headteacher (n)	مدير المدرسة	recommend (ed) (v)	يوصى / يزكى
generous (adj)	كريم / سخى	directions (n)	اتجاهات

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
meet يقابل	met	met
feed يطعم	fed	fed

## Study these definitions

## ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>cruel</b>	very unkind	قاسى
<b>boarding school</b>	a school where the students can live all the time (during the school year)	مدرسة داخلية
<b>behave</b>	act or do something in a certain way	يتصرف / يسلك
<b>beggar</b>	a poor person who lives by asking other people for money or food	متسول
<b>servant</b>	a person who works in another person's house, cooking, cleaning ..., etc.	خادم / خادمة
<b>community</b>	a small area and the people who live in it	مجتمع / جماعة
<b>disabled</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>when someone can't use a part of the body in the way most people can</li> <li>not able to use part of the body well, often after an injury or disease</li> </ul>	عاجز / مُقعّد
<b>donate</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>give something useful to a person or charity that needs help</li> <li>give money, food, clothes, etc. to help a person or an organisation</li> </ul>	يتبرع
<b>pick up</b>	collect something from a place	يلتقط / يجمع
<b>princess</b>	the daughter of a king or queen	أميرة

## Vocabulary Study

## Synonyms and Antonyms

## مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
delicious لذيذ	tasty	terrible - tasteless [الطعم] فظيع / سيئ
polite مؤدب	respectful	impolite / rude وقح / غير مؤدب
generous كريم - سخي	hospitable	mean بخيل

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes

## مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	أمثلة Examples
dis -	تعطى عكس الكلمة	disabled معاق
- ar	تعطى الاسم من الفعل	beggar متسول
- er	تعطى الاسم من الفعل	owner مالك



## Exercise

## on Vocabulary Study

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- We can get the noun from the verb "own" by adding the suffix ".....".  
a. - ion      b. - er      c. - or      d. - ness
- "Delicious" and "....." have the same meaning.  
a. tasty      b. volunteer      c. disabled      d. sick
- To change the word "abled" to its antonyms, we add the prefix ".....".  
a. un-      b. in-      c. dis-      d. im-
- "Rude" and "polite" are .....  
a. synonyms      b. antonyms      c. prefixes      d. suffixes
- The opposite of the word "generous" is ".....".  
a. hospitable      b. mean      c. polite      d. national



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### disabled - the disabled - unable

#### \* disabled

لديه إعاقة - عاجز

غير قادر على استخدام أحد أعضاء جسمه بطريقة جيدة بعد جراحة أو مرض أو حادثة

▶ That man can't use his hands well. He's **disabled**.

#### \* The disabled

متحدى الإعاقة (تعامل كاسم جمع)

▶ The **disabled** have a private gate to get into the cinema.

#### \* unable (adj)

غير قادر (غير قادر على عمل شيء ما)

▶ She can't speak English = She is **unable** to speak English. (SB page 49)

### Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
work as ...	يعمل في وظيفة ك...	pick up	يلتقط
left behind	ترك خلفه	take off	تقلع الطائرة
behave well	يسلك/ يتصرف بطريقة جيدة	take .... off	يخلع (ملابسه أو حذائه)
behave like a princess	تتصرف كما لو أنها أميرة	cruel to	قاس [تجاه / على ...]
get lost	يضل الطريق	polite to	مehذب [تجاه / مع ...]
pass the exam	يجتاز الامتحان	come out	يخرج / يظهر
ask for money	يطلب مال	come into	يدخل
ask for directions	يسأل عن الاتجاهات	act out	يمثل



## Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

### Lesson [3] SB page 48

1. Mr Othman is Amal's **neighbour** <sup>(1)</sup>.
2. He helped her pass her maths exams.
3. He was a maths teacher, but he doesn't work now.
4. Her aunt Dalia is a person who is kind to her.
5. She bought her **trainers** <sup>(2)</sup>.
6. Her little cousin Rana helped her last week.
7. She was sad because she lost her watch.
8. Amal's father gave her the watch for her birthday.
9. She lost the watch in the garden.
10. She took it off when she was playing and it fell.
11. Rana found it under the plant.

### Lesson [3] SB page 49

#### Samir

1. He works as a **volunteer** <sup>(3)</sup> for a **charity** <sup>(4)</sup>.
2. The charity helps to clean the **local** <sup>(5)</sup> beach.
3. At the weekend, they **pick up** <sup>(6)</sup> the rubbish.

#### Fatma

1. It is good to help people in the **community** <sup>(7)</sup>.
2. Fatma visits a home for old people.
3. These people are **disabled** <sup>(8)</sup>.
4. It is difficult for their families to look after them.
5. The woman who Fatma visits is Mrs Nahla.
6. She worked as a nurse when she was young.

\* Your helpful neighbours \* Working as a volunteer

#### Ahmed

1. Ahmed works for a charity which looks after animals.
2. It looks after old and sick animals.
3. People **donate** <sup>(9)</sup> money to buy food for animals.
4. They help to feed horses and camels.

### Lesson [4] SB page 50

#### "A little Princess" by Frances Hodgson.

1. Everyone at Sara Crewe's **boarding school** <sup>(10)</sup> calls her a little princess.
2. They call her a princess because her father is rich.
3. Sara's father dies and the **headteacher** <sup>(11)</sup> becomes **cruel** <sup>(12)</sup>.
4. The headteacher makes Sara work as a **servant** <sup>(13)</sup>.
5. Sara decides to **behave** <sup>(14)</sup> like a real princess.
6. She is always kind and polite to everyone.
7. One day, Sara finds a coin in the street.
8. She can't find the owner of the coin.
9. She goes to the baker's to buy some cakes.
10. She comes out and sees a **beggar** <sup>(15)</sup>.
11. She gives the beggar most of the cakes.
12. Sara thinks that a real princess should be kind.
13. She is poor, but she is kind to beggars.

محل	(5) جمعية خيرية	(4) فتوح	(3) حذاء رياضي	(2) جار	(1)
داخلية	(10) مدرسة	(9) يتبع	(8) ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة	(7) المذبح	(6) يتنقط
مفتول	(15) مقبرة/مسك	(14) خادمة	(13) قلاس	(12) مدرسة	(11)

#### تنبيه :

الجمال السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية أخرى:  
\* Voluntary work \* The story of A Little Princess

## 1. Reading and Listening



### Listening

- on Lesson 3 SB page 48

**Amal** : Our neighbour<sup>(1)</sup>, Mr Othman, is the person who helped me **pass my maths exams**<sup>(2)</sup>. He is 70 and doesn't work now, but he was **a maths teacher**<sup>(3)</sup> before. The books which he used to help me were his old **schoolbooks**<sup>(4)</sup> from when he was teaching at **secondary school**<sup>(5)</sup>.



Mr Othman



Aunt Dalia



Rana



My aunt Dalia is a person who is always very kind to me. She bought me the **trainers**<sup>(6)</sup> that I wore when I played in the school **volleyball team**<sup>(7)</sup> for the first time. We won the **match**<sup>(8)</sup>!

My little cousin Rana helped me last week when I lost my **watch**<sup>(9)</sup>. I was sad because it was the watch that my father gave me for my **birthday**<sup>(10)</sup>. The place where I lost it was the **garden**<sup>(11)</sup>. I **took it off**<sup>(12)</sup> when I was playing and it fell. Rana found it under the **plant**<sup>(13)</sup>. Because her hand is so small, she could put it under the plant and **reach**<sup>(14)</sup> the watch.

### Listening

#### skill

مهارة الاستماع

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

**Practise** Mr Othman helped Amal to pass her ..... exam.

- a. English   b. science   c. maths   d. Arabic

### Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الفهم  
ونصوص الاستماع



- (1) جار
- (2) أجتاز امتحانات الرياضيات الخاص بي
- (3) معلم رياضيات
- (4) كتب مدرسية
- (5) مدرسة ثانوية
- (6) حذاء رياضي
- (7) فريق الكرة الطائرة
- (8) مباراة
- (9) ساعة يد
- (10) عيد ميلاد
- (11) حديقة
- (12) يخلع ساعة اليد
- (13) نبات
- (14) يصل إلى



## Reading

- on Lesson 3 SB page 49

I work as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our local beach. **At the weekend**<sup>(1)</sup>, we go to the beach and **pick up**<sup>(2)</sup> the rubbish that people left behind. We always pick up lots of plastic bottles!

**Samir**



(1) في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع (2) يلتقط

It is good to help people in the community. I visit **a home for**<sup>(3)</sup> old people who are disabled so it's difficult for their families to **look after**<sup>(4)</sup> them. I go there after school on Thursdays. The volunteers have a special person who we visit and **talk to**<sup>(5)</sup>. The woman who I visit is called Mrs Nahla. She worked as a nurse when she was young and she is a fantastic person. I love talking to her.



### Fatma

I **work for**<sup>(6)</sup> a charity which looks after animals that are old or sick and cannot work any more. People **donate money**<sup>(7)</sup> to the charity to buy food for the animals such as horses and camels. We help to feed the animals and look after them. This camel is very old and she is my favourite animal.

### Ahmed

(3) موطن لـ

(4) يعتني بـ

(5) يتحدث إلى

(6) يعمل لصالح / لدى

(7) يتبرع بمال لـ

**Choose**  
the correct  
answer from  
a, b, c or d :

#### Extracting information

##### Learn

1. Mrs Nahla works as a ..... when she was young.

- a. nurse    b. teacher    c. servant    d. doctor

#### Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

##### Practise

2. The word "....." means wonderful.

- a. terrible    b. fantastic    c. grateful    d. dirty

#### استخراج المعلومات

## A Little<sup>(1)</sup> Princess<sup>(2)</sup>

by Frances Hodgson Burnett.

Everyone at Sara Crewe's **boarding school**<sup>(3)</sup> calls her "a little princess" because her father is very **rich**<sup>(4)</sup>. After Sara's father **dies**<sup>(5)</sup>, the **headteacher**<sup>(6)</sup>, Miss Minchin, starts being **cruel**<sup>(7)</sup> to Sara because she has no money. She makes Sara work as a **servant**<sup>(8)</sup>. Sara has to work very hard and does not get much food. However, Sara **decides to**<sup>(9)</sup> **behave**<sup>(10)</sup> like a real princess, so she is always kind and **polite**<sup>(11)</sup> to everyone.



(6) مدير المدرسة	(5) يموت	(4) غني	(3) مدرسة داخلية	(2) أميرة	(1) صغير السن
(11) مؤدب	(10) يسلك / يتصرف	(9) يقرر أن	(8) خادم	(7) قاس	

## UNIT FIVE

One day, Sara finds a coin in the street. She can't find the owner. She goes to the baker's to buy some cakes. When she comes out, she sees **a beggar**<sup>(12)</sup> and gives the girl most of her cakes. Sara can see that this girl is cold and hungry. Sara thinks that a real princess should always be kind and **generous**<sup>(13)</sup> like this. When the **baker**<sup>(14)</sup> sees this, she is surprised. "This girl is very **strange**<sup>(15)</sup>. She is very poor but she is kind to beggars," she thinks.

(12) متسول / شحات

(13) كريم / سخي

(14) خباز

(15) غريب

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

- Understanding reference

فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

**Learn** 1. What does the pronoun "her" in the first paragraph refer to ?  
- It refers to Sara.

- Giving the main idea

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

**Practise** 2. What is the main idea of the passage ?

### • on Lesson 4 WB page 105

I think that the girl who came into my baker's shop today was a servant, because she didn't have very new clothes. The money that she had was **enough**<sup>(1)</sup> to buy a few cakes. I often see a beggar in the street where I work. She usually asks for money, but when the young girl left my shop, she gave her most of her cakes! I was very **surprised**<sup>(2)</sup>. I feel that this servant girl behaved like a princess!



(1) كاف (2) مندهش



## Exercise on Vocabulary

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

### ► Key vocabulary

- Our company has ..... more than 20000 LE to the charities.  
a. behaved      b. contained      c. donated      d. lost
- All people should help the ..... . They need our help.  
a. able      b. strong      c. abled      d. disabled
- There are a lot of ..... in the streets asking people for money.  
a. beggars      b. volunteers      c. owners      d. servants

4. He works as a ..... for a charity.  
 a. customer      b. volunteer      c. headteacher      d. tourist
5. Always be friendly and don't be ..... to others.  
 a. cruel      b. helpful      c. careful      d. useful

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

6. My uncle ..... visiting new places in Cairo. *(Cairo - Nasr City 2024)*  
 a. advised      b. recommended      c. trained      d. owned
7. **SB** The ..... where I meet my friends sells delicious ice-cream.  
 a. café      b. temple      c. library      d. post office  
*(Cairo - Dar El-Salam 2023)*
8. **WB** The ..... is the daughter of a king or a queen.  
 a. prince      b. ruler      c. maid      d. princess

### El-Moasser Exercises

9. My parents advised me to ..... well at school.  
 a. go      b. take      c. behave      d. make
10. He is ..... He gives poor people more money than usual.  
 a. rude      b. impolite      c. dirty      d. generous
11. My father bought me new ..... to help me run and play football.  
 a. jacket      b. trainers      c. skirt      d. blouse

### ► Definitions

12. A ..... is a person who works in another person's house, cooking, cleaning ..., etc.  
 a. volunteer      b. beggar      c. trainer      d. servant
13. A / An ..... is a small area and the people who live in it.  
 a. volunteer      b. community      c. environment      d. temple
14. The ..... school is a school where children can live all the time.  
 a. high      b. abroad      c. boarding      d. private

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. When I ..... lost, I ask for directions.  
 a. come      b. look      c. get      d. have
16. We usually go to the beach and pick ..... the rubbish.  
 a. out      b. up      c. for      d. at

## 2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

### ► Talking about voluntary work :

الحديث عن العمل التطوعي :

#### Questions



1. What are some other ways we can help in the community ?

١. ما هي بعض الطرق الأخرى التي يمكننا من خلالها مساعدة المجتمع ؟

2. Which charitable work would you like to do ? Why ?

٢. ما العمل الخيري الذي تود القيام به ؟ ولماذا ؟

#### Answers



We can help to clean our local beaches, help the disabled whose families can't look after them.

يمكننا المساعدة في تنظيف شواطئنا المحلية ومساعدة ذوي الإعاقة الذين لا يمكن لعائلاتهم أن ترعاهم.

I like working as a volunteer for a charity which helps old people because those people really need help.

أحب العمل كمتطوع في مؤسسة خيرية تساعد كبار السن لأن هؤلاء الأشخاص يحتاجون المساعدة حقًا.

## 3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

### Working for a charity

العمل لدى مؤسسة خيرية

يمكنك التحدث عن العمل لدى مؤسسة خيرية باستخدام الجمل التالية :

1. I work as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean local beaches.

أنا أعمل كمتطوع في جمعية خيرية تساعد في تنظيف الشواطئ المحلية.

2. We go to the beach and pick up the rubbish that people left behind at the weekend.

نذهب إلى الشاطئ ونقوم بجمع القمامة التي تركها الناس خلفهم في العطلة الأسبوعية.

3. We pick up lots of plastic bottles.

نقوم بجمع الكثير من الزجاجات البلاستيكية.

**A week is enough**

مراجعة المنهج

والتمكن منه في اسبوع واحد فقط



### III Language

#### Remember تذكر

#### Relative clauses / pronouns جمل وضمائر الوصل

##### Formation التكوين

◀ جمل الوصل هي الجملة التي تحتوي على إحدى ضمائر الوصل (who / that / which / where) والتي تستخدم لتوضيح ما نتحدث عنه سواء كان [شخص، شيء أو مكان] :

who / that [الذي / التي / الذين]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>تستخدم هذه الضمائر بمعنى [الذي / التي] مع الأشخاص [العاقل] :</li> </ul> <p>Mr Zaki is the teacher <b>who / that</b> helped me the most when I started at this school.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>يأتي بعدها فعل عندما تحل محل الفاعل العاقل ويأتي بعدها جملة عندما تحل محل المفعول العاقل.</li> </ul>
which / that [الذي / التي / الذين]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>تستخدم هذه الضمائر بمعنى [الذي / التي] مع غير العاقل [الجماد والحيوان] :</li> <li>يأتي بعدها فعل عندما تحل محل الفاعل الغير عاقل ويأتي بعدها جملة عندما تحل محل المفعول الغير عاقل.</li> </ul> <p>The present <b>that / which</b> I bought for my grandmother is in my bag.</p>
where [حيث [للمكان]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>يستخدم ضمير الوصل (<b>where</b>) بمعنى [حيث] مع الأماكن :</li> <li>يسبقها مكان ويأتي بعدها جملة.</li> </ul> <p>Alexandria is the city <b>where</b> both my big sisters are studying.</p>
where = which + حرف جر = which + حرف جر	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>تستخدم (<b>where</b>) مع المكان ولا يأتي بعدها حرف جر، ولاحظ الآتي :</li> </ul> <p>I don't want to leave the house <b>where</b> I was born. I don't want to leave the house <b>in which</b> I was born. I don't want to leave the house <b>which</b> I was born <b>in</b>.</p>
<p>• <b>لاحظ :</b> تستخدم (<b>which</b>) فقط وليس (<b>where</b>) عند وصف المكان :</p> <p>This is the villa <b>which</b> we bought last month. (Not : <b>Where</b> we bought ...)</p>	



#### Exercises on Language

#### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. **SB** Mr Sabri is the teacher ..... taught my sister.  
a. which      b. when      c. who      d. where

## UNIT FIVE

2. **WB** This is the museum ..... the school visited last year.  
a. who                      b. which                      c. when                      d. where

(Giza - Al-Warrak 2023 - Damietta - Kafr Saad 2024)

3. **SB** I saw Ahmed in the park ..... we often play football.  
a. what                      b. which                      c. where                      d. who

4. This is the book ..... I bought yesterday. (Sharkia - Belbis 2024)  
a. when                      b. where                      c. who                      d. which

5. **WB** The person ..... is sitting next to me is called Tarek.  
a. whose                      b. who                      c. when                      d. which

### El-Moasser Exercises

6. She prefers to watch movies ..... make her happy.  
a. who                      b. where                      c. when                      d. which
7. Mr Ayman is the teacher ..... helps me a lot.  
a. where                      b. when                      c. that                      d. whose
8. This is the market ..... I work in.  
a. who                      b. when                      c. where                      d. which
9. The students ..... did their best were not the ones who played all the time.  
a. when                      b. who                      c. where                      d. what
10. The scientist ..... discovered the Femto Second was Dr Zewail.  
a. which                      b. where                      c. who                      d. when
11. This is the house in ..... I lived my childhood.  
a. where                      b. which                      c. who                      d. what

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. This is the present ..... (where) my friend gave me. (Minia - Samalut 2024)
2. **SB** My aunt Dalia is a person ..... (which) is always very kind to me.
3. **WB** This is the place ..... (which) I met John yesterday.
4. **SB** It was the watch ..... (this) my father gave me for my birthday.

### El-Moasser Exercises

5. Alexandria is the place ..... (that) we spend our summer holiday.
6. Al-Farouk School is the place ..... (which) I learn.
7. Is this the car ..... (who) you bought ?
8. Yasser likes the house ..... (who) he was born in.

# Speaking & Writing Corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة  
Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues  
قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

<b>Step 1</b> Vocabulary اختبر إقناك للمقررات اللغوية	<b>Step 2</b> Speaking اختبر مدى إقناك لمهارة التحدث	<b>Step 3</b> Writing اختبر مدى إقناك لمهارة الكتابة
<p><b>Read and complete :</b></p> <p>1. A : What should I do to do عمل تطوعي ؟ B : You should join a charity.</p> <p>2. A : How can I ..... a charity ? ينضم B : You can go there and ask them.</p> <p>3. A : Thank you very much. B : .....</p> <p>على الرحب والسعة</p>	<p><b>Complete the following dialogue :</b></p> <p>Sandy wants to join a charity and asks her friend Ahlam about her opinion.</p> <p><b>Sandy :</b> Hello Ahlam. I want to ask you for advice. Are you free ?</p> <p><b>Ahlam :</b> (1) ..... What do you want ?</p> <p><b>Sandy :</b> I want to do voluntary work.</p> <p><b>Ahlam :</b> You should join a charity.</p> <p><b>Sandy :</b> (3) ..... ?</p> <p><b>Ahlam :</b> You can go there and ask them to join the charity.</p> <p><b>Sandy :</b> Do you know any charity in our city ?</p> <p><b>Ahlam :</b> (4) ..... , and I can come with you.</p> <p><b>Sandy :</b> (5) .....</p> <p><b>Ahlam :</b> You're welcome. (Assuit - El- Badary 2023)</p>	<p><b>Write a paragraph on :</b></p> <p><b>"Working for a charity"</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>(Dakahlia - Miniut El Nasr 2022)</p>
<p><b>"A story you read"</b></p> <p>1. A : What is the ..... of عنوان the story ? B : "A Little Princess".</p> <p>2. A : What is the story about ? B : It is about a girl ..... تسمى / تدعى Sara.</p> <p>3. A : What do you ..... of Miss Minchin ? تعتقد B : I think she is cruel.</p>	<p><b>Ahmed and Malek are talking about a story called "A little princess".</b></p> <p><b>Ahmed :</b> What are you reading, Malek ?</p> <p><b>Malek :</b> (1) .....</p> <p><b>Ahmed :</b> What is the title of the story ?</p> <p><b>Malek :</b> (2) .....</p> <p><b>Ahmed :</b> (3) ..... ?</p> <p><b>Malek :</b> It is about a girl called Sara.</p> <p><b>Ahmed :</b> (4) ..... ?</p> <p><b>Malek :</b> Miss Minchin made Sara work as a servant.</p> <p><b>Ahmed :</b> What do you think of Miss Minchin ?</p> <p><b>Malek :</b> (5) .....</p>	<p><b>"A story you read"</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>(Giza - Abu El Nomros 2023)</p>

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3 & 4

○ Understand    ● Apply    ○ Create

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Mr Othman is our .....  
a. neighbour      b. teacher      c. farmer      d. engineer
2. Mr Othman helped me pass my ..... exams.  
a. geography      b. history      c. maths      d. English
3. Mr Othman was a teacher at a .....  
a. secondary school      b. nursery  
c. primary school      d. preparatory school
4. The books he used to help me were his old .....  
a. adventures      b. schoolbooks      c. stories      d. plays

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

A mother is buying a birthday present for her son.

**Seller** : Welcome. Can I help you ?

**Mother** : (1) .....

**Seller** : What about these jackets ?

**Mother** : (2) .....

**Seller** : (3) ..... ?

**Mother** : He is wearing a small size.

**Seller** : (4) ..... ?

**Mother** : I will take the green one.

**Seller** : It is 300 pounds.

**Mother** : (5) .....

(Alexandria - Al-Amriya 2023)

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** On the beach, we always ..... up lots of plastic bottles.  
a. do      b. take      c. make      d. pick
2. When I don't know a certain place, I can ask for .....  
a. beggars      b. directions      c. markets      d. trainers
3. **SB** Choose a ..... to play from the story characters.  
a. role      b. rule      c. bag      d. watch

4. We study hard to ..... our exams.  
a. get                      b. pass                      c. press                      d. leave
5. I saw a ..... in the street and helped him with some money.  
a. bigger                      b. beggar                      c. thief                      d. foreigner
6. .... people usually do bad things to others.  
a. Foreign                      b. Clever                      c. Cruel                      d. Kind
7. If you go to a ..... school, you will stay day and night there.  
a. boarding                      b. special                      c. abroad                      d. difficult  
*(Beheria - Damanhour 2023)*
8. **SB** I gave the shoes ..... are too small for me to my cousin.  
a. where                      b. who                      c. when                      d. which
9. Nancy is the person ..... is sitting next to me.  
a. who                      b. which                      c. where                      d. when
10. I visited the temple in ..... there are many statues.  
a. where                      b. which                      c. who                      d. what  
*(Cairo - Ain Shams 2024)*

#### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. He bought a bag ..... (who) is made of leather.  
*(Damietta - Kafr Saad 2024)*
2. Those are the boys ..... (when) broke the window.
3. Assuit is the city ..... (which) I live. *(Assuit - Qusya 2023)*
4. I don't like places in ..... (where) there are too many people.

#### 5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : محباب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**"Charity work you like most"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

*(Menofia - Sadat 2023)*



## I

## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

donation (n)	تبرع	passport (n)	جواز سفر
businesswoman (n)	سيدة أعمال	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
share (d) (v)	بشارك / يتقاسم	blog (n)	مدونة
opinion (n)	رأى	newspaper article (n)	مقال في جريدة



## Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

opinion - blog - passport - share - donations

1. Charities need ..... to help more people.
2. What's your ..... about my new car ?
3. The officer asked the tourist to see his ..... to help him.
4. We always ..... presents in festivals.

## Lesson 5

SB page 51 WB page 106

suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح	perhaps (adv)	ربما
suggestion (n)	اقتراح		

## Lesson 6

SB page 52 WB page 107

canteen (n)	كانتين [مقصف]	geography (n)	مادة الجغرافيا
cold drink (n)	مشروب مثلج	laboratory (n)	المعمل
street corner	ركن / ناصية الشارع	Rod al-Farag Axis Bridge	كوبري محور روض الفرج
surprising events	أحداث مذهشة		
pleased (adj)	مسرور	snow (ed) (v), (n)	تمطر جليد - جليد

**Numbers****الأرقام**

100,000 = one hundred thousand	مائة ألف
1,500 = one thousand, five hundred	ألف وخمسمائة
10,300 = ten thousand, three hundred	عشرة آلاف وثلاثمائة
1,000,000 = one million	مليون
1,600,000 = one million, six hundred thousand	مليون وستمائة ألف

**Conjugation of Irregular Verbs****تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة**

<b>Present</b> المضارع	<b>Past</b> الماضي	<b>P.P.</b> التصريف الثالث
give يعطي	gave	given
let يسمح	let	let

**Vocabulary Study****Synonyms and Antonyms****مترادفات ومتضادات**

<b>Word</b> الكلمة	<b>Synonym</b> المرادف	<b>Antonym</b> المضاد
usual عادي	ordinary / normal	unusual غير عادي
soft ناعم	smooth	hard صلب
possible ممكن	likely	impossible مستحيل
pleased مسرور	happy / glad	sad حزين
random عشوائي	unplanned	planned مخطط

**Prefixes & Suffixes****مقاطع بادئة ونهاية**

<b>Prefix / Suffix</b>	<b>Function</b> الوظيفة	<b>Examples</b> أمثلة
- tion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	suggestion اقتراح
- ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	pleased مسرور
- y	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	snowy جليدي
- ing	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	surprising مذهش

**Exercise****on Vocabulary Study**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "Smooth" and "....." are opposites.

a. soft

b. hard

c. happy

d. delicious

## UNIT FIVE

- The antonym of the word "possible" is ".....".  
a. perhaps      b. impolite      c. impossible      d. horrible
- The suffix "-tion" changes the word "suggest" into a/an .....  
a. verb      b. adjective      c. noun      d. preposition
- We can change the word "snow" into an adjective by adding the suffix ".....".  
a. -le      b. -y      c. -tion      d. -er
- "Happy" has the same meaning as .....  
a. smooth      b. pleased      c. rude      d. sad



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

1

لاحظ أن : الكلمات التالية لا تجمع إذا تبعها اسم وسبقت برقم

(hundred – thousand – million)

- **SB** - Fareeda has donated two **million** pounds to charities in the city.

(SB page 51)

2 **without + اسم / (inf. + ing)**

بدون

- - Life would be impossible **without** computers.  
- I can't leave **without** saying "Goodbye".

(WB page 108)

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
give away      يمنح - يهب	go back to      يعود إلى
give an opinion      يعطى رأى	work for      يعمل لصالح
make suggestions      يقدم اقتراحات	at first      في البداية
make a decision      يتخذ قرار	try to      يحاول أن
I made my family happy. لقد جعلت عائلتي سعيدة	on the street corner      على زاوية [ناصية] الشارع
I see what you mean.      افهم ماذا تقصد.	decide to      يقرر أن
In my opinion      فى رأى	on the way home from      فى طريق عودتى من
as possible      بقدر الإمكان/المستطاع	



## Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

### Lesson [5] SB page 51

#### Large charity donation

1. Fareeda Rashwan, aged, 32, is a **businesswoman**<sup>(1)</sup>.
2. She has donated two million pounds to charities.
3. She wants the charities to use the money to help people who need it.
4. The charities can decide to share the money between them.
5. They can give all the money to one charity.
6. The important thing is to help as many people as possible.

### Lesson [6] SB page 52

#### Hassan's blog<sup>(2)</sup>

1. Our class decided to try to do one **act of kindness**<sup>(3)</sup> every day for three days.
2. On Monday, Hassan bought his grandmother some cakes.
3. He bought them at the baker's on his way home.
4. She was surprised, but very happy.
5. On Tuesday, Hassan **let**<sup>(4)</sup> some younger students go into the canteen in front of him.
6. On Wednesday, he took a sandwich and a cold drink.
7. Hassan gave them to an old man.

\* Donation to charities

\* Working with charities

8. The old man often sits on their street corner<sup>(5)</sup>.
9. He gave him a big smile.
10. In his opinion, doing random acts of kindness is fantastic.

### Lesson [6] WB page 107

#### My helpful day

- On Saturday, Fady decided that he wanted to help everyone in his family.
- 1. First, Fady made his mother breakfast.
- 2. His mother was **surprised**<sup>(6)</sup> because she usually makes it!
- 3. Secondly, he helped his sister with her homework.
- 4. She always does it after breakfast!
- 5. After that, he took his grandfather a cup of tea in bed.
- 6. He likes to get up late on Saturday.
- 7. Then Fady played football in the park with his little brother. He loves football.
- 8. Finally, Fady helped his dad with the jobs that he likes to do in the house.
- 9. He feels that he made all his family happy!

أحد أعمال الخير (غير المخطط لها)	(3)	مدونة على الإنترنت	(2)	سيدة أعمال	(1)
فندقيش	(6)	ناصية (الشارع)	(5)	يسمح	(4)

#### تدوينه :

الجميل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

\* Helping (old people / disabled children)

## 1. Reading and Listening



### Listening

#### Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الفهم  
ونصوص الاستماع

#### on Lesson 5 WB page 106

1. two million
2. twelve thousand
3. one million, five hundred thousand
4. two million, ten thousand

#### on Lesson 5 SB page 51

**Amal** : I think that the charities should share the money between them and help lots of different people.

**Leila** : I'm not sure<sup>(1)</sup>, Amal.... I think it would be better<sup>(2)</sup> if one charity gets all the money and can do something big and important.

**Amal** : OK, but which charity then ?

**Leila** : What about<sup>(3)</sup> a charity that helps children ... or old people ?

**Amal** : I agree that it's very important to help children, but I also think it's important to look after old people. That's why I suggest that they share the money.

**Leila** : I see what you mean<sup>(4)</sup>. OK, they should share the money between two or three important charities.



(1) أنا غير متأكد (2) من الأفضل (3) ماذا عن / ما رأيك في ...؟ (4) فهمت ماذا تقصد



### Reading

#### on Lesson 5 SB page 51

#### Large charity donation<sup>(1)</sup>

Fareeda Rashwan, age 32, has donated two million<sup>(2)</sup> pounds to charities in the city. The businesswoman<sup>(3)</sup> says that she wants the charities to use the money to help people who need it. The charities can decide<sup>(4)</sup>



(1) تبرع (2) مليون (3) سيدة أعمال (4) يقرر

to share the money between them or give all the money to one charity. The important thing is to help as many people as possible.

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

Giving the main idea

Learn

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

- *Charity donations.*

Extracting information

Practise

2. How much money did Fareeda donate to charities in the city ?

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

استخراج معلومات

• on Lesson 5 WB page 106

**Malak** : I feel that famous people should work for a **charity**<sup>(1)</sup> at the weekend.

**Rawia** : I'm not sure. Some of them work very hard. I think it would be better if they gave some money to a charity. They don't need to **work for**<sup>(2)</sup> a charity.



**Malak** : I agree that it's important for them to **donate**<sup>(3)</sup> money, but I also think it's important to work for the charity, too.

**Rawia** : OK, but when ? They don't have much time. Some of them work every day.

**Malak** : I see what you mean. **Perhaps**<sup>(4)</sup> they can help for a day or two in their holidays.

**Rawia** : Good idea<sup>(5)</sup>.

(1) مؤسسة / جمعية خيرية (2) يعمل لصالح (3) يتبرع (4) ربما (5) فكرة جيدة

• on Lesson 6 SB page 52

## Hassan's Blog

### Random Acts of Kindness Project

• Our class decided to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days. This is what I did.

First, on Monday, I bought my grandmother some of her favourite cakes at the baker's on the way home from school. She was surprised, but very happy! After that, on Tuesday, I let some younger students go into the **canteen**<sup>(1)</sup> in front of me. Finally, on Wednesday, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to the old man who often



(1) مقصف المدرسة / كاتين

## UNIT FIVE

sits on our **street corner**<sup>(2)</sup>. He gave me a big smile. **In my opinion**<sup>(3)</sup>, doing random acts of kindness is fantastic. I don't want to stop!

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

### - Extracting information

استخراج المعلومات

#### Learn

1. What kind thing did Hassan do for somebody in his family ?  
- He bought his grandmother some of her favourite cakes on his way home.

#### Practise

2. What did he do for a stranger ?

(2) ركن / زاوية الشارع  
(3) في رأيي

### • on Lesson 6 WB page 107

## My helpful day

- On Saturday, I decided that I wanted to help everyone in my family.
- 1. First, I made my mother breakfast. She was surprised because she usually makes it!
- 2. Secondly, I helped my sister with her homework. She always does it after breakfast!
- 3. After that, I took my grandfather a cup of tea in bed. He likes to get up late on a Saturday.
- 4. Then I played football in the park with my little brother. He loves football.
- 5. Finally, I helped my dad with the jobs that he likes to do in the house. I feel that I made all my family happy!



### • on Lesson 7 SB page 53

- I share a bedroom with my sister and we are sometimes **quite messy**<sup>(1)</sup>, so we usually tidy up every evening before we go to bed. We put away all our clothes and books. **Twice**<sup>(2)</sup> a week, my brother and I take out the rubbish. We do it **together**<sup>(3)</sup> because the bins are quite heavy. My parents donate money to a charity which helps a local school for **disabled people**<sup>(4)</sup>. We think it is important to help people in the **community**<sup>(5)</sup>.



(1) فوضى إلى حد ما (2) مرتين (3) معًا (4) الأشخاص ذوي الإعاقة (5) مجتمع

• on Lesson 7 SB page 53

**Nasser** : Do you have to study this evening, Omar ?

**Omar** : Yes, I do. I have a **geography test**<sup>(1)</sup> tomorrow.

**Nasser** : What about your brother ? Does he have to study, too ?

**Omar** : No, he doesn't, but he has to tidy up his bedroom : it's really messy!

**Nasser** : It's **nearly**<sup>(2)</sup> the end of **break**<sup>(3)</sup>. Where do we have to go for the next lesson ?

**Omar** : The **laboratory**<sup>(4)</sup>! We've got **science**<sup>(5)</sup>.

اختبار مادة الجغرافيا (1) تقريرا (2) فسحة / راحة (3) معمل (4) مادة العلوم (5)



## Exercise on Vocabulary

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

### ► Key vocabulary

- You can't leave your country without having your .....  
a. suitcase      b. laptop      c. passport      d. schoolbag
- You can post anything about yourself on a ..... on the internet.  
a. block      b. blog      c. log      d. passport
- ..... to charities is a great act of kindness.  
a. Opinion      b. Donation      c. Presentation      d. Decision
- Facebook is one of the most popular ..... media websites.  
a. local      b. magnetic      c. social      d. mixed

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

- We study countries, mountains and rivers in .....  
a. history      b. science      c. geography      d. maths  
(Cairo - New Cairo 2024)
- Facebook and Tweeter are forms of .....  
a. social studies      b. canteens      c. social media      d. transport  
(Alexandria - East Alexandria 2024)
- In my opinion, ..... random acts of kindness is fantastic.  
a. taking      b. making      c. doing      d. having  
(Cairo - El-Nozha 2023)
- SB** Our class ..... to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days.  
a. decided      b. broke      c. gave      d. completed
- WB** I agree that it's important for famous people to ..... money.  
a. refuse      b. donate      c. suggest      d. disagree  
(Fayoum - Abshwy 2022)

## UNIT FIVE

### El-Moasser Exercises

10. We do experiments in science lesson in the .....  
a. hall                      b. playground                      c. laboratory                      d. classroom
  11. There was a big charity on our street .....  
a. canteen                      b. corner                      c. museum                      d. laboratory
  12. At school, we buy foods and drinks from the .....  
a. playground                      b. laboratory                      c. hall                      d. canteen
- **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**
13. I went ..... to my house at 7 o'clock.  
a. pack                      b. back                      c. pick                      d. peak
  14. He gave ..... all of his money to a charity before his death.  
a. in                      b. to                      c. away                      d. off
  15. Don't worry, I ..... what you mean.  
a. have                      b. see                      c. read                      d. spend
  16. My brother works ..... a big company.  
a. off                      b. of                      c. for                      d. about

## 2. Speaking

### مهارة التحدث

#### ► 1. Making suggestions :

١. تقديم الاقتراحات :

**A :** I think it would be better if one charity gets all the money.

- أعتقد أنه من الأفضل أن تحصل مؤسسة خيرية على كل الأموال.

**A :** What about a charity that helps children ?

- ماذا عن مؤسسة خيرية تقوم بمساعدة الأطفال ؟

**A :** Can you make a suggestion ?

- هل يمكنك أن تقدم اقتراح ؟

**A :** I see what you mean. OK, they should share the money between them.

- أفهم ماذا تقصد. حسنًا ينبغي عليهم مشاركة الأموال فيما بينهم.

**B :** I'm not sure. I think that charities should share the money between them.

- لست متأكدًا. أعتقد أن المؤسسات الخيرية لابد وأن تتقاسم الأموال فيما بينهم.

**B :** I agree that it's very important to help children, but I also think it's important to look after old people.

- أتفق معك على أنه من المهم جدًا مساعدة الأطفال، ولكن أعتقد أنه من المهم أيضًا الاعتناء بكبار السن.

**B :** I suggest that charities should share the money.

- اقترح أن تتقاسم المؤسسات الخيرية الأموال.

**B :** This is what we try to do.

- هذا ما نحاول القيام به.

٢. Expressions to give your opinion : عبارات تستخدم للتعبير عن رأيك :

• In my opinion , .....	في رأيي ....
• I feel that , .....	أشعر أن ....
• I agree that , .....	أنتفق أن ....
• I think that , .....	أعتقد أن ....

٣. Expressing understanding : التعبير عن فهم الفكرة :

- I see what you mean. - أفهم ما تقصد.

٤. Expressing probability : التعبير عن الاحتمالية :

- I'm not sure. - أنا غير متأكد.

٥. Expressions for sequencing events : تعبيرات تستخدم لترتيب الأحداث :

• First,	أولاً	• After that,	بعد ذلك
• Secondly,	ثانياً	• Then,	ثم
• Finally,	أخيراً		



**Pop Quiz** on Speaking

- Complete the following dialogue :

**Basem wants some advice from Ali.**

**Basem :** I'm getting too fat.

**Ali :** Yes, I think you got fat.

**Basem :** (1) ..... ?

**Ali :** Why don't you start running ?

**Basem :** (2) ..... . How can I start ?

**Ali :** (3) ..... .

**Basem :** Short distances ! (4) ..... ?

**Ali :** You can run for 15 minutes each day.

**Basem :** But what if my legs hurt ?

**Ali :** (5) ..... .

### 3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

#### ► Writing tips :

نصائح للكتابة

- Remember to use the exclamation mark (!) to show exciting, unusual or surprising events.

تذكر أن تستخدم علامات التعجب (!) لتوضح الأحداث غير العادية أو المثيرة للدهشة.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| • Remember to give reasons for your opinion.            | تذكر أن تبدي أسبابًا لرأيك.                    |
| • A blog is like an online diary.                       | المدونة تبدو مثل مفكرة يومية على الإنترنت.     |
| • Add a title to your blog (and a picture if you want). | اضف عنوان لمدونتك (وصورة لو تريد ذلك).         |
| • Use simple sentences.                                 | استخدم جمل بسيطة.                              |
| • Review for spelling, grammar and punctuation.         | راجع الإملاء والقواعد النحوية وعلامات الترقيم. |

- يمكنك الكتابة عن مشروع القيام بأعمال الخير (الغير مخطط لهما) باستخدام الجمل التالية :

#### Random acts of kindness project مشروع القيام بأعمال الخير (الغير مخطط لها)

1. Our class decided to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days.  
قرر فصلنا محاولة القيام بعمل خيري واحد كل يوم لمدة ثلاثة أيام.
2. First, on Monday, I bought my grandmother some of her favourite cakes.  
أولاً، يوم الاثنين، لقد اشترت لجدي بعض من الكيك المفضل لها.
3. She was surprised, but very happy!  
لقد كانت مندهشة ولكنها كانت سعيدة جدًا!
4. After that, on Tuesday, I let some younger students go into the canteen in front of me.  
بعد ذلك، يوم الثلاثاء، سمحت لبعض الطلبة صغار السن بالدخول أمامي إلى كانتين المدرسة.
5. Finally, on Wednesday, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to a poor, old man sitting on our street corner.  
أخيرًا، يوم الأربعاء، أخذت ساندوتش ومشروب بارد إلى رجل فقير كبير السن جالس على ناصية الشارع الخاص بنا.

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5 & 6

● Understand    ● Apply    ○ Create

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- What did you take to the old man ?  
a. A sandwich    b. A cold drink    c. A jacket    d. a & b
- When did you take these things to the old man ?  
a. Last Friday    b. Last Wednesday  
c. Last Monday    d. Last Sunday
- Where did the old man sit ? – On the .....  
a. road    b. ground    c. street corner    d. wheelchair
- What did the old man do ?  
a. He gave me a big smile.    b. He gave me foods.  
c. He gave me drinks.    d. He gave me foods and drinks.

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nora tells Dina about the film she had watched last night.

Dina : Where did you go last night ?

Nora : (1) .....

Dina : (2) ..... ?

Nora : The film started at 6 o'clock p.m.

Dina : (3) ..... ?

Nora : Yes, very much.

Dina : Who did you go with ?

Nora : (4) .....

Dina : When did you return home ?

Nora : (5) .....

(Menofia - Tala 2023)

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- SB** My parents ..... money to a charity which helps disabled people.

a. leave    b. teach    c. donate    d. lose

(Giza - Haram 2024)

- In my ....., that car is too expensive.

a. opinion    b. reason    c. decision    d. blog

- I'm very ..... to meet you. It's my first time to see you.

a. tired    b. pleased    c. cold    d. hot

- WB** A ..... is like an online diary.

a. passport    b. blog    c. block    d. log

5. .... he is at home. I'm not sure.  
a. Perhaps      b. Sure      c. Recently      d. After
6. She does many big projects. She is a ..... (Sharkia - Fakous 2023)  
a. pilot      b. businesswoman  
c. teacher      d. clerk
7. Give me some advice to ..... me happy.  
a. take      b. like      c. make      d. do
8. The person ..... helped me is my neighbour. (Cairo - Shrouk 2023)  
a. when      b. which      c. who      d. where
9. **SB** History is a subject ..... I find interesting but difficult.  
a. who      b. which      c. when      d. where
10. **WB** That is the house ..... my grandmother was born.  
a. that      b. who      c. which      d. where

**4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. This is the bakery ..... (that) my brother works in. (Sharkia - Ibrahimya 2024)
2. The man ..... (which) you spoke to is Mr Tarek.
3. **SB** We bought a flat ..... (where) is near our school. (Alexandria - East Alexandria 2022)
4. **WB** This is the charity ..... (when) my family donates money to.

**5 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words :**

معجب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Hany to tell him about random acts of kindness. Your name is Samy and your email address is samy@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is hany@gmail.com.

# 1 Reading Comprehension

## Guessing the meaning

تخبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة تخمين المعنى في النص.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

I share a bedroom with my sister and we are sometimes quite messy, so we usually tidy up every evening before we go to bed. We put away all our clothes and books. Twice a week, my brother and I take out the rubbish. We do it together because the bins are quite heavy.

• The underlined word "messy" means not .....

Q1 What is the opposite of the underlined word "messy"?

- a. lucky      b. kind  
c. famous      d. tidily

التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تخمين معنى مفردة في النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة يتم التركيز على الجملة التي بها الكلمة لكي تحدد المعنى المطلوب بدقة.

# 2

## Speaking

### Random acts of kindness

يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) قدرتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

Mazen and Emad are talking about random acts of kindness.

Mazen : Can you tell me about some random acts of kindness ?

Emad : Sure. (1) .....

Mazen : Do you mean for people you don't know ?

Emad : (2) .....

Mazen : (3) .....

Emad : Yes. I think we should all do this to each other.

Mazen : (4) .....

Emad : Because we should help each other.

Mazen : Can you give me an example of random acts of kindness ?

Emad : (5) .....

التحدي تريد (الحديث عن أعمال الخير المخطط لها) وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بينك وبين الشخص الآخر المتحدث.

# 3

## Correction notes

- الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

### Review

◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

have / don't have to → (مصدر الفعل. inf.)	يستخدم [مصدر الفعل] بعد [has to/have to]	للتعبير عن الضرورة وعدم الضرورة
has / doesn't have to → (مصدر الفعل. inf.)		
should / shouldn't → (مصدر الفعل. inf.)	يستخدم [مصدر الفعل] بعد [should/shouldn't]	للتعبير عن النصيحة
who / that → أشخاص	يحل ضمير الوصل [who/that]	محل شخص
which / that → أشياء	يحل ضمير الوصل [which/that]	محل شيء
where / (which + حرف جر) → أماكن	يحل ضمير الوصل [where]	محل مكان
	ويمكن أن يحل [which] ومعها حرف جر محل مكان	

### Learn

◀ تعلم

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 On holidays, we don't ..... [must] go to school.	have to	نستخدم have to بعد don't للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة
2 Do you have to ..... [going] to work?	go	نستخدم المصدر بعد have to
3 Cairo is the city ..... [who] my father works.	where	نستخدم [where] مع الأماكن
4 Dina is the teacher ..... [which] teaches us math.	who / that	نستخدم [who/that] مع الأشخاص

### Practice

◀ تدرب

◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة : Write the Reason :

1 She doesn't ..... [has] to get up early on Fridays.	have	.....
2 You shouldn't ..... [watched] too much TV.	watch	.....
3 That is the house ..... [who] I was born.	where	.....
4 This is the book ..... [who] my father gave to me.	which / that	.....

◀ Write the Correction :

◀ اكتب التصحيح

1 Do you have to..... [studies] this evening?	.....	نستخدم [المصدر] بعد [have to]
2 What should we ..... [did] in the morning?	.....	نستخدم [المصدر] بعد [should]
3 ..... [Do] he have to work today?	.....	نستخدم [Does] مع [he]



# Review

## on unit 5

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

### مراجعة عامة على Unit 5 في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
tidying up - ترتيب washing up - غسل اللواني taking out the rubbish - إخراج القمامة putting away clothes - وضع ملابس في مكانها المعتاد messy - فوضوي / غير مرتب random - عشوائي smile - ابتسامة donate - تبرع donation - تبرع boarding school - مدرسة داخلية cruel - قاسي servant - خادم behave - يتصرف / يسلك community - مجتمع / جماعة disabled - عاجز - فقعد businesswoman - سيدة أعمال share - يشارك - يتقاسم social media - وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي kindness - طيبة	1. Relative clauses ( who - which - that - where ) جملته + who / الذي / التي / الذين / اللذان / اللتان + جملته which / الذي / التي / الذين / اللذان / اللتان + جملته where / حيث "المكان" + جملته subject + where + verb + object + where + verb + object This is the man who lives next door to Amgad. I need the tool which is next to the knife. This is the place where Amgad usually works. 2. To say something is necessary Subject + have to / has to + inf. المصدر People have to get their passports before travelling. 3. To say something is not necessary Subject + doesn't have to / don't have to + inf. المصدر Today is Friday. I don't have to get up early.	1. A discussion about jobs in the house : مناقشة عن مهام في المنزل 1. Do you have to do jobs at home ? Yes, I have to do some jobs at home. 2. What sort of jobs do you have to do at home ? I have to do the washing up and tidying up. 2. Discussing random acts of kindness : مناقشة الأعمال الخيرية العشوائية A : Do you think people should always do random acts of kindness ? Why ? B : Yes, I think so because we should all do acts of kindness to help each other.

## Questions collected from previous exams

تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The synonym of "smooth" is ".....".  
(Gharbia - Samanod 2024)  
a. hard    b. delicious    c. soft    d. happy
- I have a big problem. Could you ..... me your opinion?  
(Menofia - Tala 2024)  
a. make    b. do    c. take    d. give
- The person who owns and runs a shop is called a/an .....  
(Sharkia - Hehia 2023)  
a. shopkeeper    b. baker    c. engineer    d. vet
- "Rude" has the same meaning as .....  
a. polite    b. impolite    c. hungry    d. full  
(Behira - Damanhour - 2023)
- The daughter of the king or the queen is called .....  
(Fayoum - Senoris 2022)  
a. prince    b. princess    c. visitor    d. disabled
- We meet our friends at the ..... and have delicious drinks.  
(Beni Suef - Nasir 2022)  
a. bakery    b. café    c. temple    d. stadium
- Which T-shirt do you ..... me to buy?  
a. invite    b. decide    c. recommend    d. beg  
(Qena - Farshout 2023)
- The school is the place ..... we learn.  
(Minia - Samalut 2024)  
a. which    b. where    c. who    d. when
- You shouldn't ..... up late.  
(Cairo - 2023)  
a. stayed    b. stays    c. stay    d. staying

- This is the book ..... I bought yesterday.  
a. who    b. which    c. where    d. when  
(Sharkia - Abo Kabir 2022)

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- This is the bakery ..... (which) we buy bread.  
(Cairo - Ain Shams 2024)
- They ..... (has to) revise before the exam.  
(Assuit - Mansout 2023)
- Science is the subject ..... (when) I enjoy a lot.  
(Assuit - El Qusiya 2023)
- What ..... (do) she have to do before travelling?  
(Sharkia - Mashout 2023)
- My mother doesn't ..... (has) to go to work today.  
(Cairo - Zaytoon 2022)
- Should we ..... (eating) a lot of sweets?  
(Sharkia - Fakous 2024)
- What ..... (you have) to do?  
(Sharkia - Kafir Sakr 2022)
- The man ..... (which) works in the supermarket is my uncle.  
(Menia - Moghagha 2023)
- Pupils ..... (has to) wear their school uniform.  
(Alexandria 2022)
- We bought a flat ..... (where) is near the train station.  
(Cairo - El Nozha 2022)

### A. Listening

قم بحل اختبار تراكمي في الملحق



#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- Fareeda Rashwan is ..... years old.  
a. 32                      b. 33                      c. 23                      d. 22
- Fareeda Rashwan is a / an .....  
a. engineer                      b. businesswoman  
c. pilot                      d. doctor
- Fareeda donated two ..... pounds to charities in her city.  
a. thousand                      b. hundred                      c. million                      d. billion
- She wanted the charities to use the money to help ..... who need it.  
a. people                      b. animals                      c. schools                      d. plants

### B. Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ziad asks Marwan about his jobs at home.

Ziad : Do you help your family at home ?

Marwan : (1) ..... I wash up.

Ziad : When do you do that ?

Marwan : (2) .....

Ziad : Do you tidy your room ?

Marwan : (3) .....

Ziad : You're very helpful. (4) ..... ?

Marwan : I also look after my little sister and play with her.

Ziad : (5) ..... ?

Marwan : I go to bed at 10:00 p.m.

(Beni Suef - Nasser 2024)

### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Samir works as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our local beach. At the weekend, they go to the beach and **pick up** the rubbish that people left behind. They always pick up lots of plastic bottles!

Fatma visits a home for old people who are disabled so it's difficult for their families to look after them. She goes there after school on Thursdays. The volunteers have a special person who they visit and talk to. The woman who they visit is called Mrs Nahla. She worked as a nurse when she was young and she is a fantastic person. Fatma loves talking to her.

Ahmed works for a charity which looks after animals that are old or sick and cannot work anymore. People donate money to the charity to buy food for the animals such as horses and camels. They help to feed the animals and look after them. This camel is Ahmed's favourite animal.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- The underlined pronoun "her" refers to .....  
 a. Fatma      b. Aya      c. Mrs Nahla      d. Sara
- It isn't nice to ..... on the beach.  
 a. collect rubbish      b. help to clean  
 c. leave rubbish      d. pick up plastic bottles
- The underlined word "pick up" means to ..... something from a place.  
 a. leave      b. collect      c. donate      d. lend

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.

.....

5. What's your opinion about charities ?

.....

6. Why do people donate money to the charity which Ahmed works for ?

.....

## D. Vocabulary & Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- 1. **SB** Although Sara is poor, she ..... like a real princess.  
 a. behaves      b. decides      c. makes      d. lies  
 (Cairo - Heliopolis 2024)
- 2. Ahmed works as a ..... for a charity that helps to clean the local beach.  
 a. model      b. patient      c. volunteer      d. figure  
 (Menofia - Ashmoun 2023)

3. The ..... between Alexandria and Port Said isn't short.  
a. date                      b. length                      c. distance                      d. place
4. **WB** My clothes are clean and dry, so I ..... them all away.  
a. tidy                      b. wash                      c. put                      d. take
5. **SB** A ..... act of kindness is what you do for someone for no reason. *(Dakahlia - Mansoura 2024)*  
a. messy                      b. random                      c. lucky                      d. surprised
6. **WB** This book is ..... You should read it.  
a. strange                      b. fantastic                      c. terrible                      d. horrible
7. Try to ..... the birds and animals regularly. *(Cairo - El-Nozha 2023)*  
a. send                      b. feed                      c. sell                      d. buy
8. That's the city ..... I was born in.  
a. when                      b. why                      c. where                      d. which
9. You ..... buy a ball. I will give you mine.  
a. must                      b. don't have to  
c. should                      d. mustn't
10. This is the doctor ..... saved my wife's life. *(Assuit - El Badary 2024)*  
a. where                      b. which                      c. when                      d. that

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. **SB** I work for a charity ..... (where) looks after animals. *(Dakahlia - Meet Ghamr 2024)*
2. **WB** At home, I ..... (have) do my homework.
3. When you get on the bus, you have to ..... (buying) a ticket.
4. She ..... (not have) get up early on holidays. *(Beni Suef - El Wasta 2024)*

## 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

### "Helping others"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

*(Assuit - El Badary 2023)*

# 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Fareeda Rashwan has ..... two million pounds to charities in her city.  
a. donated b. spent c. lost d. decided
2. Fareeda is a/an .....  
a. doctor b. nurse c. businesswoman d. engineer

# 2. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Soha and Noha are talking about their friend Huda.**

**Noha :** Our friend Huda hasn't come to school since last week.

**Soha :** What a pity! (1) .....

**Noha :** She had an accident last week.

**Soha :** (2) ..... ?

**Noha :** No, she is at home now.

**Soha :** Can I come with you to visit her ?

**Noha :** (3) .....

**Soha :** When will we visit her ?

**Noha :** We will visit her tomorrow .Where shall we meet ?

**Soha :** In front of the shopping mall.

# 3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The machine that carries people up and down is called a/an .....  
a. oven b. kettle c. fridge d. lift
2. This is the house ..... was built in 2017 .  
a. where b. which c. who d. whose
3. The ..... stole the money and was taken to prison.  
a. winner b. thief c. cleaner d. baker
4. What should I ..... to come first ?  
a. doing b. do c. did d. does
5. This man doesn't know the area. He must be a/an .....  
a. kind b. owner c. stranger d. baker

# 4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

An engineer worked hard for a building company. When the engineer got older, he decided to stop working. He wanted to relax.

The owner of the company asked **him** to do one last job; it was to build a beautiful house. The engineer agreed but he wasn't interested in doing his work well. He didn't use good building materials. He didn't think about the safety of the people who would live in that house. The house appears beautiful but it wasn't well-built. On his last day, the owner gave him the key as a reward "This new beautiful house is yours".

# a. Answer the following questions :

1. What did the engineer decide to do when he got older ? .....
2. Why did the owner want him to build a house ? .....
3. Was the engineer interested in building the house ? .....

# b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "**him**" refers to .....  
a. the owner b. the key c. the engineer d. the house
5. The engineer was ..... when he built the house.  
a. brave b. awesome c. careless d. careful

# 5. Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

1. works - a chairty - as - Omar - a volunteer - for.  
.....
2. everyone - to - Sama - polite - and - kind - is - always.  
.....
3. happens - kindness - What - Random - on - Acts - of - day ?  
.....
4. pounds - to - a charity - million - donated - Our - company - two.  
.....

# 6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about :

"Jobs at home"

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

**Mena's mother had an accident and broke her leg.**

**Mena:** My mother didn't go to work yesterday.

- Aya :** (1) .....  
 a. Why are you happy ?  
 b. Why didn't she go to work ?  
 c. When did she start working ?  
 d. What does she do ?

**Mena:** Because she had an accident.

- Aya :** (2) .....  
 a. What happened ?  
 b. Are you okay ?  
 c. When did that happen ?  
 d. Did you see her ?

**Mena:** She fell down and broke her leg.

- Aya :** (3) .....  
 a. I am busy.  
 b. They went to the hospital.  
 c. Don't worry. She'll be okay.  
 d. You have a problem.

**Mena:** Thanks, Aya. You are so kind.

**Aya :** (4) ..... What does the doctor say ?

- a. She is sorry      b. Thank you  
 c. I am not free today      d. You're healthy

**Mena:** The doctor says she will be better.

- Aya :** (5) .....  
 a. That's great news.  
 b. I don't mind.  
 c. It sounds unhealthy.  
 d. That looks terrible.

- Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

6. She ..... (**have**) to wear the uniform at school.

- a. had to      b. having      c. to have      d. has

7. The new book ..... (**who**) I bought is very interesting.

- a. when      b. who      c. which      d. where

8. The tourists ..... (**which**) visit Egypt always love the ancient temples.

- a. who      b. when      c. where      d. why

9. You ..... (**shouldn't**) study hard.

- a. should to      b. should  
 c. to should      d. shouldn't to



# UNIT SIX

## Different environments

SB pages 54 : 63

WB pages 109:115

### Unit Objectives :

- **Reading :**  
A presentation about climate change graphs; city profiles; a newspaper report
- **Writing :**  
A profile about where you live ; a paragraph on how to use less water ; a short report for a school newspaper; a presentation about the climate
- **Listening :**  
Radio news reports; a podcast about tourism
- **Speaking :**  
Solving environmental problems;  
Suggesting solutions to a problem
- **Language :**  
[not] as + adjective + as; Present simple passive
- **Life Skills :**  
Negotiating; Problem - solving
- **Values :**  
Coexistence values
- **Issues :**  
Environmental and developmental issues



## I

## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

air pollution (n)	تلوث الهواء	climate change (n)	تغير المناخ
drought (n)	جفاف	polluted (adj)	ملوث
flood (ed) (v), (n)	يفيض / يغمر بالماء / فيضان	changing (adj)	متغير / متقلب
rubbish (n)	قمامة / مخلفات	presentation (n)	عرض / تقديم
water pollution (n)	تلوث الماء	line graph (n)	خط بياني
green (adj)	متعلق بالمحافظة على البيئة / ملائم للبيئة	bar chart (n)	رسم أو مخطط بياني
environment (n)	البيئة	melt (ed) (v)	يذوب / ينصهر



## Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

environment - polluted - chart - green - Climate change

- The canal is more ..... than the river.
- ..... affects the environment and causes some problems.
- It was interesting to be in a different .....
- Bikes are a ..... form of transport.

## Lesson 1

SB pages 54 &amp; 55 WB page 109

recently (adv)	حديثاً / مؤخرًا	radio news programme (n)	برنامج إخباري إذاعي
warn (ed) (v)	يحذر	attractive (adj)	جذاب
electric (adj)	كهربى	comfortable (adj)	مريح
user (n)	مستخدم	fuel (n)	وقود
relaxing (adj)	يدعو للاسترخاء / مريح للأعصاب	transport (n)	النقل / المواصلات
form (n)	نوع - شكل / نمط		

## Lesson 2

SB pages 56 &amp; 57 WB page 110

x-axis (n)	المحور السيني	cause (d) (v), (n)	سبب - سبب
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	electricity (n)	كهرباء
y-axis (n)	المحور الصادي	conclusion (n)	خلاصة / استنتاج

## UNIT SIX

rainfall (n)	سقوط الأمطار	present (ed) (v)	يعرض / يقدم
fires (n)	حرائق	serious (adj)	خطير / جاد
countryside (n)	الريف	average (n)	معدل / متوسط
graph (n)	رسم بياني	yearly (adj)	سنوي
<b>Continents, countries and cities</b> قارات، دول ومدن			
Australia	قارة / دولة أستراليا	Saudi Arabia	المملكة العربية السعودية
Iraq	دولة العراق	Jordan	دولة الأردن
Africa	قارة أفريقيا	Europe	قارة أوروبا
<b>Famous places and rivers</b> أماكن وأنهار مشهورة			
Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كلمنجارو	Mount Catherine	جبل سانت كاترين
Mount Kenya	جبل كينيا	Jabal Mousa	جبل موسى

### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
think يفكر / يعتقد	thought	thought
show يبين / يوضح	showed	shown

### Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>air pollution</b>	dirt and dangerous chemicals in the air, often from traffic تلوث الهواء
<b>axis (x and y)</b>	the lines that have numbers / information on it on a graph (x at the bottom and y at the side) محور
<b>bar chart</b>	a diagram or picture that uses bars (rectangles) of different colours and sizes to show different amounts مخطط بياني
<b>climate change</b>	changes in the Earth's weather caused by things that humans are doing تغير المناخ
<b>drought</b>	when there is no rain for a long time and everything is very dry الجفاف
<b>flood</b>	a large amount of water that covers an area that was dry before فيضان
<b>green</b>	• connected to protecting the environment • good for the environment متعلق بالمحافظة على البيئة
<b>line graph</b>	a diagram or picture that uses lines to show how different pieces of information are related to each other خط بياني
<b>melt</b>	change from ice to water يذوب
<b>polluted</b>	made dirty or dangerous by chemicals or other dirty things ملوث
<b>serious</b>	bad or dangerous enough to make you worried خطير

## Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms		مترادفات ومتضادات	
Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
usual	عادي	unusual	غير معتاد
dry	جاف	wet	مبتل
polluted	ملوث	clean - unpolluted	نظيف - غير ملوث
flood	فيضان	drought	جفاف
noisy	صاخب	quiet	هادئ

Prefixes & Suffixes		مقاطع بادئة ونهاية	
Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
- ous	تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	dangerous	خطير
- ion	تكوّن الاسم من الفعل	pollution	تلوث
- ive	تكوّن الصفة من الفعل	attractive	جذاب
- ed	تكوّن الصفة من الفعل	polluted	ملوث
- able	تكوّن الصفة من الاسم أو الفعل	comfortable	مريح
- ing	تكوّن الصفة من الفعل	relaxing	مسترخ - مريح

## Important Expressions &amp; Prepositions

## تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
dangerous place to live مكان خطير لا يمكن العيش فيه	on a radio news programme في برنامج أخباري في الإذاعة
make ... clean يجعل ... نظيفاً	report for يكتب تقرير لـ
take home يأخذ للمنزل	careful with حذر بشأن
make a comparison يقارن	on top of على قمة
make a conclusion يستنتج	present ... to يعرض ... لـ
form of transport وسيلة مواصلات	go with تتماشى مع / يتوافق



## Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

290

### Lesson (1) SB page 55

#### ► Two reports on a radio news programme for students.

##### Report (1)

1. Jomana is **reporting for**<sup>(1)</sup> Student Radio in Cairo.
2. Volunteers are working to clean the river.
3. The **volunteers**<sup>(2)</sup> are finding more rubbish in the water.
4. They say the canal is dirtier and more **polluted**<sup>(3)</sup> than ever before.
5. They want the people who live in the city to help.

##### Report (2)

1. Karim is reporting from Alexandria for student FM.
2. Alexandria started using new **electric**<sup>(4)</sup> buses.
3. The buses will help Alexandria be cleaner and **greener**<sup>(5)</sup>.
4. People hope there will be less air **pollution**<sup>(6)</sup> in the city.
5. The electric buses are cheaper to run.
6. Some bus users liked the new buses.
7. They were quieter than the old buses.
8. They also said that the seats were more comfortable.

\* Climate change

\* Report of news programme

\* Helping the environment

\* The problem of pollution

### Lesson (2) SB page 56

#### A changing world

1. Today's **presentation**<sup>(7)</sup> is about climate change.
2. Our **planet**<sup>(8)</sup> is changing.
3. The climate in Australia is becoming hotter and drier.
4. More **droughts**<sup>(9)</sup> mean worse fires than ever before.
5. **Climate change**<sup>(10)</sup> means Australia is a more dangerous place to live.
6. Warmer and drier weather is **melting**<sup>(11)</sup> the ice on top of Mount Kilimanjaro.
7. The area of ice is smaller than 140 years ago.
8. Mount Kilimanjaro is the highest mountain in Africa.
9. The good news is that the ice is not melting as fast as before.
10. The ice is **continuing**<sup>(12)</sup> to get smaller.

كهربى (4)	ملوث (3)	المتوقعين (2)	يكتب تقرير لـ (1)
الكوكب (8)	عرض / تقديم (7)	التلوث (6)	أكثر ملاءمة للبيئة (5)
يستمر (12)	يذهب / يحضر (11)	تغير المناخ (10)	البحاف (9)

تتويحه :

الجمال السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

\* A new event

## II

## Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening

## Listening

• on Lesson 1 SB page 55

**Girl :** Hello, this is Jomana reporting for <sup>(1)</sup> Student Radio in Cairo. Recently, volunteers who were working to clean the River Nile say they are finding more a canal rubbish in the water. They say the canal is dirtier and more polluted than ever before.

They are warning people who live in the city to be more **careful about** <sup>(2)</sup> where they put their rubbish to try to help the river become cleaner.



(1) يكتب تقرير لـ

(2) حذر بشأن

**Boy :** This is Karim reporting from Alexandria for Student FM.

Today our city started using new electric buses. The buses will help Alexandria be cleaner and greener. The buses will mean there is less air pollution in the city, so they are greener and they are also cheaper to run. I spoke to some bus users who said that the new buses were quieter than the old buses and also the seats were more comfortable.

## Listening

Skill  
مهارة الاستماع

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

**Practise** The volunteers are finding more ..... than before.

a. water

b. rubbish

c. food

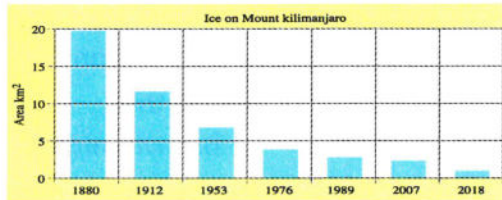
d. ice

## Reading

• on Lesson 2 SB page 56

A changing world <sup>(1)</sup>

Today's **presentation** <sup>(2)</sup> is about **climate change** <sup>(3)</sup>. This means our **planet** <sup>(4)</sup> is **changing** <sup>(5)</sup>. Here are two places that are different now.



(1) عالم متغير (2) عرض / تقديم (3) تغير المناخ (4) كوكب (5) يتغير

## UNIT SIX

### Australia

In this **line graph**<sup>(6)</sup>, the **x-axis**<sup>(7)</sup> shows the year and the **y-axis**<sup>(8)</sup> shows the change in **temperature**<sup>(9)</sup>. You can see that the climate in Australia is becoming **hotter**<sup>(10)</sup> and **drier**<sup>(11)</sup>. More **droughts**<sup>(12)</sup> mean worse **fires**<sup>(13)</sup> than ever before. Climate change means Australia is a more dangerous place to live.

### Mount Kilimanjaro<sup>(14)</sup>

This **bar chart**<sup>(15)</sup> shows that **warmer**<sup>(16)</sup> and drier weather is **melting**<sup>(17)</sup> the ice on top of Africa's highest mountain, Mount Kilimanjaro. You can see that the **area**<sup>(18)</sup> of ice is much smaller than 140 years ago. The good news is that the ice is not melting as fast as before. However, the ice is continuing to get smaller.

### Answer

the following questions :

#### Giving the main idea

##### Learn

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.  
- A changing world.

#### Extracting information

##### Practise

2. There is less ..... around Mount Kilimanjaro than before.  
a. flood      b. drought      c. rain      d. ice

#### إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

#### استخراج المعلومات

(6) خط بياني

(7) المحور السيني

(8) المحور الصادي

(9) درجة الحرارة

(10) أكثر سخونة

(11) أكثر جفافاً

(12) جفاف

(13) حرائق

(14) جبل كليمنجارو

(15) رسم أو مخطط بياني

(16) أكثر دفئاً

(17) يذوب / ينصهر

(18) منطقة / مساحة



## Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

### Key vocabulary

1. Some places suffer from ..... because of little rain.  
a. floods      b. drought      c. rubbish      d. pollution
2. The High Dam protects Egypt from .....  
a. sunset      b. pollution      c. flood      d. relaxing
3. We should all protect the ..... That's the place in which we live.  
a. school      b. environment      c. climate      d. presentation
4. Not many fish live in the river because it is very .....  
a. comfortable      b. green      c. polluted      d. clear

5. We made a ..... about climate change.  
 a. country      b. mountain      c. presentation      d. class

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

6. .... ice on tops of mountains is the result of climate change.  
 a. Melting      b. Sinking      c. Flying      d. Swimming  
*(Menia – Beni Mazar 2024)*
7. **SB** Drier weather ..... bad fires in Australia. *(Menofia – Menouf 2024)*  
 a. changes      b. shows      c. causes      d. gives
8. **WB** Green means connected to ..... the environment.  
 a. protecting      b. damaging      c. giving      d. recycling
9. Countries will use ..... energy from the sun and the wind in the future.  
*(Fayoum - Etsa 2022)*  
 a. yellow      b. white      c. green      d. red

### El-Moasser Exercises

10. This diagram ..... how we can plant a tree .  
 a. gives      b. shows      c. makes      d. learns
11. “.....” is the opposite of “flood”.  
 a. Rain      b. Drought      c. Sunset      d. Sunrise
12. The ..... shows how car prices have risen since the 1980s.  
 a. temperature      b. graph      c. conclusion      d. fuel

### ► Definitions

13. A large amount of water that covers an area that was dry before is called .....  
 a. conclusion      b. pollution      c. flood      d. drought
14. .... means change from ice to water.  
 a. Flood      b. Melt      c. Axis      d. Fix

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. .... top of mountains, there is a lot of ice.  
 a. In      b. From      c. On      d. Into
16. I ..... a comparison between the life in the city and the countryside.  
 a. did      b. made      c. gave      d. thought

## 2. Speaking

### مهارة التحدث

#### ► Talking about climate change

#### الحديث عن تغير المناخ

Questions	Answers
1. What is climate change ? ١. ما هو التغير المناخي ؟	- It's the changes in the Earth's weather caused by things that humans are doing. التغيرات في مناخ الأرض بسبب الأشياء التي يقوم بها البشر.
2. Is climate change as serious as pollution ? ٢. هل تغير المناخ يمثل خطورة مثل التلوث ؟	- Yes, of course. It's a real problem. نعم، بالطبع. إنها مشكلة حقيقية.
3. Should we be worried about climate change ? ٣. هل يجب علينا القلق حيال التغير المناخي ؟	- Yes, we should. It's a very serious problem. نعم. يجب علينا ذلك. فهي مشكلة خطيرة جدًا.
4. How can we stop that ? ٤. كيف يمكننا وقف هذا ؟	- We can change our lifestyle. For example, we can use green transport. يمكننا تغيير نظام حياتنا، على سبيل المثال، يمكننا استخدام وسائل مواصلات صديقة للبيئة.

## 3. Writing

### مهارة الكتابة

يمكنك المقارنة بين شيئين مختلفين باستخدام الجمل التالية :

A comparison between two things	مقارنة بين شيئين
1. Modern cars are better than old ones.	السيارات الحديثة أفضل من السيارات القديمة.
2. Old cars are not as attractive as modern ones.	السيارات القديمة ليست جذابة مثل السيارات الحديثة.
3. Modern cars are more expensive than old ones.	السيارات الحديثة أغلى من السيارات القديمة.
4. Old cars are not as comfortable as modern ones.	السيارات القديمة ليست مريحة مثل السيارات الحديثة.

### III Language

#### Remember تذكر

1. **Short adjectives** الصفات القصيرة  
ex. fast / big / happy / cheap / dirty / quiet.... etc.
2. **Long adjectives** الصفات الطويلة  
ex. beautiful / interesting / polluted / serious / dangerous / attractive ... etc.

#### 1. Comparative adjectives : المقارنة بين اثنين في صفة :

• تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة المقارنة بإضافة [er] للصفة وتأتي بعدها [than] :

1  
Short  
adjectives  
الصفات القصيرة

adj. صفة + er + than

- fast → faster / old → older

ex. - The countryside is **quieter** than the city.

• لاحظ أن :

١. يُضاف [r] فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ [e] :

- large → larger / close → closer

٢. يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف [er] لنهاية الصفة القصيرة :

- big → bigger / thin → thinner / hot → hotter / fit → fitter

٣. الصفات المنتهية بحرف [y] مسبقاً بحرف ساكن تتحول [y] إلى [ier] :

- easy → easier / happy → happier

• تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالي :

2  
Long  
adjectives  
الصفات الطويلة

more أكثر / less أقل + adj. صفة + than

- more/less beautiful than

أكثر / أقل جمالاً من

ex. - I think that air pollution is **more serious** than water pollution.

- Bikes are **less comfortable** than cars.

**as adjective** صفة **as**

تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن التساوي في صفة معينة :

**as + adj.** صفة **+ as**

**ex.** - Droughts are **as serious as** floods.

- Recycling is **as important as** using less electricity for the environment.

في حالة النفي تستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن عدم التساوي في صفة معينة :

**not as + adj.** صفة **+ as**

**ex.** - Australia isn't **as hot as** Africa.

**Irregular Comparative Forms** صيغ المقارنة غير المنتظمة

هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة [تحفظ كما هي] عند المقارنة بين اثنين :

(1) Adjective		(2) Comparative	
bad	سيئ	worse than	أسوأ
far	بعيد	farther than further than	أبعد أبعد
good	جيد	better than	أفضل
little	قليل [الكمية]	less than	أقل
many much	كثير [العدد] كثير [الكمية]	more than	أكثر

**Exercises****on Language****1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

**SB , WB & Previous Exams**

- WB** Mount Catherine is a ..... mountain than Jabal Mousa.  
a. high                      b. higher                      c. highest                      d. as high
- Soha is ..... than Mona and came first. (Beni Suef – El Wasta 2024)  
a. intelligent                      b. more intelligent  
c. less intelligent                      d. as intelligent
- SB** The River Nile is ..... than before.  
a. more polluted                      b. polluted                      c. pollute                      d. polluter
- SB** The ice on top of Mount Kilimanjaro isn't melting ..... before.  
a. faster                      b. as fast                      c. fast as                      d. as fast as

5. **SB** The electric buses in Alexandria are ..... the old buses.  
 a. green                      b. greener                      c. greener than                      d. greener then  
*(Qalyubia - El-Qanater - 2023)*

### El-Moasser Exercises

6. Tamer likes reading ..... he likes playing computer games.  
 a. as much                      b. much as                      c. much                      d. as much as
7. The giraffe is ..... the elephant.  
 a. taller than                      b. taller then                      c. tall                      d. more tall
8. Today, the weather is ..... yesterday.  
 a. as hot                      b. hot as                      c. as hot as                      d. hotter
9. The shark is ..... than the octopus.  
 a. more dangerous                      b. dangerous  
 c. more danger                      d. dangerous than
10. The dolphin isn't as ..... the whale.  
 a. bigger                      b. big like                      c. big as                      d. big
11. Messi is a ..... than Ronaldo.  
 a. better player                      b. good player  
 c. more good player                      d. player better
12. Recycling is as ..... using less electricity for the environment.  
 a. more important                      b. important  
 c. less important                      d. important as

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. The plane is ..... (as fast) than the train. *(Cairo – Ain Shams 2024)*
2. **SB** The River Nile is ..... (much) polluted than it was before.
3. **WB** This new phone is ..... (bad) than my old one.
4. Australia is not ..... (hot as) Africa. *(Assuit - Manfalut 2023)*
5. Cars are ..... (comfortable) than bikes. *(Sharkia - El Qurein 2022)*

### El-Moasser Exercises

6. I think air pollution is as ..... (serious) water pollution.
7. Which is ..... (hot), Cairo or London ?
8. The country is ..... (quiet) than the city.
9. Swimming is ..... (relaxing) than boxing.

	Climate change
<div>Step 1    Vocabulary</div> <p>اختر إقناك للمفردات اللغوية</p> <hr/> <p>Read and complete :</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A : Do you know anything about ..... ? <span style="float:right; color:red;">التغير المناخي</span> B : Yes, I do.</li> <li>A : Is it a real problem on our ..... ? <span style="float:right; color:red;">كوكب</span> B : Yes, it is.</li> <li>A : How can we stop climate changes ? B : By ..... trees. <span style="float:right; color:red;">زراعة</span></li> </ol>	<div>Step 2    Speaking</div> <p>اختر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث</p> <hr/> <p>Complete the following dialogue :</p> <p>Maged and Ayman are talking about climate change.</p> <p>Maged : Excuse me. Can I ask you some questions ?</p> <p>Ayman : (1) .....</p> <p>Maged : Do you know anything about climate change ?</p> <p>Ayman : (2) .....</p> <p>Maged : (3) .... ?</p> <p>Ayman : Yes, it is a real problem on our planet.</p> <p>Maged : (4) .... ?</p> <p>Ayman : We can stop climate change by planting trees.</p> <p>Maged : Does that mean we should have more green areas ?</p> <p>Ayman : (5) ..... . (<i>Cairo – Abdeen 2023</i>)</p>
<div>How to keep the environment clean</div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A : What is the ..... about ? <span style="color:red;">تقرير</span> B : It is about air pollution.</li> <li>A : What do you think ..... air pollution ? <span style="color:red;">يسبب</span> B : I think old buses.</li> <li>A : Why should we use new ..... ? <span style="color:red;">الحافلات الكهربائية</span> B : Because they are quieter than the old buses.</li> </ol>	<div>Step 3    Writing</div> <p>اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة</p> <hr/> <p>Write a paragraph on : “Climate change”</p> <p>(Alexandria – Gomrok 2023)</p> <hr/> <p>“How to keep the environment clean”</p> <p>(Sohag - Tema 2024)</p>

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 1 & 2

● Understand ● Apply ○ Create

### 1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali is reading a book about the climate change.

Mother : Ali, what are you doing ?

Ali : (1) .....

Mother : What is this book about ?

Ali : (2) .....

Mother : (3) .....

Ali : It means that the weather changes and becomes hotter.

Mother : Is it dangerous ?

Ali : (4) .....

Mother : (5) .....

Ali : It is dangerous because it damages the environment.

(Alexandria - El-Amria 2023)

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Our Egyptian environment is different from other places all over the world. It's very important for us to do our jobs freely everywhere. In fact we all enjoy our life in Egypt. So everyone can get his needs easily and **daily** without any problems. For example, students come to school every day happily to read, learn and write. Also, doctors do **their** jobs carefully and very well to help sick people at hospitals. What about the police officers, farmers and teachers ? So we all should protect our country to live happily and safely. We need to keep our environment clean and healthy for ourselves and our children.

(Beni-Suef - El Wasta 2024)

#### a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The underlined pronoun "**their**" refers to .....  
a. doctors    b. teachers    c. students    d. farmers
- We need to keep our environment .....  
a. healthy    b. dirty    c. unhealthy    d. damaged
- The underlined word "**daily**" means ".....".  
a. now    b. every day    c. yesterday    d. tomorrow

#### b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?

5. Why do students go to school ?

6. Why do you think we should protect our country ?

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- There are a lot of cars in the city that ..... a lot of air pollution.  
a. recycle      b. cause      c. melt      d. pollute  
(Alexandria - East Alexandria 2024)
- What is the ..... like today ? – It is hot. (Cairo - West Nasr City 2024)  
a. weather      b. climate      c. star      d. band
- When it becomes warm, ice .....  
a. boils      b. cools      c. freezes      d. melts
- There was no rain for four months this winter, so now there is a .....  
a. conclusion      b. pollution      c. flood      d. drought  
(Gharbia - Al-Santa 2022)
- ..... change is a great problem and the world must solve it.  
a. Mountain      b. Sand      c. Climate      d. Storm
- SB** The good ..... is that the ice isn't melting as fast as before.  
a. snow      b. news      c. article      d. presentation
- ..... doesn't cause any pollution.  
a. Oil      b. Smoke      c. Electricity      d. Rubbish
- SB** Droughts are ..... floods.  
a. as serious as      b. as serious      c. like serious      d. serious
- WB** Egypt is ..... as Jordan.  
a. as hot      b. hot      c. hotter      d. hot like
- Maths is ..... than English.  
a. difficult      b. difficult than      c. as difficult      d. more difficult

### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- The first train goes ..... (fast) than the last one.  
(Minia – Maghagha 2024)
- Is today ..... (cold) than yesterday ? (Beni Suef - Nasser 2023)
- Fruit and vegetables are ..... (good) for you than sweets.  
(Menofiya - Quesina 2022)
- He is ..... (bad) than his friend.

### 5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : عجابه عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**“The effect of climate change on the environment”**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

canal (n)	قناة [مائية]	nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية
cotton (n)	قطن	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
ship (n)	سفينة	podcast (n)	نشرة صوتية
spotlight (n)	تسليط الضوء - ضوء كشاف	green energy (n)	طاقة نظيفة [لا تسبب تلوث]
sweets (n)	حلوى	coral reefs (n)	الشعاب المرجانية
locate (d) (v)	يحدد موقع - يقع في	environment matters (n)	شئون / أمور البيئة
monuments (n)	آثار	Ministry of Tourism (n)	وزارة السياحة



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

cotton - wildlife - nature reserve - podcast - located

- Egypt is ..... in North Africa.
- Egypt is famous for its ..... all over the world.
- Animals and plants are examples of .....
- Last month, I went to Ras Mohamed .....

### Lesson 3

SB pages 58 & 59 WB page 111

title (n)	عنوان / لقب	buildings (n)	مباني
article (n)	مقال	tourists (n)	سائحون
mosque (n)	مسجد	position (n)	وضع/مكان
main (adj)	أساسي/رئيسي	local (adj) (n)	محلي
focus (ed) (v) , (n)	يركز - تركيز	name (d) (v) , (n)	يسمى / يدعى - اسم
wheat (n)	قمح	sugar (n)	سكر
Pyramids (n)	أهرامات	pray (ed) (v)	يصل
black honey (n)	عسل أسود	particular (adj)	خاص

### Lesson 4

SB page 60 WB page 112

turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية	presenter (n)	مقدم برنامج
coast (n)	ساحل	owner (n)	صاحب/مالك

## UNIT SIX

respect (ed) (v), (n)	يحترم - احترام	worker (n)	عامل
introduction (n)	مقدمة	scuba divers (n)	غطاسين باستخدام أنابيب التنفس
exactly (adv)	بالضبط/تمامًا	boat trips (n)	رحلات بالقارب
tourism (n)	السياحة	wind (n)	رياح
travel companies = tourism companies (n)	شركات السياحة	scuba diving (n)	الغطس في الأعماق [باستخدام أنبوب التنفس]
recycling bin (n)	صندوق إعادة تدوير	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير
winner (n)	فائز	produce (d) (v)	ينتج/يصدر
<b>Famous places</b> أماكن مشهورة			
The Red Sea Coast	ساحل البحر الأحمر	Al-Ahmadi Mosque	مسجد الأحمدى

### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
grow يزرع	grew	grown
know يعرف	knew	known

### Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>canal</b>	a long area of water made for ships or boats	قناة مائية
<b>cotton</b>	a plant used for making clothes	قطن
<b>locate</b>	find or discover the exact position of something	يحدد موقع
<b>mosque</b>	a building where Muslims can pray	مسجد
<b>spotlight</b>	a very bright, strong light that you can shine on a certain area; also a focus on some information	ضوء كشاف - تسليط الضوء
<b>tourism</b>	the business of providing places to stay and things to do for people who are on holiday	السياحة
<b>wildlife</b>	animals and plants that live in natural conditions	الحياة البرية

### Vocabulary Study

#### Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
connected متصل	linked - related	disconnected غير متصل
particular خاص / معين	special - exact	general عام
main رئيسي / أساسي	major - essential	secondary / common ثانوي/عادي

winner	فائز	hero - champion	loser	خاسر
focus	يركز	concentrate - spotlight	neglect - leave	يهمل
closed	مغلق	locked	open - unlocked	مفتوح

Prefixes & Suffixes		مقاطع بادئة ونهاية	
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples	
- er	يكون اسم الفاعل من الفعل	worker winner	عامل فائز
dis -	يكون عكس الصفة	disconnected	غير متصل
- tion	تكوّن الاسم من الفعل	introduction	مقدمة
re -	تعطي معنى القيام بالفعل مرة ثانية	recycle	يعيد تدوير



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 as a result = so

نتيجة لذلك

► I studied hard. **As a result**, I succeeded.

(WB page 112) (SB page 60)

### 2 green energy

طاقة نظيفة (غير ملوثة للبيئة)

► **Green energy** from the sun doesn't pollute the environment.

(WB page 112)

### 3 produce - product

\* **produce (v)**

ينتج

► **WB** The hotel **produces** very little rubbish.

\* **product (n)**

مُنتج

► I like dairy **products**.

(WB page 112)

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
stop ... (inf. + ing)	يمنع - يوقف
do water sports	يمارس رياضات مائية
make ... greener	يجعلها ... أكثر ملائمة للبيئة
go scuba diving	يذهب للغطس
(be) made from	مصنوع من
famous / known for	مشهور بـ
spotlight on	تسليط الضوء على
(be) connected to	متصل بـ
(be) located in	يقع في [مكان]
stop ... from	يوقف [شخص] عن فعل شيء

## Main points on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

Lesson [3] SB pages 58 &amp; 59

**A. Spotlight on<sup>(1)</sup> Port Said**

1. Port Said is located in<sup>(2)</sup> the north-east of Egypt.
2. The city is known for<sup>(3)</sup> its ships, which come and go from around the world.
3. Port Said is connected to<sup>(4)</sup> Suez by the Suez Canal.
4. Many fish are caught in the sea near Port Said.

**B. Spotlight on Tanta**

1. Tanta is located in the north of Egypt.
2. Lots of cotton is grown in the area.
3. The city is known for its delicious sweets.
4. Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi mosque is visited by thousands of people every year.

**C. Spotlight on Minya**

1. My home city is Minya.
2. It is located near the Nile.
3. Lots of food is grown in the local area, like potatoes, wheat and sugar.
4. The city is known for its delicious "black honey"<sup>(5)</sup>.
5. The honey is made from sugar.
6. Many ancient monuments and buildings are found in the city.
7. My city is very beautiful and interesting!

Lesson [4] SB page 60

1. The podcast presenter says that today on **Environment Matters**<sup>(6)</sup> we're looking at tourism on the Red Sea Coast.
2. Salma Fawzy is from the **Ministry of Tourism**<sup>(7)</sup>.
3. She talks about how we can have tourism in Egypt that doesn't damage the environment.
4. The podcast presenter asks Salma if she is interested in helping both tourism and the environment.
5. Salma says exactly tourism is very important to Egypt.
6. Our beautiful coast is visited by people from around the world.
7. **The coast**<sup>(8)</sup> also has coral reefs and lots of important wildlife.
8. The coral reefs are important for our sharks, dolphins and turtles.
9. Salma says the islands on the Red Sea Coast are all **nature reserves**<sup>(9)</sup>.
10. We are also working with hotels and **travel companies**<sup>(10)</sup>.
11. We have rules for new buildings to make them greener.
12. We also give prizes to companies that are the best at looking after the environment.

(1) تسليط الضوء على	(2) تقع في	(3) معروف بـ	(4) متصل بـ	(5) الحاصل الأسود
(6) شؤون البيئة	(7) وزارة السياحة	(8) الساحل	(9) محميات طبيعية	(10) شركات السياحة

تنويه :

الجميل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

- \* A spotlight on (Port Said / Tanta / Minya)
- \* Tourism in Egypt
- \* Environment matters
- \* Nature reserves

## II

## Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening

## Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الفهم  
ونصوص الاستماع

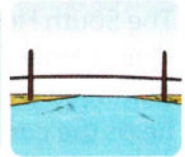
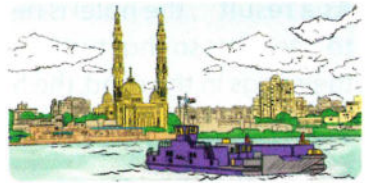


## Reading

## • on Lesson 3 SB page 58

Spotlight on<sup>(1)</sup> ... Port Said

- Port Said is **located**<sup>(2)</sup> in the north-east of Egypt.
- The city is **known for**<sup>(3)</sup> its ships, which come and go from around the world.
- Port Said is **connected to**<sup>(4)</sup> Suez by the Suez Canal.
- Many fish are caught in the sea near Port Said.



## Spotlight on... Tanta

- Tanta is located in the north of Egypt.
- Lots of cotton is grown in the area.
- The city is known for its delicious sweets.
- Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi mosque is visited by thousands of people every year.

## Answer

the following  
questions :

## Extracting information

## Learn

1. Where is Port Said ?

- It is located in the north - east of Egypt.

## Practise

2. What is Tanta famous for ?

## استخراج المعلومات

(1) تسلط الضوء على

(2) تقع

(3) معروف بـ

(4) متصل / مرتبط بـ

## • on Lesson 3 SB page 59

My home city is **Minya**<sup>(1)</sup>. It is located near the Nile. Lots of food is grown in the local area, like **potatoes**<sup>(2)</sup>, **wheat**<sup>(3)</sup> and **sugar**<sup>(4)</sup>. The city is known for its delicious "**black honey**"<sup>(5)</sup>.

The honey is made from sugar. Many ancient **monuments**<sup>(6)</sup> and **buildings**<sup>(7)</sup> are found in the city. My city is very beautiful and **interesting**<sup>(8)</sup>!



(1) مدينة المنيا (2) البطاطس (3) قمح (4) سكر (5) العسل الأسود (6) آثار (7) مباني (8) رائع/شيق

## UNIT SIX

### • on Lesson 4 WB page 112

#### The North Hotel

The North Hotel is located **on a lovely beach**<sup>(1)</sup> and every year, the hotel is visited by **more and more**<sup>(2)</sup> tourists. However, the hotel owner said that last year, there were not as many turtles on the beach **as usual**<sup>(3)</sup>.

**As a result**<sup>(4)</sup>, the hotel is helping the turtles. Parts of the beach are **closed to**<sup>(5)</sup> tourists so that turtles are safe. And at night, when the turtles leave their eggs in the sand, the hotel workers stop any tourists from visiting the beach.

#### The South Hotel

The South Hotel is near the coast and every year, it takes tourists scuba diving. However, workers on the boats believe that coral reefs are often damaged by scuba divers. The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral reefs. Now some of the money that tourists **pay for**<sup>(6)</sup> the boat trips is used to help protect the coral reefs.

#### The East Hotel

The East Hotel is very new. Only **green energy**<sup>(7)</sup> from the sun and **wind**<sup>(8)</sup> is used at the hotel. The hotel also **produces**<sup>(9)</sup> very little rubbish : most of it is recycled. All the fruit and vegetables at the hotel restaurant are grown on **local farms**<sup>(10)</sup>, and the people working at the hotel are all from the local **villages**<sup>(11)</sup>.

(1) على شاطئ جميل	(2) المزيد والمزيد من	(3) كالمعتاد	(4) كنتيجة لـ	(5) يُغلق تجاه/نحو	(6) يدفع لـ
(7) طاقة نظيفة	(8) رياح	(9) ينتج/يُصدر	(10) مزارع محلية	(11) قرى	



## Listening



### • on Lesson 4 SB page 60

#### Podcast Presenter :

Today **on Environment Matters**<sup>(1)</sup> we're looking at tourism **on the Red Sea Coast**<sup>(2)</sup>. Salma Fawzy from the **Ministry of Tourism**<sup>(3)</sup> is here to talk about how we can have tourism in Egypt that doesn't damage the environment.



(1) في أمور/شئون البيئة (2) على ساحل البحر الأحمر (3) وزارة السياحة

### Podcast Presenter :

Hello, Salma. You're interested in helping both tourism and the environment, **is that right** ?<sup>(4)</sup>

**Salma :**

Exactly. Tourism is very important to Egypt. Our beautiful coast is visited by people **from around the world**<sup>(5)</sup> - which is great ! But the coast also has coral reefs and lots of important wildlife. The coral reefs are **important for**<sup>(6)</sup> our sharks, dolphins and turtles.



### Podcast Presenter :

So, what are you doing to protect the environment ?

**Salma :**

Well, the **islands**<sup>(7)</sup> on the Red Sea Coast are all **nature reserves**<sup>(8)</sup>. We are also working with hotels and **travel companies**<sup>(9)</sup>. We have **rules**<sup>(10)</sup> for new buildings to make them greener. We also give **prizes to**<sup>(11)</sup> companies that are the best at looking after the environment.

**Podcast Presenter :** Good idea !

**Salma :**

We also think that it's important to teach tourists about how to look after our special environment when they are on the beaches or doing water sports like scuba diving.

(4) هل هذا صحيح ؟

(5) من مختلف أنحاء العالم

(6) ضروري هام لـ

(7) جزر

(8) محميات طبيعية

(9) شركات السياحة

(10) قوانين/قواعد

(11) جوائز لـ

### Listening

Skill

مهارة الاستماع

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Practise

The coral reefs are important .....

a. wildlife

b. building

c. prizes

d. rules



## Exercise

### on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### Key vocabulary

- Ras Mohammed is a famous nature ..... all over the world.  
a. coast                      b. reserve                      c. desert                      d. oasis
- The Red Sea is full of colourful .....  
a. pets                      b. canals                      c. coral reefs                      d. deserts

## UNIT SIX

3. There are many ancient ..... in the Egyptian Museum.  
a. monuments    b. coral reefs    c. tourists    d. sweets
4. The Ministry of ..... does its best to attract tourists to Egypt.  
a. Education    b. Tourism    c. Industry    d. Police

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

5. **SB** Tanta is ..... in the north of Egypt.  
a. caught    b. located    c. grown    d. made  
(Gharbia - Tanta East 2022 / Monofia - Ashmoon 2023 / Cairo - East Nasr City 2024)
6. Port Said is connected to Suez by the Suez ..... . (Port Said 2023)  
a. Lake    b. Canal    c. Nile    d. Coast
7. **WB** We know Giza for its ancient ..... .  
a. libraries    b. waterwheels    c. pyramids    d. parks

### El-Moasser Exercises

8. Muslims go to the mosques five times to ..... every day.  
a. own    b. recycle    c. pray    d. build
9. He bought the house yesterday. He's the ..... now.  
a. manager    b. worker    c. driver    d. owner
10. .... rubbish is the only way to save our planet.  
a. Cycling    b. Throwing    c. Recycling    d. Burning

### ► Definitions

11. **WB** ..... is a very bright, strong light that you can shine on a certain area. (Ismailia - Multidisciplinary - Tell El Kebir 2021)  
a. Sunlight    b. Spotlight    c. Moonlight    d. Candlelight
12. A ..... is a building where you can pray.  
a. mosque    b. school    c. library    d. hospital
13. A/An ..... is a long area of water made for ships or boats.  
a. canal    b. wildlife    c. mosque    d. park

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Hany stopped ..... as the doctor warned him.  
a. smoke    b. to smoke    c. smoking    d. smokes
15. Egypt is famous ..... its ancient monuments.  
a. for    b. at    c. off    d. by
16. I was sick. .... , I couldn't go to school.  
a. Because    b. As a result    c. But    d. Although

## 2. Speaking

### مهارة التحدث

#### ► Asking and answering questions about a city in your country :

توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن مدينة في بلدك :

#### Questions



1. What is the name of the city ?  
Where is it located ?

١. ما اسم هذه المدينة ؟ وأين تقع ؟

2. Can you name a famous place in or near the city ?

٢. هل يمكن أن تذكر مكان شهير بالمدينة أو بالقرب منها ؟

3. What do people grow or catch around the city ?

٣. ما الذي يقوم الناس بزراعته أو اصطياده حول المدينة ؟

4. What is the city famous for ?

٤. بما تشتهر المدينة ؟

#### Answers



- It is Port Said. It is located in the north-east of Egypt.

إنها مدينة بورسعيد وتقع في الشمال الشرقي من مصر.

- The city (Port said) is connected to Suez by the Suez Canal.

المدينة (بورسعيد) متصلة بمدينة السويس عن طريق قناة السويس.

- Many fish are caught in the sea in an area near the city (Port Said).

العديد من الأسماك يتم اصطيادها في البحر في منطقة قريبة من المدينة (بورسعيد).

- The city is famous for its port.

تشتهر المدينة بميناء ها.

## 3. Writing

### مهارة الكتابة

#### Where you live or a place you know well

1. My home city is Tanta.

أين تعيش أو مكان تعرفه جيدًا  
مسقط رأسي هي مدينة طنطا.

2. It is located in the north of Egypt.

إنها تقع في شمال مصر.

3. Lots of cotton is grown in the area.

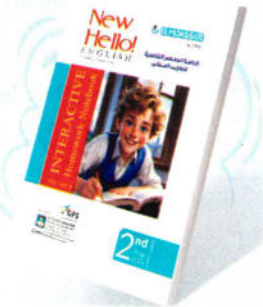
يزرع الكثير من القطن في المنطقة.

4. The city is known for its delicious sweets.

تشتهر المدينة بالحلويات اللذيذة.

## El Moasser Homework Interactive

- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي
- تمكّنك من إتقان المفردات اللغوية ( التسميع )
- والقواعد اللغوية وتدريبات على الوحدات



### III Language

#### The Present Simple : Active & Passive

زمن المضارع البسيط في صيغة المبني للمعلوم وصيغة المبني للمجهول

##### Active صيغة المبني للمعلوم

صيغة الإثبات

I / You /  
We / They /  
اسم جمع + .... التصريف الأول

He / She  
/ It /  
اسم مفرد + inf.  
مصدر الفعل + [s/es/ies]

Affirmative

- ex. - My brother **helps** me.  
- We **know** Tanta for its  
delicious sweets.

صيغة النفي

Negative

I / You /  
We / They /  
اسم جمع + don't + inf.  
مصدر الفعل

He / She  
/ It /  
اسم مفرد + doesn't + inf.  
مصدر الفعل

- ex. - We **don't play** tennis.  
- Omar **doesn't eat** sweets.

##### Passive صيغة المبني للمجهول

نائب الفاعل  
[مفعول الجملة  
الذي حل محل  
الفاعل] + am  
is + p.p. ....  
are

- ex. - I **am helped** (by my brother).  
- لاحظ تحول ضمير المفعول (me) إلى (I).  
ex. - Tanta **is known** for its  
delicious sweets (by us).  
- لاحظ تحول ضمير الفاعل (we) إلى (us).

نائب الفاعل  
[مفعول الجملة  
الذي حل محل  
الفاعل] + am  
is + not + p.p. ....  
are

- ex. - Tennis **isn't played** (by us).  
- Sweets **aren't eaten** (by Omar).

## السؤال بـ [هل] Yes / No question

Do + I / you / we / they / اسم جمع + inf. ....? مصدر الفعل

Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + inf. ....? مصدر الفعل

- ex. - Do people speak English in Brazil?  
- Does Salma study maths and science?

Am Is Are + نائب الفاعل [مفعول الجملة الذي حل محل الفاعل] + p.p. .... ?

- ex. - Is English spoken (by people) in Brazil?  
- Are maths and science studied (by Salma)?

## السؤال بأداة استفهام Wh question

Q.W. أداة استفهام + do + I / you / we / they / اسم جمع + inf. ....? مصدر الفعل

Q.W. أداة استفهام + does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + inf. ....? مصدر الفعل

- ex. - Where do you buy your clothes?  
- Who cooks lunch in your family?

Q.W. أداة استفهام + am is are + نائب الفاعل [مفعول الجملة الذي حل محل الفاعل] + p.p. .... ?

- ex. - Where are your clothes bought?  
- Who is lunch cooked by in your family?  
- لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر (by) بعد الفعل عندما يبدأ السؤال بأداة استفهام (who) في صيغة المبني للمجهول.



## Exercises on Language

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB &amp; Previous Exams

1. **SB** Many fish ..... in the sea near Port Said.  
a. have caught    b. are caught    c. are catching    d. catch
2. **WB** In the East Hotel, most of the rubbish .....  
a. recycled    b. has recycled    c. is recycling    d. is recycled

## UNIT SIX

3. Who is the book ..... by ? (Dakahlia – Mansoura 2024)  
 a. writes                      b. wrote                      c. written                      d. write
4. **WB** Only green energy is ..... at the hotel.  
 a. use                      b. used                      c. using                      d. uses
5. The homework ..... in this room. (Qena - Farshoot 2023)  
 a. is written                      b. wrote                      c. writes                      d. is writing
6. **WB** Giza is ..... for its ancient pyramids.  
 a. knowing                      b. know                      c. knew                      d. known

(Multidisciplinary - Minya - Beni Mazar 2021 / Sharkia – Fakous 2024)

### El-Moasser Exercises

7. The car ..... repaired by the mechanic.  
 a. don't                      b. not                      c. isn't                      d. aren't
8. The letter is ..... by Mazen.  
 a. written                      b. write                      c. wrote                      d. writing
9. The zoo is visited ..... the students.  
 a. with                      b. by                      c. to                      d. on
10. The gifts ..... to Maha.  
 a. is given                      b. give                      c. gave                      d. are given
11. Where is Port Said ..... ?  
 a. located                      b. locate                      c. locates                      d. locating
12. .... cotton clothes made in Egypt ?  
 a. Have                      b. Was                      c. Are                      d. Can

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. **SB** Many ancient buildings and monuments are ..... (finding) in Minya.
2. **WB** What places ..... (be) visited by tourists in Egypt ?
3. Cotton ..... (grow) in Egypt by clever farmers. (Damietta – Zarka 2024)
4. Luxor ..... (know) for its ancient temples. (Luxor 2023)
5. Cheese ..... (make) from milk. (Sohag - El-Maragha 2022)

### El-Moasser Exercises

6. What ..... (cook) by mother ? – Fish (Damietta – Zarka 2024)
7. Tanta ..... (are) known for its delicious sweets.
8. When is fruit usually ..... (pick) ?
9. Furniture isn't ..... (making) in Luxor.
10. Lots of foods ..... (grow) in Delta.



# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3 & 4

● Understand ● Apply ○ Create

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- The text is about .....  
a. Minya                      b. Tanta                      c. Cairo                      d. Port Said
- Where is the city located ? - It is located in the ..... of Egypt.  
a. north                      b. south                      c. east                      d. west
- The city is known for its .....  
a. temples                      b. delicious sweets  
c. ancient monuments                      d. pyramids
- What is grown there ?  
a. Cotton                      b. Rice                      c. Wheat                      d. Sugar

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Kamel and Ahmed are talking about where they live.

Kamel : Hello Ahmed ! Where do you live ?

Ahmed : Hello Kamel ! (1) .....

Kamel : (2) ..... ?

Ahmed : Giza is located near Cairo.

Kamel : (3) ..... ?

Ahmed : It is known for the Pyramids. Where do you live ?

Kamel : (4) .....

Ahmed : What is visited by tourists in Luxor ?

Kamel : (5) .....

Ahmed : Oh ! I visited Luxor Temple before.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- El-Fayoum is famous for its nature ..... (Minia – Samalout 2024)  
a. reserves                      b. oceans                      c. seas                      d. rivers
- People believe that coral reefs are often damaged by scuba .....  
a. writers                      b. travellers                      c. divers                      d. drives

(Kafir El-Sheikh – Desouk 2024)

3. .... should look after the environment when they visit a country.

(Alexandria - El - Montazah 2023)

- a. Drivers      b. Tourists      c. Guides      d. Owners

4. Good teachers ..... on slow learners in their classes.

- a. spotlight      b. leave      c. let      d. light

5. Robinson Crusoe's ..... sank in the sea because of a storm.

- a. shop      b. ship      c. flat      d. farm

6. Bread is made from.....

- a. wheat      b. cheese      c. sugar      d. sweets

7. **WB** Which of these is not an example of wildlife ?

- a. Chicken      b. Turtle      c. Dolphin      d. Mouse

8. The old man ..... by the policeman.

- a. is helped      b. has helped      c. helped      d. help

9. The juice is ..... by Amir.

- a. drinking      b. drunk      c. drank      d. drink

10. The book ..... by Hani.

(Giza - Haram 2022)

- a. is read      b. read      c. reads      d. has read

#### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Juice ..... (not drink) by Salma.

(Sharkia - Abu-Kabir 2024)

2. Cheese ..... (make) from milk.

(Alexandria - East Alexandria 2023)

3. Cotton clothes ..... (sell) all over the world.

(Suez 2022)

4. Where ..... (is) these books made ?

#### 5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

“Your home city”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

riverbank (n)	ضفة النهر	city centre (n)	وسط المدينة
plastic bags (n)	أكياس بلاستيك	volunteer (n)	متطوع
aim(ed) (v) , (n)	يهدف - هدف	vote (d) (v) , (n)	يُصوّت - تصويت
souvenirs (n)	هدايا تذكارية	suggestion (n)	اقتراح



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

riverbank - volunteer - souvenirs - vote

1. He worked as a ..... for a charity.
2. I gave my ..... to my classmate Omar.
3. Tourists buy ..... when they visit Egypt.

### Lesson 5

SB page 61 WB page 113

diagram (n)	رسم تخطيطي	solve (d) (v)	يحل [مشكلة]
washing (n)	غسيل	water bottles (n)	زجاجات المياه
school project (n)	مشروع دراسي	rubbish bin(n)	سلة المهملات
respond (ed) (v)	يرد / يستجيب	recycling (n)	إعادة تدوير
plastic bags	أكياس بلاستيكية	event (n)	حدث هام
water (ed) (v)	يروي / يسقي	reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام

### Lesson 6

SB page 62 WB page 114

global (adj)	عالمي	tonne (n)	طن [١٠٠٠ كيلو جرام]
remind (ed) (v)	يُذكر [شخص]	coloured (adj)	ملون
including (prep)	متضمنًا / مشتملاً على	improve (d) (v)	يحسن
importance (n)	أهمية	school newspaper (n)	جريدة المدرسة
market (n)	سوق	swap (ped) (v)	يبادل [شيء بغيره]

figs (n)	تين	traffic (n)	الممرور
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع	hope (d) (v)	يتمنى
billion (n)	بليون	mistake (n)	خطأ

## Countries , Cities and places

## بلاد ، مدن وأماكن

Amsterdam	مدينة أمستردام [عاصمة هولندا]	Marsa Alam	مدينة مرسى علم [في مصر]
Sidi Bou Said	مدينة سيدي يوسفيد [في تونس]	South Korea	دولة كوريا الجنوبية
Netherlands	دولة هولندا	Sidi Barrani	مدينة سيدي براني [في مصر]

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
lead يؤدي إلى	led	led

## Vocabulary Study

## Synonyms and Antonyms

## مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
unreal غير حقيقي	untrue - fake	real - true حقيقي
problem مشكلة	trouble	solution حل
respond يرد - يستجيب	answer - reply	ask - inquire يسأل - يستفسر
remind يُذكر [شخص]	make you remember	ignore - forget ينسى - يتجاهل

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes

## مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
- ed	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	coloured ملون
- ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	recycling إعادة تدوير
un -	تعطى عكس الكلمة	unreal غير حقيقي
re -	تعطى معنى القيام بالفعل مرة ثانية	rearrange يعيد ترتيب reuse يعيد استخدام



## Exercise

## on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The word "ask" and "....." are antonyms.

a. respond

b. respect

c. expect

d. accept

## UNIT SIX

2. To get the adjective from the word "colour", we add the suffix ".....".  
a. - ous                      b. - tion                      c. - al                      d. - ed
3. To get the antonym of the word "real", we add the prefix ".....".  
a. dis -                      b. un -                      c. im -                      d. il -
4. The word "problem" has the same meaning as .....  
a. solution                      b. production                      c. trouble                      d. sadness
5. When something is not real, then it's.....  
a. formal                      b. factual                      c. true                      d. fake



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 bank

مُصْرَف (بنك) - ضفة نهر

- ▶ People keep their money in **banks**.
- She likes sitting on the **riverbank**.

(SB page 62)

### 2 aim (v) / (n)

يهدف - هدف

- ▶ Donia **aims at** being a famous surgeon.
- He has achieved his **aim to** be a pilot.

(WB page 114)

### 3 event - accident

(WB page 113)

#### \* event

حدث (عظيم ومؤثر)

- ▶ **WB** Global Recycling Day is an **event** in March.

#### \* accident

حادثة

- ▶ His uncle died in an **accident**.

(WB page 114)

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
get warmer                      يصبح أكثر دفئاً	hope to                      يتمنى أن
have a class vote on                      يجرى تصويت بحجرة الدراسة على	lie on the beach                      يستلقى على الشاطئ
solve a problem                      يحل مشكلة	respond to                      يرد على ... / يستجيب لـ ...
try recycling water                      يجرب إعادة تدوير المياه	lead to                      يؤدي إلى
It was great to + inf.                      كان من الرائع أن ...	a form of                      شكل / نمط من



## Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

### Lesson [5] WB page 113

1. Our school project<sup>(1)</sup> this week is to think about rubbish at school.
2. In our school, we have a rubbish bin<sup>(2)</sup> in every room.
3. The students always put their rubbish in the bins.
4. At the moment, the rubbish is collected every week.
5. It goes to a special place in the city.
6. Most of the rubbish is made of paper or plastic.
7. We can recycle<sup>(3)</sup> a lot of rubbish.
8. Students can now put the rubbish in a special bin so it can be used again.

### Lesson [6] SB page 62

#### Students help to clean river by Khadeeja El-Maghrabi

1. Last weekend, ten students from class 7 helped clean up the part of the riverbank<sup>(4)</sup>.
2. The riverbank was near the city centre.
3. The students collected 15 bags of rubbish.
4. Mr Hassan said that the students were sad to find so much rubbish.
5. There were lots of plastic bags and bottles.
6. It was great to clean the riverbank.

7. We need to teach people to be more careful with their rubbish.

8. Rubbish in the river damages<sup>(5)</sup> the wildlife.

### Lesson [6] WB page 114

1. Global Recycling Day<sup>(6)</sup> is an event<sup>(7)</sup> in March.
2. It aims to remind<sup>(8)</sup> people of the importance of recycling things.
3. In 2018, people produced about 11 billion tonnes of rubbish around the world.
4. At the moment, a lot of rubbish is burned.
5. Burning rubbish<sup>(9)</sup> can lead to climate change.
6. Germany recycles more than 56% of rubbish.
7. In 1991, it recycled about 3%.
8. South Korea<sup>(10)</sup> recycles more than 53% of its rubbish.
9. Coloured<sup>(11)</sup> plastic bottles and some plastic cups are not used any more<sup>(12)</sup>.
10. Most countries hope to recycle more in the future.

(1) مشروع مدرسي	(2) سلة مهملات	(3) يجمع تدوير	(4) قطعة النهر	(5) يدمر
(6) اليوم العالمي لإعادة تدوير النفايات	(7) حدث	(8) يذكر	(9) حرق القمامة	
(10) كوريا الجنوبية	(11) ملوث	(12) بعد الآن		

### ملحوظة:

الجميل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

\* Global Recycling Day

\* Collecting rubbish

\* A recycling project

\* A school project

## 1. Reading and Listening



### Listening

#### Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٣٠ من  
قطع الفهم  
ونصوص الاستماع



#### on Lesson 5 SB page 61

**Aya** : The problem is that we all use too much water.

**Reem** : That's true<sup>(1)</sup>. So, how can we use less water?

**Aya** : Well, why don't we try recycling water<sup>(2)</sup> ?

**Reem** : How could we do that ?

**Aya** : For example, we could use the water from washing to water the plants<sup>(3)</sup>.

**Reem** : That's an interesting idea<sup>(4)</sup> ! The plants would like that !



(1) هذا صحيح (2) يجرب إعادة تدوير المياه (3) يسقى النباتات (4) إنها فكرة مثيرة للاهتمام

#### on Lesson 5 WB page 113

Girl :

Our school project this week is to think about<sup>(1)</sup> rubbish at school. In our school, we have a rubbish bin in every room. The students are very good and they always put their rubbish in the bins. At the moment<sup>(2)</sup>, the rubbish is collected every week and goes to a special place in the city.

But when we look inside the bins, we can see that most of the rubbish is made of paper or plastic. We can recycle a lot of this rubbish. So now, before students put things in the rubbish bin, we ask them to think: can I recycle that ? If the answer is yes, they can now put it in a special bin so it can be used again.



### Listening

#### Skill

مهارة الاستماع

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

**Practise** This week's project is about .....

a. environment b. rubbish c. holiday d. jobs

(1) يفكر في

(2) في هذه اللحظة

• on Lesson 5 WB page 113

**Dina** : Look at all the **plastic water bottles** <sup>(1)</sup> in the rubbish bin.  
The problem is that we use too many of them.

**Leila** : How can we stop people using them ?

**Dina** : Why don't we ask people to use them again ?

**Leila** : How could we do that ?

**Dina** : People could take the bottles home, wash them, and **bring** <sup>(2)</sup> them to school the next day.

**Leila** : That's an interesting idea. We can see what the teacher thinks.

(1) زجاجات مياه بلاستيكية (2) يحضر



## Reading

• on Lesson 6 SB page 62

### Students help to clean river

By Khadeeja El-Maghrabi

Last weekend, ten students from Class 7 helped **clean up** <sup>(1)</sup> the part of the riverbank near the city centre. The students collected 15 bags of rubbish.

Their teacher, Mr Hassan, said the students were sad to find so much rubbish.

"There were lots of plastic bags and bottles", he said. "We even found an old shoe!"

One of the students said, "It was great to clean the riverbank, but we need to teach people to be more **careful with** <sup>(2)</sup> their rubbish. Rubbish in the river damages the wildlife".

**Well done** <sup>(3)</sup> to the volunteers!



**Choose**  
the correct  
answer from  
a , b , c or d :

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

**Practise**

The word "....." means animals and plants that live in natural conditions.

a. recycling b. riverbank c. wildlife d. rubbish bin

تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

(1) ينظف

(2) حريص بشأن

(3) أحسنتم صنفاً

• on Lesson 6 WB page 114

### What is Global Recycling Day ?

**Global Recycling Day** <sup>(1)</sup> is an event <sup>(2)</sup> in March. It aims to **remind** <sup>(3)</sup> people of the **importance** <sup>(5)</sup> of recycling things **including** <sup>(6)</sup> paper, plastic,

(1) اليوم العالمي لإعادة تدوير النفايات (2) حدث (3) يهدف إلى (4) يُذكر (5) أهمية (6) متضمناً / مشتملاً على

## UNIT SIX

metal, water and even **gas**<sup>(7)</sup> and **oil**<sup>(8)</sup>. It was started in 2018 and there are now recycling events in many different countries.

### So why is recycling so important ?

In 2018, people produced about 11 **billion**<sup>(9)</sup> **tonnes**<sup>(10)</sup> of rubbish around the world. At the moment, a lot of our rubbish is burned and this can lead to<sup>(11)</sup> climate change.

### What are countries doing about the problem ?

No country recycles as much rubbish as Germany: it recycles **more than**<sup>(12)</sup> 56% of it. In 1991, it recycled about 3%. South Korea recycles more than 53% of its rubbish. Coloured plastic bottles and some plastic cups are not used **any more**<sup>(13)</sup>, because you cannot recycle them. Most countries **hope to**<sup>(14)</sup> recycle more in the future.



- (7) غاز
- (8) زيت
- (9) بليون
- (10) اطنان
- (11) يؤدي إلى
- (12) أكثر من
- (13) بعد الآن
- (14) يتفنى أن



## Exercise on Vocabulary

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

### ► Key vocabulary

1. Tourists visited Khan Al-Khalili and bought some .....  
a. suggestions    b. volunteers    c. problems    d. souvenirs
2. Who did you ..... for in the last elections انتخابات in your class ?  
a. solve    b. hope    c. vote    d. do
3. The flood damaged the houses which were on the .....  
a. river    b. riverbank    c. river bed    d. river water
4. Public libraries ..... to encourage students to read and borrow books.  
a. give    b. bring    c. catch    d. aim

### SB , WB & Previous Exams

5. Our teacher helped us to ..... our skill in reading. (Sohag–Maragha2024)  
a. reuse    b. damage    c. improve    d. prove
6. **WB** We could use water from washing to ..... the plants.  
a. cut    b. waste    c. water    d. use  
(Al-Qalyoubeya - Al-Obour 2022)
7. **WB** Recycling things ..... paper, plastic and metal is important.  
a. burning    b. changing    c. including    d. solving  
(Cairo – New Cairo 2024)

8. **WB** A lot of rubbish is ..... and this can lead to climate change.  
a. washed      b. reused      c. recycled      d. burned

(Sharkia – East Zagazig 2023)

### El-Moasser Exercises

9. We all worked hard to ..... the problem of pollution.  
a. smoke      b. solve      c. think      d. answer
10. .... rubbish is good for the environment.  
a. Recycling      b. Doing      c. Making      d. Throwing
11. You can ..... plastic bottles instead of throwing them away.  
a. produce      b. make      c. reuse      d. eat

### ► Definitions

12. .... is the place where we can buy many things.  
a. Riverbank      b. Cinema      c. Garage      d. City centre
13. .... means the process of collecting and changing old paper, glass, plastic, so that they can be used again.  
a. Washing      b. Recycling      c. Producing      d. Cycling

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. We hope ..... make our city clean.  
a. of      b. to      c. on      d. in
15. You should respond ..... your parents' advice .  
a. at      b. on      c. to      d. of
16. Every year we ..... a class vote to choose a leader for our class.  
a. have      b. make      c. do      d. bring

## 2. Speaking

### مهارة التحدث

### ► Suggesting solutions to a problem : اقتراح حلول لمشكلة :

**Dina** : Look at all the plastic water bottles in the rubbish bin.

The problem is that we use too many of them.

**دينا** : انظري إلى جميع زجاجات المياه البلاستيكية في سلة القمامة. المشكلة هي أننا نستخدم الكثير منها.

**Leila** : How can we stop people using them ?

**ليلى** : كيف يمكننا إيقاف استخدام الأشخاص لهم ؟

**Dina** : Why don't we ask people to use them again ?

**دينا** : لما لا نطلب من الأشخاص إعادة استخدامها مرة ثانية ؟

**Leila** : How could we do that ?

**ليلى** : كيف يمكننا القيام بذلك ؟

**Dina** : People could take home the bottles, wash them, and bring them to school the next day.

**دينا** : يمكن للأشخاص أخذ الزجاجات للمنزل وغسلها ثم إحضارها إلى المدرسة في اليوم التالي.

**Leila** : That's an interesting idea. We can see what the teacher thinks.

**ليلى** : إنها لفكرة مثيرة للاهتمام. يمكننا أن نرى ما يفكر فيه المعلم.



## Pop Quiz

## on Speaking

• Complete the following dialogue :

**Ayman is doing a school project.**

**Samy** : What are you doing ?

**Ayman** : (1) .....

**Samy** : Do you know a lot about your family history ?

**Ayman** : (2) .....

**Samy** : (3) ..... ?

**Ayman** : My grandfather used to live in the countryside.

**Samy** : (4) ..... ?

**Ayman** : He was a doctor.

**Samy** : I think he was a good and helpful man.

**Ayman** : (5) .....

(Fayoum - Itsa 2023)

## 3. Writing

## مهارة الكتابة

## ▶ Writing tips :

نصائح للكتابة :

- Remember to check your writing for mistakes. Make sure that the grammar, spelling and punctuation are correct.

- تذكر أن تتحقق من الأخطاء عند الكتابة. تأكد من صحة القواعد اللغوية والهجاء وعلامات الترقيم.

## How to use less water

## كيفية استخدام المياه بصورة أقل

1. Water is essential to our life.

الماء ضروري / أساسي لحياتنا.

2. The problem is that we all use too much water.

المشكلة أننا نستخدم جميعًا الكثير من الماء.

3. We use water in drinking, washing and cooking in our houses.

نحن نستخدم الماء في الشرب والغسيل والطهي في منازلنا.

4. It is important to use less water.

إنه من المهم أن نستخدم ماء أقل.

5. We can use less water by recycling water.

يمكننا أن نستخدم ماء أقل من خلال إعادة تدوير الماء.

6. This means using water again instead of wasting it away.

هذا يعني أننا نستخدم الماء مرة ثانية بدلًا من إهدارها بعيدًا.

7. We can use less water by using the water from washing to water the plants.

يمكننا أن نستخدم ماء أقل من خلال استخدام الماء المستخدم في الغسيل في سقي النباتات.

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5 & 6

○ Understand

● Apply

○ Create

### 1 Complete the following dialogue :

Lobna and Nesma are talking about reusing water.

Lobna : Hi, Nesma !

Nesma : Hi, Lobna ! (1) ..... ?

Lobna : I listened to a radio programme last night.

Nesma : (2) ..... ?

Lobna : It was about how to use less water.

Nesma : (3) ..... ! But how can we do that ?

Lobna : (4) ..... .

Nesma : How can we recycle water ?

Lobna : We could use water from washing to water the plants.

Nesma : (5) ..... !

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Global Recycling Day started in 2018 to show the importance of recycling. It is a day for the world to come together and put the planet first. It is an event in March to remind people of the importance of recycling things including paper, plastic, metal, water and even gas and oil.

In 2018, people produced about 11 billion tons of rubbish around the world. At the moment, a lot of our rubbish is burnt and this can **lead to** climate change. No country recycles as much rubbish as Germany : It recycles more than 56 % of it. In 1991, it recycled about 3 %. South Korea recycles more than 53 % of its rubbish. Coloured plastic bottles and some plastic cups are not used anymore, because you can recycle them. Most countries hope to recycle more in the future. (Fayoum - Itsa 2024)

#### a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Global Recycling Day started in ..... .  
a. 2018      b. 1991      c. March      d. May
- Burning rubbish can make the climate ..... .  
a. stay      b. change      c. damage      d. disappear
- The underlined word "**lead to**" is similar to ..... .  
a. recycle      b. protect      c. damage      d. cause

#### b. Answer the following questions :

- What is the best title for this passage ?  
.....

- Which country recycles the most ?  
.....

6. How do you think we can help solve the problem of rubbish ?

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** The students ..... 15 bags of rubbish to clean the riverbank.  
a. damaged      b. collected      c. won      d. bought  
(Sharkia - West Zagazig 2023 / Dakahlia - Sinbellawin 2024)
2. **WB** Global Recycling Day is a/an ..... in March. (Gharbia - Kotour 2022)  
a. place      b. event      c. tour      d. title
3. .... the bed and relax. You look so tired.  
a. Lie on      b. Look at      c. Stay      d. Sleep
4. Water has a great ..... in our life.  
a. suggestion      b. location      c. importance      d. rubbish
5. I made many ..... for the project and they all agreed to them.  
a. problems      b. suggestions  
c. celebrations      d. competitions
6. I ..... those trousers for a larger size.  
a. hoped      b. swapped      c. solved      d. responded
7. I went to the ..... to buy some vegetables for my mum.  
a. museum      b. baker's  
c. market      d. nature reserve
8. Which is ..... your car or my father's car ? (Beni Suef 2023)  
a. small      b. smaller      c. the smallest      d. more small
9. The black car is ..... the blue one.  
a. as expensive as      b. like expensive  
c. as expensive      d. more expensive
10. Lunch ..... prepared by my mother as she was very ill.  
a. doesn't      b. isn't      c. aren't      d. don't  
(Dakahlia - Meet Ghamr 2024)

### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. That suggestion is ..... (making) by Ahmed.
2. Homework ..... (write) by Mona every day. (Dakahlia - Sherbin 2023)
3. **WB** A bike is not as ..... (fast) a car.
4. **SB** Air pollution is ..... (bad) now than it was before.

### 5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on :

"How to use less water"

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

.....

.....

.....

.....

(Qalyoubia - Al-Khanka 2023)

## Extracting information

تخبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [استخراج معلومات] **Extracting information** وهنا تحتاج لإستخراج معلومات من النص.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

Global Recycling Day is an event in March. It aims to remind people of the importance of recycling things including paper, plastic, metal, water and even gas and oil. It started in 2018 and there are now recycling events in many different countries.

• When is Global Recycling Day ?

Or What month is Global Recycling Day in ?

.....

**التحدي** قد تجد صعوبة في استخراج معلومة من النص.

**مفتاح الحل** عند قراءة الفقرة ركز على التفاصيل الموجودة في الفقرة.

## A place you live in

تخبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

Fady is asking Amir about his city :

**Fady :** Where do you live, Amir ?

**Amir :** (1) .....

**Fady :** (2) .....

**Amir :** Minya is located near the Nile.

**Fady :** (3) .....

**Amir :** It is famous for its delicious black honey.

**Fady :** What is honey made from ?

**Amir :** (4) .....

**Fady :** I like sugar. Do many tourists visit your city ?

**Amir :** (5) ..... They like visiting it.

**التحدي** تريد [إجراء حوار عن المكان الذي تعيش فيه] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

**مفتاح الحل** يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بينك وبين الشخص الموجه له السؤال.

# 3

## Correction notes

- الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

### Review

◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

(صفة قصيرة) + er + than	يضاف للصفة القصيرة [er] وبعدها [than] للمقارنة
more / less (صفة طويلة) + than	نضع more أو less قبل الصفة الطويلة وبعدها than
(not) as + (صفة) + as	للتعبير عن التساوي أو عدم التساوي في صفة
am / is / are → PP. التصريف الثالث	المضارع البسيط في صيغة المبني للمجهول تبدأ بنائب الفاعل ثم am / is / are وبعدهم التصريف الثالث ونستخدم am / is / are كأفعال مساعدة في النفي والسؤال

### Learn

◀ تعلم

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 Lots of cotton is ... [grow] in the area.	grown	الجملة مبنية للمجهول لذا نضع التصريف الثالث [P.P] بعد is
2 The museum .... [visit] by lots of people.	is visited	نستخدم صيغة المبني للمجهول لأن الجملة تبدأ بنائب فاعل
3 Droughts are .... [more] serious as floods.	as	نستخدم [as] للتعبير عن التساوي في الصفة
4 Egypt is ... [big] than Jordan.	bigger	نستخدم صفة مقارنة لوجود than

### Practice

◀ تدرب

◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة Write the Reason :

1 Ice cream is .... [most] delicious than cake.	more	.....
2 Football is not ... [difficult] as boxing.	as difficult	.....
3 My city .... [know] for its delicious sweets.	is known	.....
4 Port Said ... [connect] to Suez.	is connected	.....

◀ Write the Correction :

◀ اكتب التصحيح

1 Many fish .... [catch] in the sea every day.	.....	نستخدم صيغة المبني للمجهول
2 The desert is ... [not beautiful] as the coast.	.....	نستخدم [not as] وبعدها الصفة للتعبير عن عدم التساوي بين اثنين في صفة
3 Figs are ... [most] delicious than chocolate.	.....	نستخدم more لوجود than مع صفة طويلة



# Review

## on unit 6

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

### مراجعة عامة على Unit 6 في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking														
تلوث الهواء air pollution جفاف drought فيضان flood مخلفات rubbish تلوث الماء water pollution خط بياني line graph يذوب - ينصهر melt عرض - تقديم presentation قناة مائية canal قطن cotton يقع في (be) located in الشعاب المرجانية coral reefs نشرة صوتية podcast إعادة تدوير recycling البيئة environment Red Sea Coast ساحل البحر الأحمر ملامح للبيئة green درجة الحرارة temperature	<b>1. Present simple passive :</b> ١. صيغة المبني للمجهول في زمن المضارع البسيط : <table><tr><th>Active</th><th>Passive</th></tr><tr><td>- People <b>cook</b> eggs in a big pan.</td><td>- Eggs <b>are cooked</b> in a big pan.</td></tr><tr><td>- She doesn't <b>send</b> this email.</td><td>- This email <b>isn't sent</b> by her.</td></tr><tr><td>- Do they <b>eat</b> special foods at the festivals ?</td><td>- Are special foods <b>eaten</b> at the festivals ?</td></tr></table> <b>2. Comparatives :</b> ٢. المقارنة بين اثنين في صفة : <table><tr><th>Long adjectives</th><th>Short adjectives</th></tr><tr><td>- Maths is <b>more difficult than</b> English.</td><td>- She is <b>taller than</b> her mother.</td></tr><tr><td>- Football is <b>less dangerous than</b> mountain climbing.</td><td>- He is <b>shorter than</b> his brother.</td></tr></table>	Active	Passive	- People <b>cook</b> eggs in a big pan.	- Eggs <b>are cooked</b> in a big pan.	- She doesn't <b>send</b> this email.	- This email <b>isn't sent</b> by her.	- Do they <b>eat</b> special foods at the festivals ?	- Are special foods <b>eaten</b> at the festivals ?	Long adjectives	Short adjectives	- Maths is <b>more difficult than</b> English.	- She is <b>taller than</b> her mother.	- Football is <b>less dangerous than</b> mountain climbing.	- He is <b>shorter than</b> his brother.	<b>Suggesting solutions to a problem.</b> اقترح حلول لمشكلة ما  Dina : Look at all the plastic water bottles in the rubbish bin. <b>The problem is</b> that we use too many of them.  Leila : <b>How can we</b> stop people using them ?  Dina : <b>Why don't we</b> ask people to use them again ?  Leila : <b>How could</b> we do that ?  Dina : People could take home the bottles, wash them, and bring them to school the next day.  Leila : <b>That's an interesting idea!</b> We can see what the teacher thinks.
Active	Passive															
- People <b>cook</b> eggs in a big pan.	- Eggs <b>are cooked</b> in a big pan.															
- She doesn't <b>send</b> this email.	- This email <b>isn't sent</b> by her.															
- Do they <b>eat</b> special foods at the festivals ?	- Are special foods <b>eaten</b> at the festivals ?															
Long adjectives	Short adjectives															
- Maths is <b>more difficult than</b> English.	- She is <b>taller than</b> her mother.															
- Football is <b>less dangerous than</b> mountain climbing.	- He is <b>shorter than</b> his brother.															

## Questions collected from previous exams

تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The smoke of old cars causes ..... pollution.  
a. water    b. plant    c. soil    d. air  
(Gharbia - El Santa 2024)
2. .... change affects the environment badly.  
a. Weather    b. Climate    c. Rain    d. Snow  
(Sharkia - Mashool 2023)
3. Tourists shouldn't ..... the environment.  
a. clean    b. save    c. damage    d. tidy  
(Matrouh - Mersa Matrouh 2022)
4. Alexandria is ..... in the North of Egypt.  
a. built    b. collected    c. located    d. helped  
(Alexandria - Al-Anfoushi 2023)
5. Global Recycling Day aims to ..... people of the importance of recycling. (Cairo - El Salam 2024)  
a. remind    b. remember    c. forget    d. remain
6. .... is a serious problem that affects badly on the environment. (Sharkia - Belbis 2023)  
a. Population    b. Pollution    c. Snow    d. Rain
7. It's important to be careful ..... your rubbish.  
a. of    b. with    c. in    d. at  
(Cairo - Nasr City 2023)
8. The car is ..... than the bike. (Sharkia - Kafr Sakr 2022)  
a. fast    b. faster    c. the fastest    d. more fast

9. This house ..... every year. (Minia - Samalot 2023)  
a. paint    b. is painted    c. is painting    d. painted
  10. This is the book ..... I bought yesterday.  
a. who    b. which    c. where    d. when  
(Sharkia - Abo Kabir 2022)
- ### 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
1. What is ..... (collect) by farmers today?  
(Sharkia - Hehia 2024)
  2. This jacket is ..... (good) than your jacket.  
(Suez - Souh Suez 2022)
  3. Is London ..... (cold) than Alexandria?  
(Menofia - menof 2024)
  4. Electric cars are ..... (greenest) than petrol cars.  
(Giza - Kirdasa 2024)
  5. Air pollution is the ..... (bad) kind of pollution.  
(Beni Suef - Biba 2024)
  6. Omar isn't taller ..... (then) Ahmed.  
(Assuit - Dairut 2023)
  7. Damietta is ..... (know) for its beautiful furniture.  
(Damietta - Zarka 2024)
  8. Ahmed isn't as ..... (faster) as Ali.  
(Beni Suef - Nasser 2023)
  9. Your homework isn't ..... (do) today.  
(Sharkia - Hehia 2022)
  10. This decision is ..... (make) by Ahmed.  
(Gharbia - Samanod 2023)

### A. Listening

قم بحل اختبار تراكمي في الملحق



#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Minya is located near the .....  
a. Nile                      b. sea                      c. bank                      d. hospital
2. Minya is known for its delicious .....  
a. figs                      b. potatoes                      c. black honey                      d. apples
3. There are many ancient ..... in Minya.  
a. bags                      b. forms                      c. monuments                      d. stores
4. Minya is very .....  
a. ugly                      b. beautiful                      c. good                      d. bad

### B. Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Reem and Aya are thinking of solutions to a serious problem.

Reem : I see you are thinking about something.

Aya : That's true. (1) .....

Reem : (2) ..... ?

Aya : The problem is that we all use too much water. Are you following me ?

Reem : (3) ..... (4) ..... ?

Aya : We can recycle water.

Reem : How can we recycle water ?

Aya : We can use water from washing to water the plants.

Reem : (5) ..... ! The plants would like that.

Aya : Let's share ideas with our friends to find other solutions.

(Gharbia - Samanod 2023)

### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Tourism is very important for Egypt which is known for its ancient monuments and rich history. Every winter, thousands of tourists come to Egypt from all parts of the world. They come from Europe, Asia and Africa to spend their holiday in our great country. Those tourists come to enjoy

the good weather of Egypt. They enjoy our beaches at Sharm El Sheikh and Hurghada. Most of them visit the Egyptian museum in Cairo to see Tutankhamen and his jewellery. When it is very cold in their countries, they like to visit Luxor and Aswan to enjoy the warm weather there. They like to see the ancient monuments and temples. They also visit the pyramids at Giza.

(Beni Suef - Ihnasiya 2024)

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the .....  
a. sunshine    b. weather    c. museum    d. beach
- Tourists visit the ..... at Giza.  
a. the Egyptian museum    b. pyramids  
c. temples    d. beaches
- The weather is ..... in Luxor and Aswan in winter.  
a. warm    b. very cold    c. bad    d. windy

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?

.....

5. Where do tourists come from ?

.....

6. Why do you think tourism is important to Egypt ?

.....

## D. Vocabulary & Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- The Red Sea coast has ..... reefs and lots of important wildlife.  
a. historical    b. coral    c. art    d. cultural

(Alexandria - Gomrok 2024)

- Living in the country is more ..... than in the city.  
a. noisy    b. expensive    c. relaxing    d. crowded

- I ..... a room with my sister.  
a. share    b. divide    c. fill    d. fall

(Minia - Mallawy 2023)

- The meal I had was really ..... I enjoyed it a lot.  
a. terrible    b. expensive    c. salty    d. delicious

- Luxor is ..... in the south of Egypt.  
a. grown    b. located    c. damaged    d. stayed

(Damietta 2022)

- The ..... made the whole city covered with water.  
a. drought    b. volcano    c. flood    d. pollution

7. Air pollution is bad for our ..... .  
a. environment   b. temperature   c. culture   d. situation
8. **WB** A bike is not as fast ..... a car.  
a. as   b. than   c. that   d. so
9. **SB** Australia is not as ..... Africa. *(Qalyobia Toukh 2023)*  
a. hotter   b. hot   c. hot as   d. hotter than
10. Plastic ..... nowadays in many countries to help the environment. *(Matrouh - Mersa Matrouh 2024)*  
a. recycle   b. recycles   c. is recycled   d. are recycled

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. The city ..... (know) for its beautiful buildings. *(Minia – Beni Mazar 2024)*
2. Mona is ..... (noisy) than Rana. *(Dakahlia - Meet Ghamr 2023)*
3. **SB** The canal is ..... (polluted) than it was before.
4. Alexandria is ..... (far) than Mansoura from Cairo. *(Fayoum - Abshwy 2022)*

## E. Writing

**6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words :**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Tamer about recycling at home. Your name is Waheed and your email address is waheed@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is tamer@gmail.com.

*(Cairo – Al Waili 2024)*

## 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Port Said is located in the north- ..... of Egypt.  
a. south    b. east    c. west    d. north
- The city is known for its .....  
a. temples    b. pyramids  
c. ships    d. delicious sweet

## 2. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Dina is asking Elham about the Red Crescent.

Dina : Hello! Elham.

Elham : Hello! Dina.

Dina : Have you heard about the Red Crescent?

Elham : (1) ..... It is one of the most important charities in the world.

Dina : Who helps in this charity?

Elham : (2) .....

Dina : (3) ?

Elham : Volunteers help ill and injured people when there is a natural disaster.

## 3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ..... rubbish is good for the environment.  
a. Doing    b. Recycling    c. Making    d. Cycling
- The letter ..... by Youssef.  
a. write    b. writes    c. is written    d. wrote
- Black honey is made from .....  
a. wheat    b. cheese    c. sugar    d. oil
- The smoke of old cars causes ..... pollution  
a. water    b. air    c. soil    d. plant
- Is Salma ..... than Sama?  
a. tall    b. tallest    c. taller    d. the tallest

## 4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last weekend, ten students from Class 3-A helped to clean up the part of the riverbank near the city centre. The students collected 15 bags of rubbish.

Their teacher said the students were sad to find so much rubbish. He said, "There were lots of plastic bags and bottles. One of the students said, "We even found an old shoe! It was great to clean the riverbank, but we need to teach people to be more careful with their rubbish. "Rubbish in the river damages the wildlife.

## a. Answer the following questions:

- What is the best title for the passage?  
.....
- How much rubbish did the students collect?  
.....
- What do you think of the students?  
.....

## b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- They found an old .....  
a. bag    b. jacket    c. shoe    d. shoes
- What does the underlined pronoun we refer to?  
a. people    b. teachers    c. parents    d. students

## 5. Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- today - hotter - Is - yesterday - than?  
.....
- located - Egypt - of - north - is - Alexandria - in - the.  
.....
- clean - the canal - want - make - The volunteers - to.  
.....
- do - use - day - What - you - water - for - every?  
.....

## 6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about:

"Recycling"

.....  
.....  
.....

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

**Essam is telling Maher what he did last weekend.**

**Maher:** What did you do last weekend ?

**Essam:** (1) .....

- a. I played football.
- b. I went swimming.
- c. I went to the museum.
- d. I visited my uncle.

**Maher:** Does your brother love playing football ?

**Essam:** (2) .....

- a. No, she isn't.
- b. Yes, we do.
- c. Yes, he does.
- d. No, I don't.

**Maher:** (3) .....

- a. When did you play tennis ?
- b. Where did you play football ?
- c. Why did you play tennis ?
- d. How was the match ?

**Essam:** We played in the club.

**Maher:** Did you enjoy playing ?

**Essam:** (4) .....

- a. Yes, we will.
- b. No, I don't.
- c. No, he didn't.
- d. Yes, we did.

**Maher:** (5) .....

- a. Can I play with you ?
- b. Were they at the club ?
- c. Have you got any hobbies ?
- d. Did you have lunch ?

**Essam :** Sure. We will be happy.

- Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

6. Cotton clothes ..... (sell) all over the world.

- a. sells
- b. sold
- c. selling
- d. are sold

7. My favourite city ..... (locate) in the mountains.

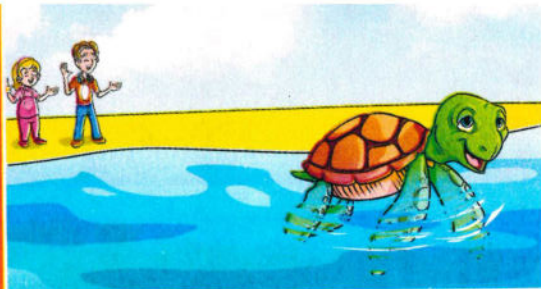
- a. is located
- b. located
- c. locats
- d. were located

8. This new phone is ..... (bad) than my old one !

- a. worse
- b. worst
- c. badly
- d. the worst

9. Maths is ..... (difficult) than Arabic.

- a. difficult more
- b. difficult as
- c. more difficult
- d. the difficult



## Listening

## • on lesson 1 SB page 64

**Mrs Saki** : Good afternoon, Luxor Museum, how can I help you ?

**Mr El-Baz** : Hello, I'm a teacher and I want to bring my class to visit the museum next week. Can you tell me what time you are open, please ?

**Mrs Saki** : Of course. We are open every day from 9 a.m. to 2 p.m. and then 5 p.m. to 9 p.m.

**Mr El-Baz** : Can I buy tickets at the museum ?

**Mrs Saki** : Yes, certainly. Or you can buy them online before your visit.

**Mr El-Baz** : How much are the tickets ?

**Mrs Saki** : They're 120 pounds for adults and 60 pounds for children and students.

**Mr El-Baz** : OK, thank you. Can you tell me where the museum is exactly?

**Mrs Saki** : It's located in the north of Luxor on Corniche EL Nil.

**Mr El-Baz** : Thank you so much for your help !

**Mrs Saki** : You're welcome. Bye !

## • on lesson 1 WB page 116

## one

**Woman** : Good morning, how can I help you ?

**Man** : Hello, I'd like to know some of the things I can see and do if I visit today.

**Woman** : Yes, you can usually see lots of **wildlife**<sup>(1)</sup>, or you could go **scuba diving**<sup>(2)</sup>.

## two

**Man 1** : Hello, how can I help you today ?

**Man 2** : Good morning. Can you tell me how much a ticket **costs**<sup>(3)</sup> ?

**Man 1** : Of course. **Adults**<sup>(4)</sup> are 160 pounds and children are 80 pounds.

**Man 2** : Can I buy the tickets **online**<sup>(5)</sup> ?

**Man 1** : Yes, and the tickets are **cheaper**<sup>(6)</sup> on the **museum website**<sup>(7)</sup>, too.

(1) الحياة البرية (2) الغطس باستخدام أنبوب التنفس (3) يتكلف (4) البالغين (5) متصل بالإنترنت (6) أرخص (7) موقع المتحف

three

**Woman 1:** Good afternoon, how can I help ?**Woman 2:** I'd like to know what time you close today.**Woman 1:** Certainly. We close at 3 p.m, so if you want to visit the **castle**<sup>(8)</sup> today, you'll have to get here soon.**Woman 2:** Thank you for your help.

(8) القلعة



## Reading

on lesson 1 SB page 64

### A trip to Luxor Museum

By Hamid

Last week, I went to Luxor Museum with my class. The museum is further from my home than our school. We were travelling for a long time! We arrived at 10.30 am.

As we were walking into the museum, we saw some big **statues**<sup>(1)</sup>. My favourite was the statue of Ramses II. There were also rings and **necklaces**<sup>(2)</sup> that once **belonged to**<sup>(3)</sup> rich Egyptian families. There were a lot of small coins from the same time, too.

The museum has some very old objects. My favourite objects were the **metal bowls**<sup>(4)</sup> from the fourteenth **century**<sup>(5)</sup>. The oldest objects in the museum were the tools. Some were made of metal and some were made of stone.

While I was reading the information, my friend found a tool that was 10.000 years old.

(1) تماثيل (2) قلادات / عقود (3) تخص / تنتهي إلى (4) أوعية من المعدن (5) قرن (١٠٠٠ سنة)

on lesson 2 SB page 65

### Beach rules

- Don't swim when the weather is bad.
- Swim near the beach, where we can see you.
- Wear a hat between 11 am and 3 pm.
- No loud music !
- Put your rubbish in the bins.
- Only play ball games in the park area.



► If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى

● ممتاز  
● جيد جداً  
● جيد  
● غير جيد

### 3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Tanta is ..... in the north of Egypt.  
a. taken b. located  
c. connected d. protected
2. We should ..... damaging the environment.  
a. protect b. stop  
c. continue d. cause
3. Muslims pray at the .....  
a. cinemas b. stadiums  
c. mosques d. churches
4. Which of these can you not usually put in a recycling bin ?  
a. Bottles b. Paper  
c. Water d. Metal cans
5. You can watch sports matches at the .....  
a. school b. theatre c. stadium d. cinema
6. You can find a lot of ..... at museums.  
a. statues b. fruits c. vegetables d. plays
7. .... are buildings which are not complete.  
a. Pots b. Ruins c. Towers d. Statues
8. While ..... in the park, it rained.  
a. plays b. played c. play d. playing
9. Saudi Arabia is not as wet ..... Jordan.  
a. so b. as c. since d. for
10. This is Mr Ali ..... teaches us English.  
a. where b. which c. who d. when

### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلقك وانظر إلى الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where is Port Said located ? - It is in the ..... of Egypt.  
a. north-east b. south-east  
c. west-east d. south
2. What is it known for ? - Its .....  
a. cars b. ships c. boats d. rockets
3. Ships come and go from around .....  
a. Cairo b. the world  
c. the coast d. Alexandria
4. Many fish are caught in the sea near .....  
a. Alexandria b. Luxor  
c. the Suez Canal d. Matrouh

### 2. Complete the following dialogue :

A. Nasser and Omar are talking at the school playground.

Nasser : Do you have to study this evening, Omar ?

Omar : (1) .....

Nasser : (2) .....

Omar : Because I have a geography test.

Nasser : (3) .....

Omar : Tomorrow.

Nasser : It's nearly the end of the break. Which subject do you have ?

Omar : (4) .....

Nasser : Do you like science ?

Omar : (5) .....

### A. Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Ali is from .....  
 a. Al-Fayoum      b. El-Kanater      c. El-Tahrir      d. El-Minia
2. Who does he live with ? – His .....  
 a. sister      b. uncle      c. brother      d. aunt
3. Ali plays ..... with his brother.  
 a. tennis      b. computer games      c. football      d. chess
4. What is Ali's favourite subject ? – .....  
 a. Arabic      b. Science      c. English      d. Art

### B. Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

*Omar is telling Walid about his mother who was ill.*

Omar : My mother didn't go to work today.

Walid : (1) ..... ?

Omar : Because she's ill.

Walid : (2) ..... ?

Omar : (3) ..... ?

Walid : Yes, and he gave her some medicine.

Omar : What did the doctor advise her to do ?

Walid : (4) ..... ?

Omar : I hope she will get better soon.

Walid : (5) ..... ?

### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Hi, everyone. Today's interview is with my best friend Ali and his family. There are five people in his family, his mum, his dad, his brother and his sister. He usually gets up at 6.30 and helps his mum make breakfast. His brother Abdullah helps, too.

Ali's dad starts work very early, so he leaves home before they get up. That's why he doesn't have breakfast with them. He eats when he gets to work. Ali goes to school with his brother and sister by bus. Ali's favourite subject is English.

He often listens to music with his sister Sara. Ali and his dad sometimes play **chess**. His brother Abdullah watches TV. His mum is a famous dentist and **she** usually reads short stories.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- The underlined pronoun "**she**" refers to Ali's .....  
 a. sister                      b. aunt                      c. mother                      d. cousin
- The underlined word "**chess**" in the passage is a kind of .....  
 a. games                      b. subjects                      c. transports                      d. foods
- Ali's mum is a/an .....  
 a. teacher                      b. dentist                      c. engineer                      d. nurse

**b. Answer the following questions :**

- Give a suitable title for the passage.  
 .....

- Who does Ali live with ?  
 .....

- Why do you think Ali's dad doesn't have breakfast with the family ?  
 .....

## D. Vocabulary & Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- 1. A ..... is a place where we can have picnics. (Sharkia - Kafr-Sakr 2024)  
 a. cinema                      b. park                      c. mark                      d. bark
- 2. There is a nice ..... in my room. I sit on it to read books before sleeping. (Qalyoubia - El-Obour 2023)  
 a. wardrobe                      b. cupboard                      c. armchair                      d. drawer
- 3. Roberta's family home in the city is big and .....  
 a. terrible                      b. silly                      c. poor                      d. attractive
- 4. He puts his clothes in a big chest of .....  
 a. sofas                      b. prisons                      c. drawers                      d. lamps

- 5. She felt ..... when her father was taken to hospital.  
a. terrible      b. happy      c. funny      d. enjoyable
- 6. My daily ..... is interesting. I enjoy doing different things.  
a. meal      b. routine      c. match      d. drink
- 7. Street-food sellers put their food ..... in the best places.  
a. still      b. stall      c. stale      d. sale
- 8. We ..... go to school on holidays.  
a. always      b. usually      c. sometimes      d. never
- 9. On Saturdays, I usually ..... time with my cousins.  
a. spend      b. spends      c. to spend      d. spending
- 10. **A:** ..... do they run ?  
**B:** They run quickly. (Behira - Damanhour 2024)  
a. How      b. What      c. When      d. Who

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- 1. The train goes ..... (fastest). (Cairo - Dar El Salam 2023)
- 2. She is still ..... (do) her homework.
- 3. Fady ..... (not wear) a jacket today because it is very hot.
- 4. The street-food seller usually ..... (make) falafel.

## E. Writing

### 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

**"Your typical school day"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

### A. Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى ماعلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- The Ancient Egyptians used ..... for making food.  
a. dots                      b. pots                      c. tables                      d. mirrors
- The pots were made of .....  
a. plastic                      b. metal                      c. clay                      d. copper
- They brought clay from the .....  
a. Red Sea                      b. River Nile                      c. Lake Nasser                      d. Canal
- Using pots and bowls is .....  
a. bad                      b. unhealthy                      c. healthy                      d. ugly

### B. Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

**Ayman asks Ashraf about the importance of rubbish collectors.**

**Ayman :** What do you think of rubbish collectors ?

**Ashraf :** (1) .....

**Ayman :** Heroes ! (2) ..... ?

**Ashraf :** Because they do something very useful.

**Ayman :** (3) ..... ?

**Ashraf :** The city would be terrible without them.

**Ayman :** Are street cleaners important ?

**Ashraf :** (4) .....

**Ayman :** What should we do to help them ?

**Ashraf :** (5) .....

### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The Ancient Egyptians had a great culture and great history. They were the first to make some important objects. Objects from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. In Ancient

Egypt, many people used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes. This was not just to make them **look good** : the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects. The mirrors were made of metal and had interesting designs. Also, the Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food. **These objects** were made of clay, which came from the River Nile. On the other hand, the Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like senet. Senet boxes have 30 squares. This box is made of wood and is about 3,500 years old. Some people didn't have senet boxes, but they still played the game. They drew the squares on the floor.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- The Ancient Egyptians used ..... to paint around their eyes.  
a. boards      b. mirrors      c. tables      d. cards
- The underlined words "**look good**" means being .....  
a. ugly      b. beautiful      c. tall      d. happy
- Senet boxes have thirty .....  
a. squares      b. triangles      c. circles      d. rectangles

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?  
.....

5. Why do you think people drew squares on the floor ?  
.....

6. What do the underlined words "**These objects**" refer to ?  
.....

## D. Vocabulary & Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- Sameera Moussa wanted to use nuclear ..... in medicine.  
a. competitions      b. treatments      c. nations      d. problems
- A/An ..... is someone who works for no money.  
a. volunteer      b. engineer      c. teacher      d. patient
- A terrible event, such as an earthquake, is a .....  
a. volcano      b. flood      c. disaster      d. party
- Ali's uncle works for a big oil ..... in the UAE.  
a. work      b. company      c. job      d. office

5. Bees and ants are .....  
 a. animals      b. plants      c. birds      d. insects
6. This chemical helps to ..... mosquitos away.  
 a. put      b. give      c. keep      d. run
7. The Ancient Egyptian doctors ..... down their ideas.  
 a. put      b. made      c. wrote      d. took
8. My grandfather used to ..... football when he was young.  
 a. plays      b. play      c. played      d. playing
9. When we sat down for a picnic, lots of runners ..... through the park.  
 a. ran      b. runs      c. were running      d. run
10. They moved to a bigger flat a year later ..... I was born.  
 a. while      b. ago      c. when      d. from

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. Dina ..... (not use) give money to a charity, but now she does.
2. As Karim ..... (take) photos of the animals, he lost his phone.
3. While Mona was playing tennis, she ..... (hurts) her arm.
4. .... (Be) they happy at yesterday's party ?

### E. Writing

**6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words :**

To your friend Khalid to tell him about "What we should do to help the environment". Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is khalid@gmail.com.

The image shows a screenshot of a web-based email composition interface. At the top, there's a title bar that says 'New message'. Below it is a navigation bar with back, forward, and refresh icons, along with a status indicator 'Secure https:'. The main area contains three labeled input fields: 'From:', 'To:', and 'Subject:'. Below these fields is a large text area for the email body, which is currently empty except for a few horizontal lines.

### Unit 1

#### General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

##### "What I usually do on holidays"

Holidays are a good chance for me and my family to relax. We enjoy our time so much. We prefer travelling to Hurgada or Alexandria on holidays. We can practise many activities there. I spend most of my time swimming and playing football. At night, we like sitting on a café with a good view of the sea. The whole family have lunch together every day. My father prefers having fish, but I like having meat instead.

#### General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

##### "A description of my new house"

I'm so happy as we have just moved to our new house. We have a large house. It consists of three floors. My brother shared a room with me in the old house. Now, I have my own room alone. My room has a good view from the window. Also, my father made a large room for reading books. It has many books. My grandparents live with us on the first floor. I enjoy playing chess with my grandfather in the garden of the house every morning. We are so happy.

#### Test on unit 1

From : ali@gmail.com  
To : tamer@gmail.com  
Subject : Describing my bedroom

Dear Tamer,

I'm happy to write this email to you. I want to tell you about my bedroom. It looks beautiful. I have a new bed. It's comfortable and big. I have also a nice desk to study on. It has three drawers to put my things in. My bedroom includes a small bathroom with a nice basin to wash. Also, I have a wardrobe on the right of the bed. When I open the window, I can see the beautiful view of the Nile. Tell me about your bedroom. Write me soon.

Yours,  
Ali

### Unit 2

#### General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From : hady@gmail.com  
To : ahmed@gmail.com  
Subject : Night workers

Dear Ahmed,

It pleases me to write this email to you. We all should respect night workers. There are many hard jobs such as nurses, call-centre workers and policemen. Nurses have to stay up late at night in hospitals. They should look after patients all night. They behave kindly to patients and help them to recover. Call-centre workers also answer phone calls from people and help them. Also, policemen are very important for our life. They make sure that people are safe all night. Night workers are very useful for the community. See you soon.

Yours,  
Hady

#### General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

##### "Making new friends"

Making new friends helps us a lot in our life. When you move to a new place or a new school, you can make new friends. They help you make right decisions and have new experiences. It's important to choose your new friends carefully. Good friends will help you in your life. Don't make friends with people who are older than you. They might think in a different way. You can ask your parents or teachers when you want to make new friends with people you don't know. Friends can help you improve your character well.

#### General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

From : samir@gmail.com  
To : ali@gmail.com  
Subject : Congratulating on success

Dear Ali,

How are things ? It pleases me so much to congratulate you on your success. How are you and your family ? I'm so proud of

## Answers

your achievement. It's great to come first in your exams. I want to ask you about your favourite subject and how you plan your time to reach your goal. I hope to succeed and come first next year. I'm going to visit you next Friday to talk about your achievement and play together. See you soon.

Yours,  
Samir

### ◎ Test on unit 2

#### **"What teenagers should do and what they shouldn't do"**

Teenagers should use their time in a good way. There are some tips that can help teenagers to feel happy and to achieve their goals. They should sleep enough time at least 8 hours. Most of them like staying up late, but it isn't useful for their health. It's important for them to make new friends to be happy. They can travel to open places. Nature makes them happier. It's important for them to remember the good things in their life.

## Unit 3

### ◎ General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From : nour@gmail.com  
To : maha@gmail.com  
Subject : My favourite hero

Dear Maha,

I want to tell you about my hero. He's Mohammed Salah. He is a great footballer. He worked very hard and trained a lot to achieve his goal as a famous footballer all over the world. When he was young, he had to travel for long hours to train. He played in Egypt and then he moved to Europe. He played for different teams such as Basil, Rome and Liverpool. He has scored many goals. Salah is a good person. He has a big smile and loves all people. Write to me about your hero.

Yours,  
Nour

### ◎ General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

#### **"Our body"**

We should keep our bodies healthy. Healthy food, enough sleep and doing sports are very important for our bodies. We should eat different kinds of healthy food to build our bodies. Sports are the most important thing. Young people should practise any sports they prefer. Parents should advise children to look after their bodies to grow well. Also, they should warn them of bad habits like watching too much TV, eating unhealthy food and sleeping late.

### ◎ General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

#### **"Rubbish collectors"**

There are some jobs we can't live without them. Rubbish collectors, for example, are very important. The city would be terrible without them. They clean streets, parks and different places around us. We should respect them. We should teach our children to help and keep places clean to help them. They have to work in different places and different times. People should put their rubbish in bins to make their job easier. Rubbish collectors do a great job for us. They are really heroes in our community.

### ◎ Test on unit 3

#### **"Dr Magdy Yacoub"**

We are very proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but his family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy became a doctor, too. He travelled abroad and achieved a great success as a heart surgeon. He helped many people to get better. He is very famous for his charity work. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started his charity for ill children in Aswan. All people like him in Egypt. He is my hero.

## Unit 4

### ◎ General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From : hussien@gmail.com  
To : omar@gmail.com  
Subject : An amazing day out

Dear Omar,

I visited Alexandria with my cousins last year. Alexandria is a fantastic city. It has some old buildings. I enjoyed visiting Qaitbay Citadel. The view of the sea was fantastic. I tried fishing in the early mornings. There are a lot of activities that can be done there. Alexandria Library is very exciting. My cousins prefer swimming in the sea in the early mornings. The weather is very nice. Also, there are very good and famous restaurants. It was a great fun.

Yours,  
Hussien

### General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

#### "A visit to the museum"

My visit to the Egyptian Museum last mid-year holiday was very good and useful. The Egyptian Museum is in Cairo. It's full of valuable statues and gold objects. Tourists like visiting it so much. I enjoyed a lot there. There are more than one floor. The guide told us not to touch these objects to keep it safe for our country. I took many photos with some tourists from all over the world. I was very kind to tourists and tried to help them to get around the museum.

### General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

From : sherif@gmail.com  
To : khalid@gmail.com  
Subject : Cleopatra's Needle

Dear Khalid,

Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it. You can see this needle next to the River Thames in London, England. It's more than 20 metres high and weighs about 200,000 kilograms. It's about 3500 years old. The British made a special ship for the stone in 1877. The Needle of Cleopatra is a great monument.

Yours,  
Sherif

### Test on unit 4

#### "A historic place I visited"

I like visiting historic places so much. I'm very interested in the ancient history. Petra in Jordan is my favourite place. It dates to 300 BCE. It's more than two thousand years old. You must buy a ticket before visiting it. The views from some of the higher places are fantastic. The guide warned us to be careful as it is an ancient place. I enjoyed a lot there. Tourists from all over the world like visiting Petra.

## Unit 5

### General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

#### "Jobs to do at home"

I always help my family at home. Every day, I make my bed. I share a room with my brother. We usually put away our clothes and books together. I help mum with shopping. I take out the rubbish daily in the evening. I sometimes make my brother breakfast when mum is at work. At the weekends, I help my dad with the jobs he likes to do in the house. I love my family. We all work together to make our home a nice place.

### General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

#### "Charity work I like most"

Charity work is very important for people who need help. My favourite charity jobs are cleaning my area and helping the disabled. I work as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our local area. At the weekend, we pick up the rubbish. Also, I visit a home for old people every week to help them. There are many people who need to be looked after. I'm very happy when I help them. I like talking to them. Some of the disabled are clever at some games. I respect them so much.

### General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

From : samy@gmail.com  
To : hany@gmail.com  
Subject : Random acts of kindness

## Answers

Dear Hany,

I'm very pleased to write this email to you. How are you ? I decided to do one act of kindness every day for three days. First, I bought my grandfather some of his favourite books from the bookshop on my way to school. He was very surprised, but he was happy and thanked me. After that, I helped an old woman to cross the street. Finally, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to an old poor man on our street corner. Tell me about acts of kindness you do.

Yours,  
Samy

### ◎ Test on unit 5

#### "Helping others"

Helping others is a great thing, especially people who need help such as the poor and the disabled. We should teach young people and children how to look after them. You can help others in your local area or by working for charities. I prefer working for charities as their work is organised. Some people can help by donating money to these charities. Others can give some food or clothes to the poor. I prefer to help the disabled.

## Unit 6

### ◎ General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

#### "The effect of climate change on the environment"

Climate change has bad effects on our planet. The rise of temperature can cause serious problems. Climate change in Australia, for example, makes the weather hotter and drier. More droughts mean worse fires than ever before. Also, climate change can affect badly on ice on top of mountains. When much ice melts, it causes floods. We should help the environment and stop this rise of temperature. Some places on Earth are in a great danger because of climate change.

### ◎ General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

#### "My home city"

My home city is Damietta. It's located in the north of Egypt. It has a famous port on the Mediterranean Sea. My city is famous for making furniture. There are many workshops there. Carpenters in Damietta are very clever. They sell their products all over the world. Damietta is also famous for sweets which are very delicious. Young people there are proud of their city. You can enjoy the beautiful view of the Nile and the sea at night. It's very beautiful and interesting.

### ◎ General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

#### "How to use less water"

Saving water is very important. We should learn how to use less water. Parents and teachers should show the importance of water to children. There are many ways that can help us to save water. We should learn, for example, how to recycle water. We can use the water from washing to water the plants. Also, we can have short showers to save water. Finally, we can mend all the damaged taps at homes, parks and streets. Some countries use modern ways to water plants.

### ◎ Test on unit 6

From : waheed@gmail.com  
To : tamer@gmail.com  
Subject : Recycling at home

Dear Tamer,

How are things ? I want to tell you that recycling is very important. A lot of countries make use of recycling things. We can put a rubbish bin in every room. Also, we can separate things that are made of metal from plastic things. Rubbish should be collected every week and goes to special places in the city. We can ask ourselves if these things can be recycled or not. There are many things such as bottles that can be used again at home after washing and cleaning them.

Yours,  
Waheed

# Listening Texts

نصوص استماع

## Unit 1

### 1 Lessons 5 & 6

Ahmed is a teacher. He lives in Luxor with his family. He has two brothers. He likes to go to Alexandria in summer with his family.

### 2 Test on unit 1

Dina is thirteen years old. She is from Egypt. Dina's mother works as a doctor. There are five people in her family.

### 3 Test on unit 1 for Al Azhar students

Shahana is from India. She lives in a village with her parents.

## Unit 2

### 1 Lessons 3 & 4

Adel is a normal teenager, but he often feels worried about things. Adel gets texts from his friends. Adel's friends say that they all do exciting things.

### 2 Test on unit 2

The street-food seller is parking his food stall here because lots of tourists come this way. He is looking forward to drinking some hot coffee as he is feeling cold.

### 3 Test on unit 2 for Al Azhar students

Tamer is learning a new language. Tamer can communicate better with his cousin Sami.

## Unit 3

### 1 Lessons 3 & 4

The Ancient Egyptian doctors used to use plants to help people with burns. We still use these plants today. The Ancient Egyptian doctors were clever.

### 2 Lessons 5 & 6

Mohamed is a clever doctor. He works in a big hospital. He is kind and helpful. He always helps ill people a lot. In 2020, many people became ill.

### 3 Test on unit 3

Mrs Karima is a nurse. She looks after patients in a hospital. When she was young, she used to study very hard. She also used to work to pay for her studies.

### 4 Test on unit 3 for Al Azhar students

Ahmed loves playing football. When he was nine, he played in a junior competition.

## Unit 4

### 1 Lessons 3 & 4

The Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like senet. Senet boxes which are made of wood have 30 squares. Some people didn't have senet boxes. So, they drew the squares on the floor.

### 2 Lessons 5 & 6

Cleopatra's Needle is a large stone with beautiful designs on it. You can see it next to the River Thames in London, England. It is very valuable.

### 3 Test on unit 4

The Ancient Egyptians were very clever. They used pots and bowls for making food such as bread. These objects were made of clay, which was taken from the River Nile.

### 4 Test on unit 4 for Al Azhar students

Jerash is a Roman city in Jordan. It is more than 2,000 years old! The arch is very tall. You must buy a ticket before you go in.

## Unit 5

### 1 Lessons 3 & 4

Mr Othman is our neighbour. He helped me pass my English exams. He was a teacher at a preparatory school. He used his old schoolbooks to help me.

### 2 Lessons 5 & 6

Last Friday, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to an old man. The old man was sitting on the street corner. He was happy and gave me a big smile.

## Listening Texts

### 3 Test on unit 5

Fareeda Rashwan is 32 years old. She is a businesswoman. She donated two million pounds to charities in her city to help people, who need it. She is very kind and helpful.

### 4 Test on unit 5 for Al Azhar students

Fareeda Rashwan has donated two million pounds to charities in her city. Fareeda is a businesswoman. She wants the charities to use the money to help people who need it.

## Unit 6

### 1 Lessons 3 & 4

Tanta is located in the north of Egypt. The city is known for its delicious sweets. Lots of cotton is grown there. It is visited by thousands of people every year.

### 2 Test on unit 6

My home city is Minya. It is located near the Nile. It is known for its delicious black honey. There are many ancient monuments and buildings there. My city is very beautiful.

### 3 Test on unit 6 for Al Azhar students

Port Said is located in the north-east of Egypt. It is known for its ships. It is connected to Suez by the Suez Canal.

### Revision based on Units 4, 5 & 6

Port Said is located in the north-east of Egypt. It is known for its ships. Ships come and go from around the world. Many fish are caught in the sea near the Suez Canal.

### October Test

Ali is from Al-Fayoum. He lives with his brother. He plays computer games with his brother every day. Ali's favourite subject is English.

### November Test

The Ancient Egyptians used pots for making food. These pots were made of clay. They brought clay from the River Nile. Using pots and bowls for making food is healthy.

## Videoscript

### Unit 1

#### on Lesson 5 SB page 9

#### Narrator :

This is a chair from Ancient Egypt, and it is more than four thousand years old. Like many chairs today, it is made from wood.

In Ancient Egypt, only the richest people had wooden furniture because it was very expensive.

Today, most people have wooden furniture and it is not usually very expensive.

We all sit on chairs at home. But in Ancient Egypt, only very rich people used chairs. Other people sat on the floor.

Here is another chair from Ancient Egypt. It is made from wood, but it is covered in gold. Can you see the lions' heads? It belonged to the Pharaoh, Tutankhamun. You can see it in the Museum of Egyptian Antiquities in Cairo. We believe that the Ancient Egyptians made the very first tables. This table is more than 3,000 years old.

Today, tables are usually made from wood. But in Ancient Egypt, they were sometimes made from stone. They used tables for many things, such as writing, eating and playing games. The Ancient Egyptians also used mirrors. Today, mirrors are usually made from glass. This mirror is more than 3,000 years old and it is made from metal.

Do you look at yourself in a mirror when you leave home?

What other furniture do you have at home?

## Unit 2

### on Lesson 4 SB page 18

Cities are very busy places. Lots of people live and work in them and there is always lots of traffic and noise. This makes some people feel worried and unhappy. When people feel like this, it is a good idea to go outside and experience nature.

In Cairo, many people like going to the Al Azhar Park. Here, they walk slowly around the gardens and look at the many fountains, palm trees, plants and flowers. This makes them calm in the middle of a very big city.

These people are meeting friends and family, and having picnics outside.

In other parts of Egypt, people can experience nature in many different ways. This is Ahmed and he lives in Sharm El-Sheikh. He is a tourist guide and always works hard. Here he is speaking on the phone. Ahmed always feels happy when he visits the Ras Mohammed Nature Reserve. This is a national park in the Sinai Peninsula.

Today, he is visiting the park to go scuba diving in the Red Sea. He feels relaxed when he sees all the things that live under the water, such as the fish and the coral. When you want to be outside, there are many beautiful places on the Nile.

This is Lamia and she lives in Aswan. Today, she is sailing happily on the river with her father on a felucca. She likes doing this because she likes the different birds that she can see, like herons, geese and vultures. Some people, however, like visiting the deserts of Egypt when they want to be outside. People like walking in the deserts to see the sand dunes because it is very quiet. And these people are flying slowly above the desert in a hot air balloon.

We all feel good when we go outside. Where do you like to go ?

## Unit 3

### on Lesson 5 SB page 29

There are some great jobs that you can do. Many great jobs do something to help other people.

Many people think that being a firefighter is a great job because they save people's lives. Sometimes they have to do dangerous things to save people.

It is also a great job to be a doctor or nurse. They save the lives of people every day. Many people think they are heroes!

This is a famous doctor called Professor Rashad Barsoum. He was born in Asyut in 1941.

Today, he is one of the most important kidney doctors in the world.

He also teaches people to become doctors at Cairo University. One day these people will save lives and be new heroes.

A lot of people think teachers are heroes.

They teach us to read, to write and to do many other things.

Which job would you like to do ? Will you be a hero ?

## Unit 4

### on Lesson 2 SB page 36

**Narrator :**

These people are visiting the ancient site of Karnak, near Luxor. People were also visiting Karnak thousands of years ago. There are lots of different ruins at Karnak. It is one of the most important historic places in the world. You can see many awesome things, such as ancient statues and temples.

This is an obelisk. This obelisk is nearly thirty metres tall and it has hieroglyphics on it.

There is even a lake at Karnak called the Sacred Lake. Important people came here to

## Videoscript

wash themselves.

This is the amazing Temple of Amun. It was one of the first buildings to be built at Karnak around four thousand years ago. It has huge columns.

In the past, people came to Karnak from all over Egypt. More than two thousand people could be in the Temple of Amun at the same time.

Today, people visit Karnak from all over the world. They must walk past lots of statues of sphinx when they enter the Temple of Amun.

Visitors mustn't enter some parts of Karnak. This is because they are very old and protected. These are the ruins of the Temple of Montu. It is more than three thousand years old.

We know a lot about the history of the world because of historic places like Karnak.

## Unit 5

### on Lesson 5 SB page 51

There are many charities in Egypt that can help people. The Alhassan Foundation helps disabled people. They give wheelchairs to people who cannot walk. The charity helps disabled people to find jobs. It also teaches people about how disabled people have to live.

Another charity is the Egyptian Food Bank which gives food to poor people and to people who have lost their jobs.

Every year, people donate more than 100 million Egyptian pounds to this charity. They don't have to do this, but they do it because they want to help. People can also donate food, such as pasta, rice, meat and fruit, or they can take boxes of food to people in their community.

The Red Crescent is one of the most important charities in the world.

A lot of doctors and nurses volunteer for this charity. They treat ill and injured people

when there is a natural disaster.

The Red Crescent also helps when the weather is very bad. In 2020, there was a lot of rain in some parts of the country. Too much water caused a lot of damage and many people needed help. The Red Crescent took medicine and food to these people. Everybody should donate to a charity if they can or perhaps you could volunteer to help.

## Unit 6

### on Lesson 3 SB page 59

Egypt has a dry climate. This means there isn't much rain. Every year, about 17 centimetres of rain falls in the north of the country.

It is drier in the south and in the deserts. There is only about 0.25 centimetres of rain in Aswan every year.

Egypt is also hot. It's sometimes 40 centigrade or hotter in Cairo. In other places, the temperature is higher than that. In Luxor it can be 44 centigrade ... and the desert is even hotter.

The people and animals that live in the desert need to protect themselves from the sun.

This man is wearing a jellabiya. He is kept cool during the day by this traditional item of clothing.

And this is a fennec fox. Its large ears help to keep it cool.

It can be colder in the desert when the sun starts to go down. That's why you only see some animals, like this caracal, in the evening when it isn't as hot as in the afternoon.

But, like in many other countries around the world, Egypt's climate is changing. It's hotter today than it was sixty years ago. And the rain is heavier than it used to be. Houses and buildings are damaged by these heavy rains.

We need to work together to protect the environment, our climate and our world.

# New Hello! ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors



GUIDE

دراسة المعاصر  
للمراجعة والاختبارات

A WEEK  
IS ENOUGH

FREE PART 2



الصف الثاني الإعدادي  
الفصل الدراسي الأول

2<sup>nd</sup> Prep.  
2025 FIRST TERM

# Listening, Language Functions and Reading Comprehension

## 1. Listening

نصوص الاستماع

على الطالب أن يستمع إلى نص حوالى ٣٠ كلمة من الموضوعات الهامة في الكتاب المدرسى التى تساعد فى التعامل مع السؤال الأول وبعد الاستماع إلى النص يجيب الطالب على أربعة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد متبوعة بأربع اختيارات لكل سؤال.

السؤال الأول فى ورقة الامتحان

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب]

A. 1. Omar was born in .....

- a. 1994      b. 1949      c. 2002      d. 2020

2. A ..... attacked him when he was 22.

- a. whale      b. shark      c. snake      d. octopus

3. Omar is an important .....

- a. doctor      b. coach      c. engineer      d. scientist

4. Omar lost his .....

- a. arm      b. head      c. fingers      d. leg

B. 1. Magdy Yacoub was born in .....

- a. America      b. Egypt      c. England      d. Brasilia

2. He helps people with ..... problems.

- a. brain      b. lung      c. heart      d. stomach

3. He stopped his work as a ..... a long time ago.

- a. surgeon      b. dentist      c. guide      d. teacher

4. He opened a new hospital in .....

- a. Alexandria      b. Luxor      c. Aswan      d. Minya

## 2. Language Functions

### الوظائف اللغوية

[راجع وتدرّب في نفس الوقت] عرض لجميع الوظائف اللغوية بطريقة سهلة متبوعة بتدريبات عليها.

### السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان

#### 1. Talking about daily routines : ١. التحدث عن العادات اليومية :

- On Fridays, I always play football. • في أيام الجمعة، دائمًا ما أمارس كرة القدم.
- On Saturdays, I always get up late. • في أيام السبت، دائمًا ما أستيقظ متأخرًا.
- At the weekend, I visit my grandma. • في العطلة الأسبوعية، أزور جدتي.

#### 2. Describing a room in your house : ٢. وصف غرفة في منزلك :

- Which room do you like best ? • ما الغرفة المفضلة لديك ؟
- My bedroom. • غرفة نومي.
- I share a room with my brother. • أشارك أخي في غرفة واحدة.
- There are two beds in my room. • يوجد سريرين في غرفتي.

#### 3. Describing photos : ٣. وصف الصور :

- What can you see in this photo ? • ماذا تستطيع أن ترى في هذه الصورة ؟
- This is a photo of my family. • هذه صورة لعائلتي.
- My grandparents are in the background. • أجدادي في خلفية الصورة.
- My parents are in the middle. • والداي في منتصف الصورة.
- My brothers are on the left. • إخوتي على يسار الصورة.

#### 4. Asking and answering questions about your heroes : ٤. أسئلة وإجابات عن مثلك الأعلى [قدوتك في حياتك] :

٤. أسئلة وإجابات عن مثلك الأعلى [قدوتك في حياتك] :

#### Questions



• Who is your favourite hero ? Why ?  
من بطلك المفضل ؟ لماذا ؟

• What did the Egyptian handball team do ?  
ماذا فعل فريق كرة اليد المصري ؟

#### Answers



- My favourite hero is Dr Magdy Yacoub as he helps poor, ill children.  
بطلي المفضل هو د/ مجدي يعقوب لأنه يساعد الأطفال المرضى الفقراء.

- They won the handball Africa Cup of Nations in 2020.  
فازوا بكأس الأمم الأفريقية لكرة اليد سنة ٢٠٢٠.

5. Discussing your family history : ٥. مناقشة تاريخ عائلتك :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
• Where did your parents live when they were young? أين عاش والديك عندما كانوا صغارا؟	- They lived in Tanta. عاشوا في مدينة طنطا.
• How many persons were there in your family 10 years ago ? كم كان عدد أشخاص أسرتك منذ عشر سنوات؟	- There were only three persons. كانوا ثلاثة أشخاص فقط.

6. Describing a historic place : ٦. وصف مكان تاريخي :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
• What is the most important historic place in Egypt ? ما هو أهم مكان تاريخي في مصر؟	- The Pyramids of Giza. أهرامات الجيزة.
• Who built the Pyramids ? من بنى الأهرامات؟	- The Pharaohs of Ancient Egypt. فراعنة مصر القديمة.
• Why are the Pyramids important for Egypt ? لماذا تلك الأهرامات مهمة بالنسبة لمصر؟	- As many tourists around the world come to see them. لأن العديد من السائحين من كل أنحاء العالم يأتوا لرؤيتها.

7. A debate about the effects of tourism : ٧. مناقشة حول آثار السياحة :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
• Why is tourism important for countries ? لماذا تعتبر السياحة مهمة للدول؟	- Because tourists bring a lot of money to these countries. لأن السياح يجلبوا مزيدا من الأموال لتلك الدول.
• Do you think tourism is bad for historic places ? هل تعتقد أن السياحة ضارة بالأمكن التاريخية؟	- Yes, I think sometimes some tourists don't keep these places clean. أعتقد أحيانا لا يحافظ بعض السياح على تلك الأماكن نظيفة.

- What should we do to protect our historic places ?  
ماذا ينبغي أن نفعل لنحمي أماكننا التاريخية ؟

- We should remind tourists to behave well in these places.  
يجب أن نذكر السياح بأن يتصرفوا بشكل لائق في تلك الأماكن.

## 8. Talking about jobs in the house : الحديث عن بعض الأعمال والمهام في المنزل :

### Questions ?

- How can you help in the house ?  
كيف تستطيع أن تساعد في أعمال المنزل ؟
- What's your favourite housework ?  
ما هو عملك المنزلي المفضل ؟

### Answers ✓

- I can tidy up my room.  
يمكنني أن أرتب غرفتي.
- Washing up the dishes is my favourite.  
غسل الأطباق هو المفضل لدي.

## 9. Making suggestions : تقديم الاقتراحات :

What about  
How about

⇒ working as a volunteer for a charity ?

ما رأيك في .... ؟

- Why don't you work as a volunteer for a charity ?

لما لا .... ؟



الموافقة (Agreeing)



(Response) الرد



(Disagreeing) عدم الموافقة

- It's a great idea !

- Sorry, I'm not very keen.

- إنها فكرة جيدة !

- أسف، لست متحمساً لذلك.

## 10. Discussing "Solving environmental problems" : مناقشة حل المشكلات البيئية :

### Questions ?

- Why is it important to look after the environment ?  
لماذا من المهم العناية بالبيئة ؟
- How can we keep the environment clean ?  
كيف نحافظ على نظافة البيئة ؟
- How can we encourage people to recycle ?  
كيف نشجع الناس على إعادة التدوير ؟

### Answers ✓

- To keep people's health.  
للحفاظ على صحة الناس.
- By reducing pollution.  
عن طريق تقليل التلوث.
- By putting recycling bins everywhere.  
عن طريق وضع سلات خاصة بإعادة التدوير في كل مكان.



## Exercises

## on Language Functions

### Complete the following dialogue :

#### 1. Rana is asking Mariam about her daily routine.

**Rana** : Do you have a daily routine, Mariam ?

**Mariam** : (1) .....

**Rana** : (2) ..... ?

**Mariam** : I get up at 6:30 in the morning.

**Rana** : Do you make your breakfast by yourself ?

**Mariam** : (3) .....

**Rana** : (4) ..... ?

**Mariam** : My mum always makes it for me.

**Rana** : How do you go to school every day ?

**Mariam** : (5) .....

#### 2. Tala asks Nadeen about who can be a hero.

**Tala** : Who do you think can be a hero ?

**Nadeen** : In my opinion, nurses can be heroes.

**Tala** : What do you mean ?

**Nadeen** : (1) ..... They help the injured and ill people to recover. Do you agree with me ?

**Tala** : (2) ..... (3) ..... ?

**Nadeen** : I think it's a very difficult job.

**Tala** : (4) ..... ?

**Nadeen** : Because they sometimes work at night.

**Tala** : What should we do for them ?

**Nadeen** : (5) .....

#### 3. Leila and Salma are talking about charities.

**Leila** : Hello, Salma. Where are you going this weekend ?

**Salma** : Hello, Leila. (1) .....

**Leila** : A charity! (2) ..... ?

**Salma** : Because I want to help the disabled old people.

**Leila** : (3) ..... ?

**Salma** : I will wash their clothes and give them medicine.

**Leila** : How often do you go there ?

**Salma** : (4) .....

**Leila** : Can I work for this charity with you ?

**Salma** : (5) .....

**Salma** : Thanks.

### 3. Reading Comprehension

قطع الفهم

#### السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

وهو عبارة عن قطعة فهم ويجب الطالب على ثلاث أسئلة اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال وثلاثة أسئلة بأداة استيفهام.

### 3 Read the passage then answer the questions :

Teenagers need many things to feel happy. They should get lots of rest. They often don't sleep enough, but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep. Young people who sleep eight to ten hours a night are much happier! Teenagers should be friendly, it's good to be alone sometimes, but people need each other. Spend time with your family and also try to make new friends because this makes teenagers happy. Teenagers need to go outside. People need nature to be happy. Go to the desert or the river or, if you live in the city, go to a park. They should help other people. When you do something for someone else, this makes you feel happy too. Try it! You feel really good. Teenagers should be **grateful**. One of the best ways to be happy is to remember the good things in your life and feel pleased about **them**.

#### a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. People shouldn't sleep ..... hours a night.  
a. four                      b. eight                      c. nine                      d. ten
2. The underlined word "**grateful**" means .....  
a. ungrateful              b. unthankful              c. thankful                      d. thankless
3. Someone who lives in the city can go to a ..... to enjoy nature.  
a. school                      b. hospital                      c. prison                      d. park

#### b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

5. What does the underlined pronoun "**them**" refer to ?

6. In your opinion, what is the most important thing to be happy ?

## 1. General Revision on Vocabulary

١. مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

## Unit

## 1

## I Important Vocabulary

sofa	كنبة (أريكة)	typical day	يوم نموذجي
text	يرسل رسالة نصية - رسالة نصية	attractive	جذاب
interview	مقابلة (شخصية)	terrible	فظيع
railway line	خط سكة حديد	prison	سجن
armchair	كرسي ذو ذراعين	basin	حوض
drawer	درج	wardrobe	دولاب ملابس
curtains	ستائر	routine	نظام يومي (روتين)
share	يشارك / يتقاسم	restaurant	مطعم
partner	شريك	interests	اهتمامات
cushions	مخدات	compare	يقارن
nationality	جنسية	block of flats	عمارة سكنية

## II Important expressions &amp; prepositions

text friends	يرسل رسائل نصية للأصدقاء	ask for	يطلب
do	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>activities يقوم بأنشطة</li> <li>sports يمارس رياضة</li> </ul>	at	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the beginning في بداية</li> <li>the end of في نهاية</li> </ul>
have a routine	لديه نظام يومي	careful with	حريص بشأن
That's why = so	لهذا السبب	share ... with	يتشارك / يتقاسم ... مع
on his way to	في طريقه إلى	belong to	ينتمي إلى / يخص
on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the right على اليمين</li> <li>the left على اليسار</li> <li>holiday في اجازة</li> </ul>	thank ... for	يشكر ... على
		get dressed	يرتدي ملابس
		hear from	يسمع من



## Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Omar gets up early, washes his face and gets ..... for school.  
a. reserved      b. dressed      c. slept      d. walked
- There's a grey ..... in my bedroom. I sit on it to read books.  
a. wardrobe      b. cupboard      c. armchair      d. mirror
- Noha always puts her new dresses in the .....  
a. basin      b. wardrobe      c. restaurant      d. desk
- My daily ..... is boring. I do the same things every day.  
a. meal      b. routine      c. drink      d. match
- Ahmed is on his ..... home. He has just left the office.  
a. street      b. road      c. way      d. path
- On a/an ..... day, Heba gets up, goes to school and helps her mother in the kitchen.  
a. intelligent      b. unusual      c. dangerous      d. typical
- Bad people should be taken to .....  
a. beaches      b. prison      c. parks      d. cinema
- This ..... is comfortable. It takes four people.  
a. armchair      b. drawer      c. sofa      d. table
- ..... are important to keep the light out.  
a. Wardrobes      b. Carpets      c. Curtains      d. Sofas
- Ali has an important ..... today for the new job.  
a. view      b. review      c. interview      d. revision

## Unit 2

### I Important Vocabulary

call – centre worker	موظف مركز اتصالات	cook	طباخ
computer engineer	مهندس كمبيوتر	food stall	كشك طعام
street-food seller	بائع طعام متجول بالشارع	background	خلفية
sign language	لغة الإشارة	grateful	معتز بالجميل - شاكر لـ
striped	مخطط	communicate	يتواصل
Congratulations !	مبروك	airport	مطار
repair	يُصلح	aged	يبلغ من العمر
teenagers	مراهقين	wedding	زفاف
ward	عنبر في [مستشفى]	calligraphy	فن الخط

police officer	ضابط شرطة	weeding	إزالة الأعشاب الضارة [من الأرض]
shop worker	عامل في محل	suitcase	حقيبة سفر
keyboard	لوحة مفاتيح	empathy	تعاطف
fountain	نافورة	greetings	تحيات
suitable	مناسب	deaf	أصم [لا يسمع]

## II Important expressions & prepositions

make sure	يتأكد	get better	يتحسن
get ready to ....	... يستعد لـ	congratulate... on	يهنيئ ... على
think of	يفكر في	It's a pity!	من المؤسف !
communicate with	يتواصل مع	as usual	كالمعتاد
get married	يتزوج	prepare for	يجهز لـ
do well	ينجز / يؤدي بشكل أفضل	have an interview	لديه مقابلة رسمية
feel pleased	يشعر بالسرور	do an interview	يقوم بمقابلة شخصية
for the first time	لأول مرة	show empathy	يبين التعاطف
look forward to + (n./inf. + ing)	يتطلع إلى	It's normal to ...	من الطبيعي أن
catch a plane	يلحق بالطائرة	smile at	يبتسم لـ



## Exercise

### on Vocabulary

#### • Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Mona ..... forward to being a doctor one day.  
a. makes      b. takes      c. looks      d. gives
- Deaf people use ..... language to communicate with each other.  
a. English      b. sign      c. Latin      d. French
- Mr Ahmed ..... married in 2010. Now, he has two daughters.  
a. took      b. did      c. had      d. got
- People, who are from 13 to 19, are called .....  
a. babies      b. teenagers      c. old people      d. children
- When someone passes his exam, we say "....." to him.  
a. Sorry !      b. How terrible !  
c. Congratulations !      d. Awful !
- When you speak English well, you can ..... with other people in England.  
a. take      b. clean      c. give      d. communicate

7. I ..... well at school, so my father bought me a mobile.  
 a. made                      b. did                      c. took                      d. had
8. The skin of a zebra is .....  
 a. curly                      b. sharp                      c. striped                      d. worried
9. You should ..... of things that make you feel happy.  
 a. take                      b. think                      c. make                      d. sink
10. The street-food seller ..... food for people to eat.  
 a. returns                      b. repairs                      c. prepares                      d. communicates

## Unit 3

### I Important Vocabulary

surgeon	جراح	competition	مسابقة / منافسة
sports coach	مدرب رياضي	emergency	حالة طوارئ
volunteer	متطوع	natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية
pump	بضخ / مضخة	proud	فخور
heart	قلب	infect	يصيب بالعدوى
brain	مخ	infection	عدوى
heroic work	عمل بطولي	lungs	رئتين
patron	راعٍ / كفيل	manager	مدير
nuclear scientist	عالم نووي	stomach	معدة
earthquake	زلزال	treatment	علاج
junior	ناشي / حديث السن	improve	يُحسن - يتحسن
senior	شخص (أكثر سناً أو خبرة)	jewellery	مجوهرات
countryside	الريف	charity	جمعية خيرية

### II Important expressions & prepositions

proud	of (noun / inf. + ing) فخور بـ to + (inf.) فخور أن	look inside	يفحص
do a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع	throw ... into	يُلقي / يرمي ... في
pay for	يدفع ثمن / مقابل	try to (inf.)	يحاول جاهداً أن
take air in	يستنشق	(be) born in	يولد في [مكان]
write down	يُسجل / يدون	a long time ago	منذ وقت طويل
scared of	خائف من	a volunteer for	متطوع لـ
		cut ... into	يقطع ... إلى

reason for	سبب لـ / مبرر لـ	try his best	يُبذل قصارى جهده
cause of	سبب لـ	people with heart problems	الأشخاص الذين يعانون من أمراض القلب
play for	يلعب لصالح فريق		



## Exercise

## on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Rubbish and polluted areas cause ..... and diseases for people.  
a. protection      b. infection      c. happiness      d. beauty
- The ..... pumps blood around the body.  
a. liver      b. lung      c. heart      d. brain
- Earthquakes and volcanoes are natural .....  
a. disasters      b. rivers      c. lakes      d. floods
- Saving children from a dangerous fire is a ..... work.  
a. bad      b. normal      c. heroic      d. poor
- The ..... controls the whole body and helps you to think.  
a. heart      b. stomach      c. brain      d. ear
- A/An ..... is a person who helps poor people and charities.  
a. sports coach      b. engineer      c. volunteer      d. surgeon
- ..... to do your homework by doing a research.  
a. Cry      b. Try      c. Talk      d. Look
- The sports coach was proud ..... his winner team.  
a. to      b. on      c. off      d. of
- Teachers try their ..... to make us good persons.  
a. less      b. mess      c. best      d. list
- What is the ..... for your coming late ?  
a. cause      b. reason      c. present      d. invention

## Unit 4

### I Important Vocabulary

arch	قوس / مدخل مقوس	statue	تمثال
ruins	أطلال / بقايا مبنى قديم	temple	معبد
castle	قلعة	theatre	مسرح
stadium	استاد	awesome	رائع
mosque	مسجد	historic	تاريخي

amazing	مذهل	understand	يفهم
ingredients	مكونات	clay	طين / صلصال
popular	شعبي / محبوب	mirror	مرآة
properly	بطريقة مناسبة	necklace	عقد / قلادة
figure	تمثال [لشخصية بارزة]	customer	زبون / عميل
debate	مناظرة	pollution	تلوث
damage	يدمر	behave	يتصرف / يسلك
made of ...	صنع من ...	entrance	مدخل

## II Important expressions & prepositions

have a shower	يأخذ دش [يستحم]	good at	جيد في
protect ... from	يحمي ... من	plan for	يخطط لـ
take off	يخلع [ملابسه - حذاءه]	walk up	يصعد لأعلى
good for	جيد لـ / مناسب لـ	make pollution	يسبب تلوث
bring money to ...	... يجلب المال إلى	on the web page	على صفحة الإنترنت
look good	يبدو جميلاً	(be) used to	يستخدم في
leave straight away	يغادر على الفور	It dates to around ...	... يرجع تاريخه إلى حوالي



## Exercise on Vocabulary

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An ..... can be used as an entrance to another place.  
a. temple      b. theatre      c. arch      d. castle
2. My mother is a good cook. She gave me the ..... of the meal.  
a. kinds      b. ingredients      c. flavours      d. tastes
3. I can't ..... this sum. Can you repeat it, please ?  
a. examine      b. understand      c. stand      d. write
4. You can enjoy watching different plays at the .....  
a. hospital      b. castle      c. theatre      d. school
5. Pots and bowls were made of the ..... from the River Nile by the Ancient Egyptians.  
a. plastic      b. gold      c. wood      d. clay
6. I usually ..... a shower every morning.  
a. make      b. have      c. do      d. sell
7. We should ..... ourselves from pollution.  
a. bring      b. protect      c. make      d. walk

8. Smoke of cars makes more .....  
 a. population      b. happiness      c. smoking      d. pollution
9. Dropping rubbish ..... the environment.  
 a. behaves      b. damages      c. collects      d. cleans
10. You should ..... well when you visit historic places in other countries.  
 a. behave      b. enter      c. imagine      d. recommend

## Unit 5

### I Important Vocabulary

rubbish	قمامة	purse	محفظة نقود
random	عشوائي	kindness	عطف
stranger	غريب	donate	يتبرع
fantastic	رائع	feed	يُطعم / يُغذى
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	beggar	متسول
princess	أميرة	servant	خادم
share	يتقاسم / يشارك	donation	تبرع
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	messy	فوضوي
attic	غرفة علوية	advertisement	إعلان
community	مجتمع	apartment	شقة
passport	جواز سفر	trainers	حذاء رياضي
behave	يسلك / يتصرف	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
disabled	عاجز / مُقعد	lift	مصعد (أسانسير)

### II Important expressions & prepositions

tidy up	يرتب [غرفة]	do the cooking	يطبخ
put away	يضع الشيء في مكانه	polite to	مؤدب مع
pick up	يلتقط / يجمع	come into	يدخل
take turns	يتناوب الأدوار	come out	يخرج / يظهر
take out	يخرج	get lost	يضل الطريق
care about	يهتم بـ	make suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات
have a reason	لديه سبب / مبرر	go back to	يعود إلى
give an opinion	يعطي رأي	make a model for ...	يصمم نموذجاً لـ ...



## Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- My mother will ..... up the kitchen after she finishes cooking.  
a. put                      b. give                      c. tidy                      d. make
- The teacher was very angry when the class was .....  
a. tidy                      b. clean                      c. messy                      d. arranged
- We all remember our grandmother's ..... She always helped us when we were young.  
a. address                      b. illness                      c. kindness                      d. princess
- This film is ..... You should watch it.  
a. boring                      b. terrible                      c. fantastic                      d. bad
- Good and kind people always ..... to charities to help the poor.  
a. share                      b. donate                      c. feed                      d. start
- People should care ..... their environment.  
a. to                      b. out                      c. around                      d. about
- X is one of the most popular ..... media websites.  
a. local                      b. magnetic                      c. social                      d. mixed
- You can't travel to any country without a .....  
a. laptop                      b. passport                      c. suitcase                      d. school bag
- Children should ..... their toys away when they finish playing.  
a. give                      b. play                      c. do                      d. put
- When you ..... lost, you should ask for directions.  
a. come                      b. look                      c. get                      d. have

## Unit 6

### I Important Vocabulary

green	ملائمة للبيئة	podcast	نشرة صوتية
environment	البيئة	flood	فيضان
drought	جفاف	pollution	التلوث
comfortable	مريح	relaxing	يدعو للاسترخاء / مريح للأعصاب
line graph	خط الرسم البياني	mount	جبل
bar chart	مخطط بياني	melt	يذوب / ينصهر
serious	جاد / خطير	protect	يحمي
spotlight	ضوء مسلط / يسلط الضوء	damage	يدمر / يحطم
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	climate change	تغير المناخ
respect	يحترم	electricity	كهرباء
locate	يقع [جغرافيًا]	monuments	آثار

nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	presentation	عرض / تقديم
focus	يركز / تركيز	riverbank	ضفة نهر

## II Important expressions & prepositions

on the top of	على قمة	(be) located in	يقع جغرافيًا في
go with	يتماشى مع	(be) connected to	متصل بـ
on a radio news programme	في برنامج إخباري إذاعي	important for	مهم لـ
as a result	نتيجة لذلك	respond to	يستجيب لـ
make greener	يجعله أكثر ملائمة للبيئة	ask for	يطلب
along the river	بطول النهر	clean up	ينظف
lead to	يؤدي إلى	hope to	يتمنى أن
aim to	يهدف إلى	famous / known for	مشهور بـ
		solve a problem	يحل مشكلة



## Exercise

### on Vocabulary

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Some countries have no rain, so there is a .....  
a. flood      b. drought      c. pollution      d. volcano
- Good sons should ..... their parents and teachers.  
a. predict      b. hurt      c. damage      d. respect
- All people should work hard to ..... the environment from pollution.  
a. protect      b. damage      c. locate      d. pollute
- Clever teachers ..... on slow learners in their classes.  
a. light      b. spotlight      c. let      d. leave
- Our geography teacher drew a bar ..... to make the lesson easy on the board.  
a. share      b. short      c. chart      d. shirt
- Aswan is ..... in the south of Egypt.  
a. located      b. protected      c. lined      d. built
- ..... the top of mountains, there is a lot of snow.  
a. In      b. From      c. On      d. Into
- Students made a ..... about climate change.  
a. bus      b. mountain      c. presentation      d. class
- Luxor is ..... for its great temples.  
a. unknown      b. electric      c. comfortable      d. famous
- ..... is the opposite of protect.  
a. Produce      b. Damage      c. Solve      d. Answer

## 2. General Revision on Language

٢. مراجعة على أهم القواعد اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

### Unit 1

#### 1. Adverbs of frequency :

ظروف التكرار :

- |                |                     |                |
|----------------|---------------------|----------------|
| - always دائما | - sometimes أحياناً | - often غالباً |
| - never أبداً  | - usually عادة      |                |

• تستخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي وبعد [verb to be] وتعبّر عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث الفعل :

ex.: - I **always** go to school by bus. - We **are never** late for school.

كم مرة ... ؟ ... ؟ مصدر الفعل inf. + الفاعل + do / does + How often

ex.: - How often do you help others ? - I always help others.

#### 2. The present simple tense :

زمن المضارع البسيط :

##### Formation التكوين

##### 1 Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة

I / You / We / They / + inf.  
فاعل جمع المصدر

ex. - We **usually** play tennis on Friday.  
- My grandparents **sometimes** use a computer.

He / She / It / + inf. + s/es/ies  
فاعل مفرد المصدر

ex. - Rodina **sometimes** listens to the radio.  
- Ali **goes** to school **every day**.

• ملاحظات على زمن المضارع البسيط : Notes on the present simple :

١. يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).

ex. - Marwa usually **plays** tennis on Fridays.

٢. يضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهياً بـ (ss , ch , sh , o , x) :

ex. - My brother often **watches** TV after lunch.

٣. يضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهياً بـ (y) :

مسيبوقة بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y) :

ex. - Amal always **studies** hard for her exams.

## 2 Negative Statements الجملة الخبرية المنفية

I / You / We / They / + don't + inf.  
اسم جمع المصدر

ex. - I **don't get up** early on Fridays.

He / She / It / + doesn't + inf.  
فاعل مفرد المصدر

ex. - She **doesn't walk** to school.

• لاحظ أن :

١. حرف (s) يحذف من الفعل عند النفي.

ex.: He **doesn't play** football every Thursday.

٢. (never) تستخدم في النفي مع عدم حذف (s) مع المفرد الغائب. (He / She / It)

ex.: The bus **never stops** near my house.

## Asking questions with Can , Shall & Have you got ?

1. Have + subject فاعل + got ... ? : للسؤال عن الملكية نستخدم :

Has (he/she/it) اسم مفرد → got ..... ?

ex.: - **Has** your father **got** a blue car ?

- Yes, he has.

- No, he hasn't.

Have (I / we / you / they) اسم جمع → got ..... ?

ex.: - **Have** you **got** any cousins ?

- Yes, I have.

- No, I haven't.

2. يستخدم الفعل (Can) في السؤال بمعاني عديدة :

## A Asking about ability السؤال عن القدرة

a Yes / No question السؤال بـ[هل]

Can + subject الفاعل + inf. ?

ex. - **Can** you climb a tree ?

\* Yes, I **can**.

\* No, I **can't**.

b Wh-questions السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام

Question word + can + subject الفاعل + inf. ?

ex. A : What **can** you do, Ahmed ?

B : I **can** lift these heavy bags.

## B

### Asking for something

طلب شيئاً ما

Can + (I / you) + inf. .... ?

ex. - Can I have ice cream, please ?

\* No, you **can't**. Ice cream is not good for you.

3.

٣. يستخدم الفعل (Shall) في السؤال بمعاني عديدة :

## A

### Making suggestions

تقديم اقتراحات

Shall we + inf. مصدر الفعل .....?

ex. Hi! Shall we play a game next weekend ?

### Agreeing

الرد بالموافقة

- Yes, that's a good idea. Let's go to the park tomorrow.

### Disagreeing

الرد بعدم الموافقة

- No, I **can't**. I'm busy.

- No, I'm **sorry**. I have a lot of homework.

Shall I + inf. مصدر الفعل .....?

Shall I help you to cut the watermelon ?

### Accepting the offer

قبول عرض المساعدة

- Thank you, Yunis, but be careful with the knife !

### Refusing the offer

رفض عرض المساعدة

- Thanks, I can do it myself (on my own).

- Thanks, I don't need any help.

## B

### Offering help

تقديم المساعدة



## Exercises

## on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ali ..... studies his lessons very well. All teachers like him.

a. often

b. always

c. never

d. sometimes

2. Did Abdullah go to the zoo yesterday ? - Yes, he .....

a. does

b. is

c. has

d. did

3. .... did you arrive at school ? - At seven .

a. When

b. Why

c. Where

d. What

4. On Saturdays, Amr always ..... up at seven.

a. gets

b. get

c. getting

d. to get

## DAYS 2&3

5. We always ..... our friends.  
a. text                      b. texts                      c. texting                      d. to text
6. .... Mariam listen to music ?  
a. Do                      b. Does                      c. Is                      d. Are
7. Mohamed doesn't like coffee. He ..... drinks it.  
a. usually                      b. often                      c. always                      d. never
8. How ..... do you go swimming ? - Twice a week.  
a. usually                      b. long                      c. often                      d. old
9. Has Abdu ..... a farm in the country ?  
a. got                      b. gets                      c. get                      d. getting
10. Can Akram play basketball ? Yes, he .....  
a. shall                      b. can                      c. is                      d. does

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. We sometimes ..... (doing) sports or play music.
2. How often ..... (you visit) your uncle ?
3. .... (you have) a breakfast break ? - Yes, I do.
4. Every day, she ..... (walk) to school with her brother.

## Unit 2

### 1. The present continuous tense : زمن المضارع المستمر :

#### a. Affirmative & Negative statements : الجمل الخبرية المثبتة والمنفية :

I am  
He / She / It فاعل مفرد + is + [not] + [inf. المصدر + ing]  
We / You / They فاعل جمع are

- ex.: - I'm playing football now.  
- She isn't sitting next to her friend.

#### b. Interrogative : صيغة الاستفهام

السؤال بهل :

Am I  
Is + He / She / It فاعل مفرد + [inf. المصدر + ing] ..?  
Are We / You / They فاعل جمع

- ex.: - Is Hala making a video call ?  
• Yes, she is. • No, she isn't.

Question word + am is are + subject + (inf. المصدر + ing) ..?

كلمة الاستفهام + الفاعل + (inf. المصدر + ing) ..?

ex.: - **What** are you doing now ?  
 • I'm eating a sandwich.

### Key words : كلمات دالة غالباً تأتي مع الزمن

now الآن Take care ! احذرا ! at the moment في تلك اللحظة  
 Look ! انظر ! still مازال at present في الوقت الحاضر  
 Listen ! انصت ! tonight في هذه الليلة Look out ! / Watch out ! احترس !

ex.: - **Listen!** She's singing.  
 - He is working **now**.

## 2. The difference between the present continuous and the present simple :

الاختلاف بين زمن المضارع المستمر وزمن المضارع البسيط :

We use the present simple for : نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط في :	We use the present continuous for : نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر في :
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>habits</b> العادات I always <b>drink</b> milk for breakfast.</li> <li>• <b>routines and repeated actions</b> الروتين اليومي والأحداث المتكررة We <b>go</b> to school every day.</li> <li>• <b>things that are always true.</b> الأشياء التي دائماً ما تكون صحيحة [معلومة صحيحة] My aunt <b>lives</b> in Cairo.</li> <li>• <b>facts</b> الحقائق خاصة الحقائق العلمية والقوانين المرتبطة بالكون والطبيعة The sun <b>rises</b> in the east.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>things happening now</b> الأشياء التي تحدث الآن I <b>am sitting</b> in my English class.</li> <li>• <b>unfinished actions in progress around now.</b> أحداث غير منتهية ومستمرة حتى الآن My sister <b>is learning</b> to swim.</li> <li>• <b>temporary situations or actions.</b> أحداث أو مواقف مؤقتة They <b>are painting</b> the school this week.</li> </ul>

## 3. Adverbs of manner :

ظروف الكيفية :

- \* ظروف الكيفية تصف الفعل وتأتي بعده :  
 - Hassan runs **quickly**.  
 - Hala writes English **well**.  
 \* بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة [ly] + الصفة :  
 - quick → quickly      - slow → slowly      - careful → carefully  
 \* أما بعض الظروف غير المنتظمة لا يضاف لها [ly] وتحفظ كما هي :  
 - good → well      - hard → hard      - fast → fast  
 - early → early      - late → late



## Exercises

## on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Ahmed walks ..... to his work.  
a. slow                      b. slower                      c. slowest                      d. slowly
- Hamza ..... his homework at the moment.  
a. does                      b. do                      c. is doing                      d. did
- Habiba usually ..... her uncle on Fridays.  
a. visit                      b. visits                      c. is visiting                      d. visiting
- Sara ..... fish and rice now.  
a. cooks                      b. cooked                      c. is cooking                      d. cook
- Omima is talking to her students .....  
a. loudly                      b. louder                      c. loudest                      d. loud
- Gamal climbed the mountain .....  
a. easy                      b. easier                      c. easily                      d. easiest
- Mohamed did very ..... in the race last week.  
a. well                      b. best                      c. better                      d. good
- Salma always goes to work on foot, but today she ..... the underground.  
a. takes                      b. take                      c. taking                      d. is taking
- What game are you ..... now ?  
a. playing                      b. plays                      c. played                      d. play

### 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- Listen ! The birds ..... (sing) in the trees.
- Manal ..... (study) calligraphy now.
- Always speak ..... (quiet) to your parents.
- Nader plays basketball ..... (good).

## Unit 3

### 1. Past simple :

الماضي البسيط :

#### a. Affirmative statements : الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل

ex.: - He **bought** a new car last week.

#### b. Negative statements : الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject الفاعل + **didn't** + inf. المصدر

ex.: - He **didn't buy** a new car last week.

**c. Past time expressions :** التعبيرات الزمنية الخاصة بالماضي البسيط

- ex.: - I went to the zoo **last** week / Sunday / month / year.  
 - I went bowling an hour / four days / five months **ago**.  
 - Ali saw his brother Abdullah **yesterday**.  
 - **In 2013**, Salma was born.

**2. used to :**

اعتاد أن :

- اعتاد على فعل شيء في الماضي ولم يعد يفعله الآن.

[مصدر الفعل (inf.) + **used to** + فاعل]

في حالة الإثبات :

- Ahmed
- used to play**
- tennis when he was young.

[مصدر الفعل (inf.) + **use to** + **didn't** + فاعل]

في حالة النفي :

- Ahmed
- didn't use to smoke**
- .

[مصدر الفعل (inf.) + **use to** + فاعل + **Did** ?]

عند السؤال :

- 
- Did you use to**
- play tennis ?

[مصدر الفعل (inf.) + **use to** + فاعل + **did** + أداة استفهام ?]

- What
- did**
- you
- use to**
- do ?

**Exercises****on Language****1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- Seham ..... a new mobile to Amany yesterday.  
 a. buy                      b. buys                      c. bought                      d. is buying
- Mahmoud used to ..... tennis when he was young.  
 a. play                      b. played                      c. plays                      d. playing
- What did Abdel Wahab ..... last week ?  
 a. do                      b. did                      c. doing                      d. does
- Iman didn't ..... play squash.  
 a. used to                      b. use                      c. use to                      d. uses to
- Last month, Mohamed ..... a fantastic holiday.  
 a. have                      b. has                      c. is having                      d. had
- Mr Helmy ..... working as a teacher a long time ago.  
 a. stops                      b. stopped                      c. stopping                      d. stop
- Marwa ..... to a new primary school a week ago.  
 a. go                      b. goes                      c. is going                      d. went

## DAYS 2&3

8. Doctors used ..... plants to help people with burns.  
a. use                      b. uses                      c. to use                      d. uses to
9. Where did your parents use to ..... ?  
a. lives                      b. live                      c. lived                      d. living
10. Youssef didn't use to do sports, but now he .....  
a. is                      b. does                      c. did                      d. was

### 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. He ..... (start) playing chess when he was very little.
2. Did he ..... (used to) ride bikes ?
3. It ..... (be) cold yesterday.
4. I ..... (not used) to smoke.

## Unit 4

### 1. must / mustn't + inf. مصدر الفعل : يجب / لا يجب :

• تستخدم **must** للإلزام والضرورة.

ex.: - We **must** save our planet.

• تستخدم **mustn't** للمنع والتحريم للأشياء الغير مصرح بها.

ex.: - We **mustn't** throw rubbish into the ocean.

### 2. The past simple tense : زمن الماضي البسيط (تم شرحه في الوحدات السابقة) :

**Affirmative statements :** الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل

ex.: - We **visited** our uncle last week.

[فعل منتظم]

- He **bought** a new car last month.

[فعل غير منتظم]

### 3. The past continuous tense : زمن الماضي المستمر :

(I, He, She, It) / اسم مفرد + was } + inf. + ing  
(You, They, We) / اسم جمع + were

[أ] يستخدم هذا الزمن للتعبير عن شيء كان مستمرا في وقت محدد في الماضي.

- Omar **was studying** English all the night yesterday.

- They **were going** for a walk at 5 pm yesterday.

[ر] يستخدم هذا الزمن لوصف حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر.

**While/As/Just as** بينما / أثناء

**past continuous tense**

زمن الماضي المستمر

**past simple tense**

زمن الماضي البسيط

ex.: While we **were waiting** to go into the museum, I **saw** my friend Amir.

When

عندما

past simple tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

past continuous tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

ex.: When I **saw** Ahmed, he **was playing** football.

لاحظ أن (while) يتبعها (inf. + ing) عندما لا يكون هناك فاعل بعدها.

ex.: **While running** in the street, I saw an accident.



## Exercises

### on Language

#### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- You ..... run in hospitals.  
a. must                      b. have to                      c. mustn't                      d. has to
- While Shimaa ....., the door bell rang.  
a. study                      b. studied  
c. studies                      d. was studying
- Students ..... go to school early.  
a. mustn't                      b. don't have                      c. has to                      d. must
- As the teacher was writing on the board, the headteacher ..... the class.  
a. enter                      b. entered                      c. enters                      d. to enter
- My mum was cooking lunch when the lights ..... out.  
a. goes                      b. going                      c. went                      d. was going
- You ..... drink water from the canal. It is dangerous.  
a. must                      b. can                      c. mustn't                      d. have to
- Salma mustn't ..... in the street.  
a. plays                      b. played                      c. playing                      d. play
- Habiba was reading a story ..... her mum entered.  
a. while                      b. when                      c. because                      d. as
- While ..... in the park, it rained.  
a. plays                      b. played                      c. playing                      d. play
- As Sara ..... the food, the phone rang.  
a. was cooking                      b. cooks                      c. cook                      d. cooked

#### 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- You ..... (not must) make noise during the lesson.
- As I ..... (walk) down the stairs, I saw Ali.
- You ..... (mustn't) put rubbish in the bin.
- When Salma arrived, her mum ..... (cook) in the kitchen.

1. have / has to :

يجب أن / من الضروري أن :

Affirmative & negative statements :

الجملة الخبرية المثبتة والمنفية

Subject  
الفاعل

+

have to  
has to

+

inf.  
مصدر الفعل

ex.: - We **have to** go to school five days a week.

- He **has to** go to school on time.

• للتعبير عن عدم الإلزام نستخدم :

Subject  
الفاعل

+

don't  
doesn't

+

have to

+

inf.  
مصدر الفعل

ex.: - We **don't have to** go to school on Fridays.

- He isn't late. He **doesn't have to** hurry.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

a. Yes/No question : السؤال بـ «هل»

Do/Does

+

subject  
الفاعل

+

have to

+

inf. ... ?  
مصدر الفعل

ex.: - Do you **have to** get up at 7 o'clock ?

\* Yes, I do.

\* No, I don't.

b. Wh - questions : السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Question  
word

+

do  
does

+

subject  
الفاعل

+

have to ... ?

ex.: - When do you **have to** arrive at work ?

- Where does Rahma **have to** put her clothes ?

2. "should & shouldn't" for advice :

- إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام «should & shouldn't» بمعنى ينبغي أن / لا ينبغي أن.

Formation التكوين

Subject

+

should

/

shouldn't

+

inf.

ex.: - You **should study** hard. - You **shouldn't** waste your time.

**Interrogative** صيغة الاستفهام**a. Yes/No question :** السؤال بـ «هل»

Should + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ... ?

ex.: - Should I take a ten-minute break ?

- Yes, you should.

- No, you shouldn't.

**b. Wh - questions :** السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Question word + should / shouldn't + subject + inf. ... ?

ex.: - What should I do to learn new vocabulary ?

**3. Relative clauses / pronouns :** جمل وضمائر الوصل :

who - which - that - where

\* **who** → (for people) الذي/التي/الذين [تحل محل الفاعل والمفعول العاقل]- Miss Amal is the teacher **who** teaches us science.\* **which** → (for things or animals) الذي/التي/الذين [تحل محل الفاعل والمفعول غير العاقل]- That's the horse **which** won the competition.- لاحظ أن **(that)** تحل محل **(who)** , **(which)**.\* **where** → (for places) حيث [تحل محل مكان]- This is the house **where** my grandfather lived.**Exercises****on Language****1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. You have two mobiles so you ..... buy a new one.

a. have to

b. don't have to

c. has to

d. doesn't have to

2. What should I ..... before going to school ?

a. do

b. did

c. does

d. done

3. This is Mr Khalid ..... teaches us social studies.

a. which

b. who

c. where

d. when

4. Al-Nasr School is the place ..... Mr Hany works.

a. where

b. which

c. who

d. that

5. Students ..... make noise at class.

a. must

b. should

c. shouldn't

d. have to

6. What subject do you have to ..... ?

a. study

b. studied

c. studying

d. studies

7. The man, ..... is sitting next to me, is called Said.  
a. when                      b. whose                      c. who                      d. where
8. I saw Khalid in the club ..... we often play football.  
a. where                      b. when                      c. who                      d. whose
9. She ..... revise her lessons. The exam is tomorrow.  
a. doesn't have              b. have to                      c. has to                      d. don't have to
10. Abdel Aziz works for the charity ..... looks after poor people.  
a. who                      b. which                      c. where                      d. when

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Is this the car ..... (who) you bought ?
2. Hala ..... (not have) to study for exams.
3. .... (Do) we eat lots of vegetables ? - Yes, you should.
4. Alexandria is the place ..... (when) we go for a holiday.

## Unit 6

### 1. Comparative adjectives :

مقارنة الصفات :

#### a. Short adjectives :

• للمقارنة بين اثنين أو شيئين باستخدام الصفة القصيرة نستخدم :

**short adj + er + than** الصفة القصيرة + er + than

- Cairo is **noisier than** the countryside.

• عند التفضيل بين فرد ومجموعة باستخدام الصفة القصيرة نستخدم :

**the + short adj + est** الصفة القصيرة + est

- Cairo is **the biggest** city in Africa.

#### b. Long adjectives :

• للمقارنة بين اثنين أو شيئين باستخدام الصفة الطويلة نستخدم :

**more / less + long adj + than** الصفة الطويلة + than

- The countryside is **more relaxing than** the city.

• عند التفضيل بين فرد / شيء ومجموعة باستخدام الصفة الطويلة نستخدم :

**the most / the least + long adj** صفة طويلة

- The lion is **the most dangerous** animal.

• عند التساوي بين طرفين.

**[as + صفة + as]** مثل (للتساوي)

- The lion is **as dangerous as** the tiger.

## 2. Present Simple Tense in Passive : المضارع البسيط في صيغة المبني للمجهول

### Formation التكوين

am  
 نائب الفاعل + is + p.p. + by [الفاعل]  
 [المفعول الذي تحول إلى فاعل] are

في حالة الإثبات :

- \* The reporter **writes** an article. (Active)  
 - An article **is written** by the reporter. (Passive)

في حالة السؤال :

- \* Does he write articles ? (Active)  
 - **Are** articles **written** by him ? (Passive)



### Exercises

### on Language

#### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- France is not as ..... as South Africa.  
 a. hotter                      b. hottest                      c. the hottest                      d. hot
- The email ..... by Sally.  
 a. writes                      b. is written                      c. wrote                      d. write
- The electric buses in Alexandria are ..... the old buses.  
 a. green                      b. greener                      c. greener than                      d. greenest
- The red car is ..... than the blue one.  
 a. more expensive                      b. most expensive  
 c. the most expensive                      d. expensive
- The River Nile is ..... than before.  
 a. more polluted                      b. polluted                      c. polluter                      d. pollute
- Droughts are as serious ..... floods.  
 a. as                      b. so                      c. very                      d. too
- Port Said is ..... to Suez by the Suez Canal.  
 a. connects                      b. connecting                      c. connect                      d. connected
- Many fish are ..... in the sea near Port Said.  
 a. catch                      b. catching                      c. catches                      d. caught
- Omar drank ..... juice than Ahmed.  
 a. most                      b. less                      c. many                      d. least

#### 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- Which are ..... (good) rivers or canals ?
- Trains are ..... (comfortable) than cars.
- Where are these books ..... (sell) ?
- Furniture ..... (make) in Damietta.

## The Most Important 20 correction Sentences

◀ **الهدف من هذا الجزء:** تجميع أهم ٢٠ فكرة مختلفة وردت في سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء في اختبارات المحافظات العام السابق.

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1. Many houses ... [destroy] by earthquakes every year.	are destroyed	الجملة مضارع بسيط مبني للمجهول لأنها تبدأ بنائب فاعل ولوجود every day
2. The horse is running ... [fast] than before.	faster	نستخدم [صيغة مقارنة] لوجود than
3. You must ... [listening] to the teacher during lessons.	listen	نستخدم [مصدر الفعل] بعد must
4. He used to ... [sings] nice songs.	sing	نستخدم [مصدر الفعل] بعد used to
5. ... [Do] you meet Salma last Monday ?	Did	نستخدم [Did] لأن السؤال ماضي بسيط لوجود last
6. Cairo is the city ... [which] I was born.	where	نستخدم ضمير الوصل [where] لوجود مكان
7. My friend sews ... [bad].	badly	نستخدم [ظرف / حال] لوصف الفعل
8. While we ... [study], the light went out.	were studying	نستخدم [ماضي مستمر] بعد while
9. Did Noha ... [went] home ?	go	نستخدم [مصدر الفعل] بعد Did
10. I was playing chess when my father ... [arrive] home.	arrived	نستخدم [ماضي بسيط] بعد when
11. Saudi Arabia is not ... [wet] as Jordan.	as wet	نستخدم [not as + Adj. + as] للتعبير عن عدم التساوي في الصفة
12. Swimming is ... [relaxing] than boxing.	more relaxing	نستخدم [more] مع [than] في حالة مقارنة صفة طويلة
13. He ... [visit] the pyramids yesterday.	visited	نستخدم الماضي البسيط لوجود yesterday
14. You ... [has] to pass your exam.	have	نستخدم [have] مع [You]
15. Listen! They ... [sing] a nice song.	are singing	نستخدم مضارع مستمر لوجود Listen!
16. ... [What] often do you play tennis ?	How	نستخدم [How] مع [often] للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار الفعل

17. What does Soha ... [eating] ?	eat	نستخدم المصدر بعد does
18. ... [Doesn't] eat fast food. It's unhealthy.	Don't	نستخدم (Don't) في بداية الأمر المنفي
19. Basmala ... [not/be] at school yesterday.	wasn't	نستخدم (wasn't) لأن الفاعل مفرد والجملة في زمن الماضي البسيط لوجود yesterday
20. You shouldn't ... [ate] a lot of sweets.	eat	نستخدم المصدر بعد (shouldn't)

### 3. Important Paragraphs and Emails

٣. أهم الفقرات الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني

موضوعات إنشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني هامة على الوحدات كما يمكنك مراجعة نماذج أخرى في نهاية كتاب الشرح

#### Model Paragraph 1

##### *"What you and your family do on holidays"*

Holidays are a good chance for me and my family to relax. We enjoy our time so much. We prefer travelling to Hurghada or Alexandria on holidays. We can practise many activities there. I spend most of my time swimming and playing football. At night, we like sitting at a café with a good view of the sea. My sisters prefer going to the cinema at night. The whole family have lunch together every day. My father prefers having fish, but I like having meat instead.

#### Model Paragraph 2

##### *"My new house"*

I'm so happy as we have just moved to our new house. We have a large house. It consists of three floors. My brother shared a room with me in the old house. Now, I have my own room alone. My room has a good view from the window. Also, my father made a large room for reading books. It has many books. My grandparents live with us on the first floor. I enjoy playing chess with my grandfather in the garden of the house every weekend. We are so happy.

#### Model Paragraph 3

##### *"The home I want to live in"*

I hope to build a new large house in the future. The house, which I want, should be very big with a garden. Also, it should have a wall and a gate on the front. My home should include all comfortable things. The rooms should be large with windows everywhere. I will buy fine carpets and curtains. Chairs and sofas should match the curtains. I like using simple decorations everywhere. I'll make a room for reading as a small library. Also, children should have a room for their toys and games.

### Model Email 4

**From** : hady@gmail.com  
**To** : ahmed@gmail.com  
**Subject** : Night workers

Dear Ahmed,

We all should respect night workers. There are many hard jobs such as nurses, call-centre workers and policemen. Nurses have to stay late at night in hospitals. They should look after patients all night. They behave kindly to patients and help them to recover. Call-centre workers also answer phone calls of people and help them. They should be also kind to people. Also, policemen are very important for our life. They make sure that people are safe all night. Night workers are very useful for the community. See you soon.

Yours,  
 Hady

### Model Paragraph 5

#### *"Making new friends"*

Making new friends helps us a lot in our life. When you move to a new place or a new school, you can make new friends. They help you make right decisions and have new experience. It's important to choose your new friends carefully. Good friends will help you in your life.

Don't make friends with people who are older than you. They might think in a different way. You can ask your parents or teachers when you want to make new friends with people you don't know. People can't live alone without friends. Friends can help you improve your character well.

### Model Paragraph 6

#### *"Charity work I like most"*

Charity work is very important for people who need help. My favourite charity jobs are cleaning my area and helping the disabled. I work as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our local area. At the weekend, we pick up the rubbish. Also, I visit a home for old people every week to help them. There are many people who need to be looked after. I'm very happy when I help them. I like talking to them. Some of the disabled are clever at some games. I respect them so much.

### Model Paragraph 7

#### *"The effect of climate change on the environment"*

Climate change has bad effects on our planet. The rise of temperature can cause serious problems. Climate change in Australia, for example, makes the weather hotter and drier. More droughts mean worse fires than ever before. Also, climate change can affect badly on ice on top of mountains. When much ice melts, it causes floods. We should help the environment and stop this rise of temperature. Some places on Earth are in a great danger because of the climate change.

**Model Paragraph 8*****"What teenagers should do and what they shouldn't do"***

Teenagers should use their time in a good way. There are some tips that can help teenagers to feel happy and to achieve their goals. First, they should sleep enough time at least 8 hours. Most of them like staying up late, but it isn't useful for their health. Secondly, it's important for them to make new friends to be happy, but they should choose their friends carefully. After that, they can travel to open places. Nature makes them happier. Finally, it's important for them to remember the good things in their life. They shouldn't stay up late.

**Model Paragraph 9*****"Our body"***

We should keep our bodies healthy. Healthy food, enough sleep and doing sports are very important for our bodies. We should eat different kinds of healthy food to build our bodies. Also, children and young people should sleep well to be healthy.

Sports are the most important things. Young people should practise the sports they prefer.

Parents should advise children to look after their bodies to grow well. Also, they should warn them of bad habits like watching too much TV, eating unhealthy food and sleeping late.

**Model Paragraph 10*****"Rubbish collectors"***

There are some jobs we can't do without them. Rubbish collectors, for example, are very important. The city would be terrible without them. They clean streets, parks and different places around us. We should respect them. We should teach our children to help and keep places clean to help them. They have to work in different places and different times. People should put their rubbish in bins to make their job easier. Rubbish collectors do a great job for us. They are really heroes in the community.

**Model Email 11**

**From** : hussien@gmail.com

**To** : omar@gmail.com

**Subject** : Dr Magdy Yacoub

Dear Omar,

We are very proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Belbeis, but his family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy became a doctor, too.

He travelled abroad and achieved a great success as a heart surgeon. He helped many people to get better. He is very famous for his charity work. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started his charity for ill children in Aswan. All people like him in Egypt. He is my hero.

Yours,  
Hussien

**4. Accumulative Tests**

ع. اختبارات تراكمية

**Units 1,2&3****A. Listening****1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

- Samy visited Al-Azhar Park last .....  
 a. Sunday      b. Friday      c. Monday      d. Tuesday
- He went there by .....  
 a. car      b. train      c. bus      d. bike
- Who did he go there with ? - His .....  
 a. father      b. mother      c. teachers      d. friends
- They walked ..... around the garden.  
 a. slowly      b. quickly      c. sadly      d. angrily

**B. Language Functions****2 Complete the following dialogue :***Omar is asking Yasser about his life.***Omar** : Hi Yasser ! Do you live in a block of flats, or somewhere else ?**Yasser** : (1) .....**Omar** : (2) ..... ?**Yasser** : To have fun, I usually play computer games.**Omar** : What exercise do you do every week ?**Yasser** : (3) .....**Omar** : How often do you play football ?**Yasser** : (4) .....**Omar** : (5) ..... ?**Yasser** : My favourite footballer is Messi.**C. Reading Comprehension****3 Read the following, then answer the questions :**

My mother is an important nurse. She's called Mrs Karima Mohamed. I know that her life used to be difficult. She studied to be a nurse at Ain Shams University and used to work as a nurse, too, sometimes at night, to learn as she could. She then got a job at a big hospital in Cairo. She continued to work hard, but didn't stop her studies, and soon she became one of the most

important nurses in Cairo. Now, she works in a big hospital in New Cairo. In 2020, many people became ill and she worked every day for many weeks. It was **difficult**, but heroic work because most of **them** got better. She is also a manager and she helps to teach younger nurses. I think she is a hero because she studied and worked very hard to get an important job and now she helps people every day. She thinks that education is very important.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- Karima Mohamed studied to be a/an .....  
a. engineer    b. doctor    c. patient    d. nurse
- Karima works in a big hospital in .....  
a. Alexandria    b. Sharkia    c. New Cairo    d. Assuit
- The underlined word "**difficult**" means .....  
a. busy    b. boring    c. easy    d. hard

**b. Answer the following questions :**

- Give a suitable title for the passage.  
.....
- What does the underlined word "**them**" refer to ?  
.....
- Why does the writer think his mother is a hero ?  
.....

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- Shady is deaf, so he uses ..... to communicate with others.  
a. legs    b. ears    c. sign language    d. English
- ..... to do your homework by doing research.  
a. Cry    b. Try    c. Talk    d. Look
- We need a computer engineer to ..... our computer.  
a. prepare    b. repair    c. communicate    d. spend
- There is a beautiful ..... in the centre of our school garden.  
a. museum    b. mountain    c. fountain    d. temple
- A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.  
a. surgeon    b. teacher    c. pilot    d. baker
- A ..... teaches people how to play or improve in a sport.  
a. doctor    b. scientist    c. sports coach    d. surgeon
- Do you know the ..... between "know" and "no" ?  
a. number    b. difference    c. idea    d. education

8. My father got a job 15 years .....  
 a. since      b. then      c. for      d. ago
9. What game are you ..... now ?  
 a. playing      b. plays      c. played      d. play
10. Yes, I have five cousins. They ..... in Alexandria.  
 a. lives      b. live      c. to live      d. living

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. Mariam usually ..... (get) up at 6.30.
2. The family ..... (not have) water in the house.
3. Did you ..... (saw) the film last week ?
4. He ..... (meet) his aunt Reem when he was 20.

**E. Writing**

- 6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words : to your friend Ziad to tell him about your new house. Your name is Nour and your email address is nour@gmail.com. Your friend's email is ziad@gmail.com.**

**Units 4,5&6**

**A. Listening**

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where is Port Said located ? – It is in the ..... of Egypt.  
 a. north-east      b. south-east      c. west-east      d. south
2. What is it known for ? – Its .....  
 a. cars      b. ships      c. boats      d. rockets
3. Ships come and go from around .....  
 a. Cairo      b. the world      c. the coast      d. Alexandria

4. Many fish are caught in the sea near .....  
 a. Alexandria      b. Luxor      c. the Suez Canal      d. Matrouh

## B. Language Functions

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

*Nasser and Omar are talking at the school playground.*

**Nasser :** Do you have to study this evening, Omar ?

**Omar :** (1) .....

**Nasser :** (2) ..... ?

**Omar :** Because I have a geography test.

**Nasser :** (3) ..... ?

**Omar :** Tomorrow.

**Nasser :** It's nearly the end of the break. Which subject do you have ?

**Omar :** (4) .....

**Nasser :** Do you like science ?

**Omar :** (5) .....

## C. Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Global Recycling Day is an event in March. It aims to **remind** people of the importance of recycling things including paper, plastic, metal, water and even gas and oil. It started in 2018 and there are now recycling events in many different countries.

In 2018, people produced about 11 billion tonnes of rubbish around the world. At the moment, a lot of our rubbish is burnt and this can lead to climate change.

No country recycles as much as Germany. **It** recycles more than 56% of its rubbish. In 1991, it recycled by 3%. South Korea recycles more than 53% of its rubbish. Coloured plastic bottles and some plastic cups are not used any more, because you can't recycle them. Most countries hope to recycle more in the future.

#### a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**remind**" in the passage means to make someone ..... something.

a. forget      b. remember      c. reuse      d. recycle

2. Global Recycling Day is an event in .....

a. April      b. May      c. March      d. June

3. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to .....

a. Brazil      b. Germany      c. South Korea      d. America

#### b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?

.....

5. Why do you think Global Recycling Day is important ?

6. What do most countries hope to do ?

### D. Vocabulary & Structure

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Port Said is ..... in the north - east of Egypt.  
a. taken      b. located      c. connected      d. protected
- We should ..... damaging the environment.  
a. protect      b. stop      c. continue      d. cause
- Which of these can you not usually put in a recycling bin ? .....  
a. Bottles      b. Paper      c. Water      d. Metal cans
- You can watch sports matches at the .....  
a. school      b. theatre      c. stadium      d. cinema
- You can find a lot of ..... at museums.  
a. statues      b. fruits      c. vegetables      d. plays
- ..... are buildings which are not complete.  
a. Pots      b. Ruins      c. Towers      d. Statues
- Muslims pray at .....  
a. cinemas      b. stadiums      c. mosques      d. churches
- Saudi Arabia is not as wet ..... Jordan.  
a. so      b. as      c. since      d. for
- This is Mr Ali ..... teaches us English.  
a. where      b. which      c. who      d. when
- While ..... in the park, it rained.  
a. plays      b. played      c. play      d. playing

#### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- Minya ..... (locate) near the Nile.
- Many monuments and buildings ..... (find) in the city.
- The café ..... (who) I meet my friends, serves delicious ice cream.
- The boy ..... (when) was my best friend moved to a different city.

### E. Writing

#### 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Recycling"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 1. General Exercises collected from SB & WB

١. تدریبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

### A Vocabulary

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### Unit 1

*Student's Book & Workbook*

1. My mum always ..... my breakfast. (SB p.2)  
 a. does                      b. makes                      c. gives                      d. deletes
2. When they open the curtains, there is always lots of ..... in the room. (WB p.76)  
 a. moon                      b. darkness                      c. sunlight                      d. study
3. Their new house is in the country near a ..... line. (WB p.75)  
 a. airport                      b. street                      c. school                      d. railway
4. A ..... is a place where people go when they do something wrong. (SB p.8)  
 a. basin                      b. park                      c. prison                      d. temple
5. The ..... are people without enough money to live on. (SB p.8)  
 a. rich                      b. young                      c. poor                      d. brave

#### Unit 2

*Student's Book & Workbook*

1. Street-food sellers put their food ..... in the best places in the city. (SB p. 13)  
 a. still                      b. stall                      c. stale                      d. sale
2. It's ..... to get worried or feel sad sometimes. (SB p. 18)  
 a. unusual                      b. normal                      c. abnormal                      d. strange
3. A/An ..... is a boy or girl aged 13-19. (WB p.82)  
 a. old man                      b. baby                      c. child                      d. teenager
4. Well done, Yasser ! That's great ..... ! (SB p. 19)  
 a. empathy                      b. news                      c. phrase                      d. sorry
5. We need a computer engineer to ..... our computer. (WB p.80)  
 a. repair                      b. prepare                      c. care                      d. rare

## Unit 3

Student's Book &amp; Workbook

1. A terrible event, such as an earthquake, is a ..... . (SB p. 26)  
a. habit                      b. prize                      c. disaster                      d. party
2. A/An ..... is someone who works for no money. (SB p. 28)  
a. volunteer                      b. engineer                      c. teacher                      d. patient
3. The Ancient Egyptian doctors ..... down their ideas. (WB p. 86)  
a. put                      b. made                      c. wrote                      d. took
4. A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill. (WB p. 86)  
a. surgeon                      b. teacher                      c. pilot                      d. baker
5. The ..... take in air and help us to breathe. (SB p. 28)  
a. brains                      b. lungs                      c. hearts                      d. legs

## Unit 4

Student's Book &amp; Workbook

1. Petra in Jordan ..... back to around 300 BCE. (WB p. 96)  
a. arrives                      b. dates                      c. moves                      d. takes
2. It is important to learn about ..... places around the world. (SB p. 37)  
a. historian                      b. history                      c. funny                      d. historic
3. A ..... is a pot used for holding flowers. (WB p. 97)  
a. necklace                      b. mask                      c. vase                      d. tool
4. People made ..... with clay from the River Nile. (SB p. 40)  
a. bats                      b. pots                      c. beds                      d. beets
5. You should walk carefully and follow the ..... . (SB p. 43)  
a. signs                      b. tools                      c. drums                      d. masks

## Unit 5

Student's Book &amp; Workbook

1. A ..... is like an online diary. (WB p. 107)  
a. community                      b. blog                      c. distance                      d. donation
2. My parents ..... money to a charity which helps disabled people. (SB p. 53)  
a. earn                      b. donate                      c. win                      d. gain
3. .... means something is happening without a plan. (SB p. 47)  
a. Messy                      b. Random                      c. Kindness                      d. Helpless

4. I ..... that it's important for famous people to donate money. (WB p. 106)  
 a. disagree      b. agree      c. refuse      d. watch
5. The building is very tall, but we can go to the top in the ..... (WB p. 102)  
 a. stairs      b. left      c. lift      d. attic

## Unit 6

*Student's Book & Workbook*

1. The volunteers want to make the river ..... (SB p. 55)  
 a. clean      b. bad      c. dirty      d. ugly
2. The ..... is a building where you can pray. (WB p. 111)  
 a. school      b. hospital      c. park      d. mosque
3. A ..... is a long area of water made for ships or boats. (WB p. 111)  
 a. canal      b. mosque      c. chart      d. line
4. We need more rain or there might be a ..... (WB p. 115)  
 a. flood      b. drought      c. rubbish      d. fuel
5. I work for a charity which ..... after sick animals. (SB p. 49)  
 a. makes      b. takes      c. looks      d. gives

## B Structures

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

## Unit 1

*Student's Book & Workbook*

1. .... Mariam listen to music on the bus ? – Yes, she does. (SB p. 3)  
 a. Do      b. Have      c. Does      d. Did
2. I ..... get up early at the weekends to have enough sleep. (WB p. 72)  
 a. usually      b. always      c. often      d. never
3. .... do you live ? – I live in Tanta. (SB p. 4)  
 a. What      b. When      c. Where      d. How
4. She gets up early and ..... breakfast. (SB p. 6)  
 a. have      b. had      c. has      d. didn't have
5. Shall we ..... to the beach tomorrow ? (WB p. 74)  
 a. went      b. goes      c. go      d. gone

## Unit 2

*Student's Book & Workbook*

1. Why is Kamal ..... his food stall at this place ? (SB p. 13)  
 a. park      b. parks      c. parking      d. parked

**DAY 4**

2. How often do you ..... dinner ? (WB p. 80)  
a. make                      b. made                      c. is making                      d. making
3. Samy ..... sign language at school now. (SB p. 15)  
a. learn                      b. learns                      c. is learning                      d. learnt
4. The children are singing ..... in the playground. (WB p. 81)  
a. loud                      b. loudly                      c. louder                      d. loudest
5. The cat is sitting in the sun ..... (SB p. 16)  
a. lazy                      b. lazier                      c. laziest                      d. lazily

**Unit 3***Student's Book & Workbook*

1. Magdy stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time ..... (SB p. 23)  
a. ago                      b. yesterday                      c. last week                      d. last month
2. Where did your parents ..... when they were young ? (SB p. 25)  
a. lived                      b. lives                      c. live                      d. living
3. In 2016, a shark attacked Omar and he ..... a leg. (WB p. 86)  
a. lost                      b. lose                      c. loses                      d. losing
4. What did you use to ..... at primary school ? (WB p. 88)  
a. learnt                      b. learns                      c. learning                      d. learn
5. When Yasser's mum was a child, she ..... play the piano every day. (SB p. 27)  
a. use                      b. used                      c. used to                      d. use to

**Unit 4***Student's Book & Workbook*

1. In a museum, you ..... touch the objects. (SB p. 35)  
a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. have to                      d. has to
2. While we ..... to go into the museum, I saw my friend Abbas. (SB p. 39)  
a. wait                      b. was waiting                      c. were waiting                      d. waited
3. It is a long walk to the temple, so you ..... all listen carefully. (WB p. 95)  
a. mustn't                      b. must                      c. has to                      d. haven't to
4. As Karim was taking photos of the animals, he ..... his phone. (WB p. 97)  
a. lose                      b. losing                      c. loses                      d. lost
5. I put my bag on the floor while I ..... a photo. (SB p. 39)  
a. take                      b. took                      c. was taking                      d. takes

**Unit 5***Student's Book & Workbook*

- When you get on the bus, you ..... buy a ticket. (SB p. 45)  
 a. have to                      b. has to                      c. mustn't                      d. don't have to
- Do you have to ..... to school ? (SB p. 45)  
 a. walks                      b. walking                      c. walked                      d. walk
- The tourists, ..... visit Egypt, always love the ancient temples. (WB p. 104)  
 a. which                      b. who                      c. where                      d. when
- You ..... run if your legs hurt. (WB p. 103)  
 a. shouldn't                      b. should                      c. must                      d. have to
- The market is a place ..... I often get lost. (WB p. 104)  
 a. which                      b. when                      c. who                      d. where

**Unit 6***Student's Book & Workbook*

- The River Nile is ..... polluted than it was before. (SB p. 55)  
 a. more                      b. most                      c. the most                      d. the least
- Mount Catherine is a ..... mountain than Jabal Mousa. (WB p. 109)  
 a. high                      b. higher                      c. highest                      d. the highest
- Australia is not as ..... as Africa. (SB p. 57)  
 a. hotter                      b. hottest                      c. the hottest                      d. hot
- Many fish ..... in the sea near Port Said. (SB p. 59)  
 a. catch                      b. are caught                      c. catches                      d. caught
- Only green energy from the sun and wind ..... at the hotel. (WB p. 112)  
 a. use                      b. uses                      c. is used                      d. using

**B Structures****5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

عبارة عن أربعة جمل على الطالب أن يكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة / الكلمات التي بين الأقواس [الجمل تقيس القواعد اللغوية].

**Unit 1**

- Mariam ..... (get) up at 6:30. (SB p.3)
- I ..... (get usually) up late at the weekends. (WB p.72)
- The family ..... (not have) water in the house. (SB p.6)

## DAY 4

### Unit 2

---

1. Mr. Ahmed speaks English ..... (good). (SB p.16)
2. Basel is a computer engineer. He usually ..... (repair) computers. (WB p.80)
3. It is important to drive ..... (careful) when it is raining. (WB p.81)

### Unit 3

---

1. They didn't use to ..... (had) a big car. (SB p.27)
2. I started preparatory school three years ..... (yesterday). (SB p.23)
3. He ..... (meet) his aunt Reem when he was 20. (WB p.87)

### Unit 4

---

1. You ..... (must) run in a museum. (SB p.35)
2. As Karim ..... (take) photos of the animals, he lost his phone. (WB p.97)
3. We were looking around the museum when Amir ..... (finds) some tall doors. (SB p.39)

### Unit 5

---

1. It's a holiday today. We ..... (not have) go to school. (SB p.45)
2. You should ..... (starts) running short distances. (WB p.103)
3. Mr Sabri is the teacher ..... (when) taught my sister. (SB p.49)

### Unit 6

---

1. A train is not as ..... (faster) as a plane. (WB p.110)
2. The North Hotel is ..... (locate) on a lovely beach. (WB p.112)
3. Figs are ..... (delicious) as chocolate. (SB p.63)

## 2. End of Term Practice

٢. إختبار نهاية الفصل الدراسي من كتاب التدريبات.

**1** Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. What is Aya's father's job ? - .....
  - a. A shop worker
  - b. A teacher
  - c. A street-food seller
  - d. It doesn't say
2. Why must Aya stay at home every day ? - .....
  - a. To work
  - b. To study
  - c. To look after her brothers and sisters
  - d. To plant trees
3. Where does Aya have to go in the evening ? - .....
  - a. To school
  - b. To the shops
  - c. To a park
  - d. To her teacher's house
4. How does Aya feel when she gets home ? - .....
  - a. Tired but grateful
  - b. Hungry
  - c. Angry
  - d. Sad

**2 Complete the following dialogue :**

**Manal :** I can't come to your family party next weekend because my grandfather is in hospital.

**Leila** : (1) ..... to hear that, Manal. I'll get something.

Manal : (2) ..... , Leila ?

**Leila** : I mean I'll buy him something that you can take to the hospital.

Manal : (3) ..... don't we buy him something together?

**Leila** : That's an interesting (4) ..... What can we get him?

**Manal :** We (5) ..... buy him a magazine to read.

**Leila** : Good idea !

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions :**

In 1925, a British adventurer called Leonard Woolley was exploring a palace in ancient Babylon (which is located in Iraq today), when he discovered a strange **collection** of objects. The objects all had labels on **them** and Woolley realised that this was probably the world's first ever museum ! Woolley knew that rich people in the past used to

collect special objects in their houses. In Babylon, the palace was the home of Princess Ennigaldi in the year 530 BCE. Some of the objects, however, were about 1,500 years older. Woolley did not know much about Princess Ennigaldi, but he learned that people were interested in history in the past as much as they are interested in it today. Isn't that fantastic?

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- Some of the objects in the museum were .....  
 a. about 2,000 years old                      b. the same age as the palace  
 c. newer than the palace                      d. a lot older than the palace
- What do you think the word "**collection**" means? .....  
 a. A palace                                      b. An innovation  
 c. Things without names                      d. Things you keep together
- What did Leonard Woolley learn about people in the past? .....  
 a. They all had museums                      b. They were interested in history  
 c. They were all very rich                      d. They were all fantastic

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What was Leonard Woolley exploring in 1925 ?  
 .....

5. Why did he think the objects were from a museum ?  
 .....

6. What does the underlined word "**them**" refer to ?  
 .....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- ..... work in the street. They sell food.  
 a. Call-centre workers                      b. Nurses  
 c. Engineers                                      d. Street-food sellers
- Many people in the city live in a ..... of flats.  
 a. black                      b. block                      c. chest                      d. house
- The mountain was very high and we all felt ..... at the top because we thought we might fall!  
 a. scary                      b. scared                      c. happy                      d. tall
- Kareem's cousin is ..... and never puts his books away.  
 a. messy                      b. cruel                      c. serious                      d. tidy

5. Eyad works as a ..... for a charity that helps to clean the local beach.
- a. patient                      b. figure                      c. model                      d. volunteer
6. Where did your grandparents ..... ?
- a. lived                      b. used to live                      c. use to live                      d. living
7. The nurse is a ..... She saved a lot of people.
- a. hero                      b. beggar                      c. manager                      d. servant
8. While Hassan ..... to school, he saw a famous squash player.
- a. was walking                      b. is walking                      c. walked                      d. walks
9. You must not ..... the objects in the museum.
- a. touch                      b. belong to                      c. relax                      d. see
10. The new book ..... I bought is very interesting.
- a. who                      b. where                      c. which                      d. when

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The Egyptian handball team ..... (win) the competition last year.
2. Karim ..... (take) a photo of the museum at the moment.
3. Cotton clothes ..... (sell) all over the world.
4. Mona ..... (have) to wear the uniform at school.

**6 Choose one of the following :**

1. Write an email of 80-95 words to a penfriend telling him or her about your daily routine.
2. Write a blog of 80-95 words about a historic place you visited.

[illegible]

1

Cairo Governorate

El Maadi Educational Directorate

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. How old is Mona ?

a. Forty

b. Fifty

c. Fourteen

d. Fifteen

2. When does she get up ? At .....

a. 6.30

b. 5.00

c. 7.00

d. 8.00

3. How does she go to school ? By .....

a. car

b. metro

c. train

d. bus

4. Where do her parents work ? At the .....

a. school

b. office

c. hospital

d. bank

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

*Hany is calling the City Museum.*

Receptionist : Good morning. City Museum.

Hany : Good morning. (1) ..... ?

Receptionist : The museum is open from 9.30 to 6.30.

Hany : (2) ..... ?

Receptionist : No, we are open every day except Friday.

Hany : How much does the ticket cost ?

Receptionist : (3) .....

Hany : Can I buy the ticket online or at the museum ?

Receptionist : (4) ..... Any other help ?

Hany : (5) .....

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

In 1982, some friends were in a restaurant in California, USA. They wanted to make the world better. One of the friends, Anne Herbert, wrote down her idea: Practise random acts of kindness. A random act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no reason. You can do random acts of kindness for the people you know: for example, buy flowers for your mother. You can also be kind to **strangers**: for example, give your seat to someone on a bus. Now February 17<sup>th</sup> is Random Acts of Kindness Day. All over the world, people do kind things for the day: not because they have to, but because they want to see a smile on a person's face. Isn't it a fantastic idea ?

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- The word "**strangers**" means .....  
 a. people you know                      b. people you don't know  
 c. a friend of you                      d. a relative of you
- Now ..... is Random Acts of Kindness Day.  
 a. 17<sup>th</sup> February                      b. 27<sup>th</sup> February  
 c. 17<sup>th</sup> March                      d. 12<sup>th</sup> April
- The idea for random acts of kindness comes from .....  
 a. France                      b. Egypt                      c. America                      d. China

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a title to this passage.

.....

5. Why did the friends meet in the restaurant ?

.....

6. What do you think about this idea ?

.....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- A ..... is a place where people go when they do something wrong.  
 a. prison                      b. hospital                      c. school                      d. cinema
- You ..... eat or drink in the library.  
 a. must                      b. should                      c. mustn't                      d. can
- Fatma is ..... , so she can't hear you.  
 a. blind                      b. deaf                      c. quiet                      d. lazy
- A terrible event, such as an earthquake, is a .....  
 a. charity                      b. countryside                      c. proud                      d. natural disaster
- I ..... a bedroom with my sister.  
 a. share                      b. put                      c. take                      d. watch
- Sameera Mousa was born ..... 1917.  
 a. at                      b. by                      c. on                      d. in
- Hend runs .....  
 a. quick                      b. slow                      c. fast                      d. good
- There was no rain for months this winter, so now there is a .....  
 a. flood                      b. drought                      c. rubbish                      d. fuel
- Nader watched the football match at the ..... yesterday.  
 a. statue                      b. museum                      c. temple                      d. stadium
- Does Heba ..... go to work early ?  
 a. have to                      b. has to                      c. have                      d. has

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. She usually ..... (get) up late at the weekend.
2. Where ..... (you use to) live before you moved to Alexandria ?
3. This seat is ..... (comfortable) than the other one.
4. Rami ..... (not wear) a jacket today because it's very hot.

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

*"A visit to Al Azhar Park"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**2**

**Giza Governorate**

Zayed Educational Directorate

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Who is your hero ? .....  
 a. Sameera Mousa                      b. Magdy Yocoub  
 c. Omar Abdelkader                  d. Fatma Ismail
2. When was he born ? .....  
 a. In 1994                      b. In 1949                      c. In 1940                      d. In 1900
3. When he was 22, he lost a/an .....  
 a. eye                      b. arm                      c. hand                      d. leg
4. Now, he is an important .....  
 a. doctor                      b. pilot                      c. coach                      d. engineer

**2 Complete the following dialogue :**

*Mona is asking Dina some questions :*

**Mona :** Can I ask you some questions ?

**Dina :** (1) .....

**Mona :** (2) ..... ?

**Dina :** I usually get up at 6.30 am.

**Mona :** (3) ..... ?

**Dina :** I live with my family.

**Mona :** Do you listen to music ?

**Dina :** (4) .....

**Mona :** How often do you listen to music ?

**Dina :** (5) .....

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Our class decided to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days. On Monday, I bought my grandmother some of her favourite cakes at the baker's on the way home from school. She was very surprised, but very happy! After that, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to the old man who often sits on our street corner. He gave me a big smile. In my opinion, doing random acts of kindness is fantastic. I don't want to stop.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The old man was ..... when the writer gave him a sandwich.  
a. happy      b. sad      c. funny      d. big
- The writer bought the cake ..... school.  
a. before      b. after      c. during      d. while
- On ..... , the writer bought his grandmother some cake.  
a. Saturday      b. Monday      c. Friday      d. Sunday

#### B. Answer the following questions :

4. How much time did the class spend on this work ?

.....

5. What did the writer do for the old man ?

.....

6. What did he buy his grandmother ?

.....

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Your new villa is really ..... . All of us admired it so much.  
a. terrible      b. bad      c. attractive      d. narrow
- New York is a ..... city. Millions of people live there.  
a. small      b. large      c. little      d. tiny
- Sara left her ..... in Al Fayoum and went to live in Cairo in 2018.  
a. village      b. library      c. temple      d. museum
- I ..... for my mum. Do you know where she is ?  
a. look      b. looking      c. am looking      d. looks
- Huda's uncle always sings ..... when he's working.  
a. slow      b. happy      c. happily      d. quiet
- That is the restaurant ..... we have wonderful meals.  
a. who      b. which      c. what      d. where
- The mechanic ..... my car before I travelled to Alex.  
a. shared      b. repaired      c. listened      d. called

8. Salma used ..... to tell the deaf woman what happened.  
a. sign language    b. studying    c. running    d. parking
9. You ..... be noisy in class.  
a. must    b. will    c. can    d. mustn't
10. Players score by throwing the ball into a goal in .....  
a. handball    b. chess    c. swimming    d. karate

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. Fady and his friends ..... (use to) clean their street every week.
2. Hazem never ..... (sleep) on a sofa.
3. .... (Has) we got science on Monday ?
4. The manager punished a number of workers for being late ..... (tomorrow).

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

*"Describing your bedroom"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**3 Alexandria Governorate**

Burj Al Arab Educational Directorate

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Tamer went to Al-Azhar Park on .....  
a. Saturday    b. Sunday    c. Tuesday    d. Friday
2. He saw a .....  
a. nurse    b. farmer  
c. vet    d. street-food seller
3. The food was .....  
a. delicious    b. bad    c. hot    d. salty
4. He went home .....  
a. early    b. late    c. at 5:00    d. at 6:00

**2 Complete the following dialogue :**

*Hoda is asking Sara about her interests.*

**Hoda :** What are you interested in ?

**Sara :** (1) .....

Hoda : (2) ..... ?

Sara : I enjoy reading at the library.

Hoda : (3) ..... ?

Sara : This book is about the history of Egypt.

Hoda : Do you like history ?

Sara : (4) ..... .

Hoda : Can I borrow this book, please ?

Sara : (5) ..... .

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Most people have three meals every day. They are breakfast, lunch and dinner. However, most of **them** don't care about what they should eat for each meal. Doctors say that people should eat lots of fruit and vegetables and drink a lot of water. To keep healthy, doctors advise people not to stay at home all the time. They should go for walks, do exercise or practise any sport.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to .....  
 a. fruits      b. vegetables      c. people      d. doctors
- ..... people care about food.  
 a. Few      b. Many      c. All      d. Much
- People should drink a lot of .....  
 a. cola      b. coffee      c. tea      d. water

#### B. Answer the following questions :

- Give a suitable title to this passage.  
 .....

- How many meals are there every day ?  
 .....

- Why do you think doctors advise people to do exercise ?  
 .....

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- ..... are important to keep the light out.  
 a. Chairs      b. Sofas      c. Mirrors      d. Curtains
- A deaf person can't .....  
 a. touch      b. see      c. hear      d. eat
- The ..... pumps blood around the body.  
 a. heart      b. brain      c. arm      d. leg

4. The ..... made the village covered with water.  
a. sun                      b. volcano                      c. drought                      d. flood
5. A ..... is a kind of jewellery.  
a. mask                      b. necklace                      c. glass                      d. desk
6. Basma is a ..... . She works for no money.  
a. swimmer                      b. princess                      c. volunteer                      d. player
7. The skin of the zebra is ..... .  
a. sharp                      b. worried                      c. messy                      d. striped
8. Rice ..... grown in Egypt.  
a. is                      b. are                      c. were                      d. have
9. I can run ..... as my friend.  
a. fast                      b. as fast                      c. faster                      d. more fast
10. He didn't use to ..... a big car.  
a. have                      b. has                      c. having                      d. had

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. I ..... (get usually) up early every day.
2. This is the man ..... (which) helped me yesterday.
3. They ..... (visit) the museum last week.
4. That bird can fly ..... (quick).

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

*"Your favourite sport"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**4 Qalyoubia Governorate**

East Shoubra El-Kheima  
Educational Directorate

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Mustafa has got lots of ..... .  
a. balls                      b. clothes                      c. shoes                      d. books
2. Mustafa likes to sit and read in the big ..... .  
a. sofa                      b. armchair                      c. chair                      d. bed
3. Mustafa keeps some of his ..... in the chest of drawers.  
a. clothes                      b. letters                      c. desks                      d. books
4. Mustafa washes his ..... before he eats.  
a. room                      b. books                      c. hands                      d. clothes

**2 Complete the following dialogue :**  
*A guide is showing some tourists the Karnak Temple.*

**Guide :** Welcome to Karnak Temple.

**Tourist :** Excuse me. What is this tall stone called ?

**Guide :** (1) .....

**Tourist :** A needle! (2) .....

**Guide :** It's nearly thirty meters tall.

**Tourist :** (3) .....

**Guide :** They're hieroglyphic writings.

**Tourist :** (4) .....

**Guide :** The ancient Egyptians built it. They were great people.

**Tourist :** (5) .....

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions :**

Last Friday, I went to the zoo with my family. It was a lovely day as we enjoyed seeing different kinds of animals. We saw the monkeys, baboons and gorillas, while they were doing funny movements; jumping, running and going from one branch to another. We saw a gorilla feeding her baby as our mothers do. At the hippo lake, we saw **several** hippos bathing in the water. The guard made one of them open its wide mouth while my sister quickly threw some grass into it. We saw several lions that were roaring and one of them was eating meat. In the end, we got tired and sat to have sandwiches and juice.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- Lions were ..... and one of them was eating meat.  
 a. roaring      b. swimming      c. jumping      d. hopping
- The underlined word "**several**" means .....  
 a. any      b. many      c. little      d. few
- In the end, they were .....  
 a. sad      b. angry      c. tired      d. careful

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. What is the passage about ?

.....

5. Which animals were doing funny movements ?

.....

6. What did the writer's sister throw into the hippo's open mouth ?

.....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. A lot of people lined in the streets to welcome their .....  
 a. film                      b. hall                      c. hero                      d. hole
2. I ..... like action films, but I love them now.  
 a. used to                      b. don't use to                      c. use to                      d. didn't use to
3. You ..... talk politely to your teachers.  
 a. mustn't                      b. can't                      c. must                      d. has to
4. The ancient Egyptians built the Karnak .....  
 a. Temple                      b. Statue                      c. Guide                      d. Theatre
5. I have a/an ..... for a job with a big company.  
 a. play                      b. interview                      c. film                      d. match
6. The boys ..... the bus to go to school every day.  
 a. is taking                      b. takes                      c. taking                      d. take
7. I am learning ..... these days. That's why I bought special pens and brushes.  
 a. swimming                      b. calligraphy                      c. running                      d. hunting
8. I bought a new ..... for flowers.  
 a. vase                      b. mask                      c. figure                      d. tool
9. Let's take the ..... . My friend's flat is on the eleventh floor.  
 a. plane                      b. ladder                      c. lift                      d. bike
10. A/An ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.  
 a. volunteer                      b. engineer                      c. female                      d. junior

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. When I ..... (am) a child, I used to sleep in my mother's room.
2. Do they ..... (has) a sewing machine ?
3. You ..... (must) leave dangerous things near children.
4. What did your grandfather ..... (used) to do ?

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

*"The importance of water"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

5

## Sharkia Governorate

Diarb Nigm Educational Directorate

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- Magdy Yacoub was born in .....  
a. Egypt      b. America      c. England      d. France
- He helps people with ..... problems.  
a. lung      b. heart      c. brain      d. kidney
- He stopped his work as a/an ..... a long time ago.  
a. oculist      b. dentist      c. surgeon      d. guide
- He opened a new hospital in .....  
a. Tanta      b. Zagazig      c. Luxor      d. Aswan

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Hoda and Salwa are talking about street cleaners.

Salwa : What do you think of street cleaners ?

Hoda : (1) .....

Salwa : (2) ..... ?

Hoda : I mean by "heroes" that they do something useful.

Salwa : Why do you think so ?

Hoda : (3) .....

Salwa : (4) ..... ?

Hoda : We should encourage them and give them more money .

Salwa : But I think money is not enough.

Hoda : (5) .....

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

A queen wanted to test how wise her husband was. She was standing far from him and was holding two flower baskets. One had real flowers and one had fake or unreal flowers. She asked him, "Which one is real? Which one is fake?" The king did not answer right away. He was silent for a moment. He saw some bees outside. They were on the roses. He said to a servant, "Open the window." The servant did what he said. The bees came in from the window. They went to the basket with real flowers. Now everyone knew which basket had real flowers. The queen was happy with the king and felt proud of him.

## A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The underlined pronoun "She" refers to the .....  
a. queen      b. king      c. basket      d. bee

2. The king was really .....  
 a. unwise      b. silly      c. wise      d. greedy
3. The king was silent for a moment. I think he was .....  
 a. sleeping      b. thinking      c. eating      d. swimming

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a title to the passage.

5. What were in the two flower baskets ?

6. What do you think of the king ?

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Alaa is a ..... She works without money.  
 a. voluntary      b. charity      c. pioneer      d. volunteer
2. You can only open this door in a/an ..... such as a fire.  
 a. party      b. charity      c. emergency      d. port
3. The ..... Egyptian team won the under 19 world cup finals in 2022.  
 a. junior      b. senior      c. children      d. oldest
4. The skin of zebra is .....  
 a. striped      b. strapped      c. sharp      d. curly
5. This chemical helps to ..... away mosquitos.  
 a. bring      b. run      c. give      d. keep
6. The room is untidy. This means it is .....  
 a. tidy      b. unhappy      c. messy      d. large
7. The ..... school is a school where children can live all the time.  
 a. board      b. boarding      c. broad      d. abroad
8. Does Shireen ..... go to work early ?  
 a. have to      b. has to      c. must      d. should
9. Shimaa ..... plays football in the street.  
 a. isn't      b. don't      c. doesn't      d. never
10. .... your friend ready for the exam last week ?  
 a. Were      b. Was      c. Did      d. Had

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. Most of the food we eat ..... (cook) by my sister.
2. Lots of birds ..... (fly) in the sky as we were sitting down.
3. My brother used to be a firefighter, but now he ..... (not be).
4. What ..... (Mahmoud have) to get for the trip ?

- 6** Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to your friend Fatma to tell her about night workers. Your name is Gamal and your email address is gamal@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is fatma@hotmail.com. :
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....

**6****Menofia Governorate**

Menouf Educational Directorate

- 1** Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

- Samir works for a ..... which looks after animals.  
a. charity      b. club      c. zoo      d. company
- The animals that are old or sick cannot ..... anymore.  
a. run      b. work      c. eat      d. play
- People donate ..... to the charity to buy food for the animals.  
a. carts      b. clothes      c. money      d. food
- They help to feed the animals and look ..... them.  
a. out      b. for      c. up      d. after

- 2** Complete the following dialogue :

*Gomana is meeting a British tourist who is visiting Egypt.*

Gomana : Hello, it's nice to meet you.

Tourist : (1) .....

Gomana : (2) ..... ?

Tourist : I'm from Britain.

Gomana : Is this your first visit to Egypt ?

Tourist : (3) ..... I came here last year.

Gomana : (4) ..... ?

Tourist : I visited the Egyptian Museum and the Pyramids.

Gomana : Have a nice time !

Tourist : (5) .....

- 3** Read the following passage then answer the questions :

A role model is someone who is considered to be a good example for other people to copy. My father is my role model. He is a businessman. He is very hard working and he works day and night to give us healthy

living. He protects me from all kinds of problems. My sister and I can talk about anything and everything with him.

Every night, we wait for him at the dinner table to chat with him. He also takes us for a walk after dinner and tells us interesting stories. He takes us for a picnic or a movie once a month. At the weekends, he volunteers at an old people's home.

My father enjoys playing chess with his friends. He believes in regular exercise and has also taught us the same. He wants me to excel in whatever I do. I want to make him feel proud of me one day.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- The main idea of the passage is .....  
 a. A good family                      b. A helpful person  
 c. A perfect role model              d. A successful person
- At the dinner table, they ..... to each other.  
 a. talk                      b. play                      c. listen                      d. write
- The underlined word "excel" means .....  
 a. spend                      b. succeed                      c. fail                      d. worry

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. Why is the father considered a good leader ? Mention one reason.  
 .....

5. How is the father helpful to his community ?  
 .....

6. How often does the father take them for a picnic or a movie ?  
 .....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- I go to school ..... ; I always go in the morning.  
 a. today                      b. daily                      c. in day                      d. week
- When you invite a person to your house, they are your .....  
 a. guess                      b. hosts                      c. guests                      d. hostess
- The Pharaohs were the first to write on .....  
 a. papyrus                      b. clay                      c. metal                      d. figure
- There are lots of ..... in the supermarket today. It's very crowded.  
 a. sailors                      b. customers                      c. objects                      d. crafts
- They give the footballer a ..... test to check his health.  
 a. random                      b. randomly                      c. cultural                      d. historic
- There was no rain for four months this winter, so now there is a .....  
 a. flood                      b. drought                      c. energy                      d. pollution

7. Deaf people can communicate ..... using sign language.  
 a. by                      b. on                      c. at                      d. with
8. Niagara falls ..... by the most people in the world.  
 a. visit                      b. visited                      c. is visit                      d. are visited
9. I went to the supermarket ..... is next to my house to buy cheese.  
 a. who                      b. when                      c. where                      d. which
10. You ..... swim here. It's against the law.  
 a. mustn't                      b. must                      c. should                      d. can

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

- One of the boys ..... (is) absent yesterday.
- Football is ..... (play) all over the world.
- He ..... (not use) to stay up late when he was young.
- It's a holiday today. We ..... (not have) go to school.

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

*"What you and your family do on holidays"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**7**

**Gharbia Governorate**

Samanoud Educational Directorate

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

- I am going on a .....  
 a. boat                      b. bus                      c. ride                      d. plane
- What is the weather like today ?  
 a. Warm                      b. Hot                      c. Windy                      d. Cold
- What do you have to wear ?  
 a. A hat                      b. Sunglasses  
 c. A jacket                      d. A hat and sunglasses
- I can see many ..... in the streets.  
 a. boats                      b. cars                      c. ships                      d. bikes

**2 Complete the following dialogue :**

*Nader and Omar are talking at the school playground.*

**Nader :** Do you have to study this evening, Omar ?

**Omar :** (1) .....

**Nader :** (2) ..... ?

**Omar :** I have to study because I have an English test.

**Nader :** (3) ..... ?

**Omar :** The test will be tomorrow .

**Nader :** It's nearly the end of the break. Which subject do you have ?

**Omar :** (4) .....

**Nader :** Do you like geography ?

**Omar :** (5) .....

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions :**

Reading is a very good habit. It gives us new ideas and improves our language. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place. It is better to wear your reading glasses if it is necessary. You should read different topics and underline the important points with your pen to remember what you read. Try to discuss what you have read with your friends. People read for many different goals. Some read for **enjoyment**; just to feel happy and spend a nice time. **Others** read for work. Students read for their study or research. All of us read the news and the weather report. We also read messages, emails and letters that we receive.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Reading is a ..... habit.

- a. bad                      b. useless                      c. careless                      d. good

2. The underlined word "**Others**" refers to .....

- a. goals                      b. people                      c. glasses                      d. points

3. The underlined word "**enjoyment**" in the passage means .....

- a. sadness                      b. sports                      c. happiness                      d. school

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

.....

5. Why do you think reading is useful for a student ?

.....

6. How can you remember what you read ?

.....

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The colour of the curtains ..... the carpets.  
a. deals      b. treats      c. plays      d. matches
- My sister is clever at ..... clothes.  
a. doing      b. working      c. sewing      d. seeing
- The Ancient Egyptian doctors wrote ..... their ideas thousands of years ago.  
a. out      b. down      c. of      d. inside
- You can see ..... in a museum.  
a. sights      b. statues      c. states      d. stages
- He couldn't walk at all. He needs a .....  
a. boat      b. wheelchair      c. hat      d. table
- ..... is a plant used for making clothes.  
a. Rice      b. Wheat      c. Cotton      d. Tomato
- Farmers ..... their animals every day.  
a. mind      b. send      c. feed      d. lend
- Amira ..... by the policeman.  
a. is helped      b. has helped      c. helped      d. help
- The lady ..... lives next door is very friendly.  
a. where      b. when      c. which      d. who
- ..... you got that game called "Odd One Out"?  
a. Do      b. Can      c. Have      d. Did

#### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- Shady ..... (have) to wear a uniform.
- As we ..... (walk) into the museum, we saw some old friends.
- Dr. Magdy ..... (use) to help poor people.
- The cat is sitting in the sun ..... (happy).

#### 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

*"A historic place you like most"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. What is Aya's home city ?  
a. Giza                      b. Minya                      c. Tanta                      d. Mansoura
2. Where is Aya's home city located ?  
a. Near the Nile                      b. Far from the Nile  
c. Near the canal                      d. Far from the canal
3. What is Minya known for ?  
a. Sweets                      b. Fruits                      c. Black honey                      d. Rice
4. Which plants are grown in Minya ?  
a. Cotton                      b. Cotton and potatoes  
c. Cotton and sugarcane                      d. Potatoes and wheat

**2 Complete the following dialogue :**

*Mona is talking to her friend, Amany.*

**Mona** : Amany, can I ask you some questions about you and your family ?

**Amany** : (1) .....

**Mona** : (2) ..... ?

**Amany** : There are four people in my family.

**Mona** : When do you get up ?

**Amany** : (3) .....

**Mona** : (4) ..... ?

**Amany** : At the weekend, we go out to the parks or visit my grandmother.

**Mona** : Do you like sport ?

**Amany** : (5) ..... I like tennis.

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions :**

A nature reserve is an area of land in which animals and plants are protected. Nature reserves may be built by the government in some countries, or by private landowners. There are 30 nature reserves in Egypt which cover 12% of the Egyptian land. Those nature reserves were built to **protect** the Egyptian nature. Egypt announced a plan to build 40 nature reserves to help protect the natural resources and the culture and the history of those areas. The largest nature reserve in Egypt is Gebel Elba (35,600 square kilometres) in the southeast, on the Red Sea coast. Only a few tourists can visit these places because some of **them** may damage these nature reserves.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to .....
  - a. tourists
  - b. the government
  - c. nature reserves
  - d. landowners
2. The word "**protect**" means to .....
  - a. damage
  - b. keep safe
  - c. drop
  - d. throw
3. .... can build nature reserves around the world.
  - a. Governments
  - b. Private landowners
  - c. Universities
  - d. Both (a) and (b)

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. What's the passage about ?  
.....
5. What is a nature reserve ?  
.....
6. Why do you think Egypt planned to build more nature reserves ?  
.....

**4** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Shady is deaf, but he understands us because we use .....  
a. CD player                      b. sign language  
c. English language              d. German
2. When you invite a person to your house, they are your .....  
a. guess                      b. hosts                      c. guests                      d. hostess
3. A ..... gives money to people or places.  
a. scientist                      b. surgeon                      c. coach                      d. patron
4. This chemical helps to keep ..... mosquitos.  
a. away                      b. with                      c. by                      d. up
5. We all remember my grandfather's ..... He always helped us when we were children.  
a. unkind                      b. unkindness                      c. darkness                      d. kindness
6. There was no rain for four months this winter, so now there is a .....  
a. flood                      b. drought                      c. energy                      d. pollution
7. A ..... is a place where students stay all week and not just the day.  
a. sports school                      b. university  
c. boarding school                      d. kindergarten
8. I can't come to the park because I ..... the house at the moment.  
a. clean                      b. am cleaning                      c. cleans                      d. cleaned

9. I saw Ahmed in the park ..... we often play football.  
 a. which                      b. who                      c. when                      d. where
10. The pollution in the countryside is not as ..... as the pollution in cities.  
 a. worse                      b. worst                      c. bad                      d. more bad

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. My sister speaks very ..... (quiet). (.....)
2. Port Said ..... (locate) in the north of Egypt. (.....)
3. While we were shopping in the market, I ..... (see) my friends. (.....)
4. At the weekends, I ..... (not have to) get up early; I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock. (.....)

**6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :  
 "Your daily routine"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**9 Beheira Governorate**

Damanhour Educational Directorate

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. The Ancient Egyptian ..... helped people with burns.  
 a. servants                      b. kings                      c. queens                      d. doctors
2. They understood that the ..... pumps blood.  
 a. lung                      b. heart                      c. brain                      d. head
3. They used plants to stop .....  
 a. infections                      b. pollution                      c. illness                      d. smoking
4. They also knew how to ..... broken bones.  
 a. burn                      b. sew                      c. mind                      d. mend

**2 Complete the following dialogue :**

*Omar and Ali are talking about the next weekend.*

**Omar :** How are you Ali ?

**Ali :** (1) .....

**Omar :** (2) ..... ?

Ali : I am going to join a charity.

Omar : (3) ..... ?

Ali : To help poor and disabled people.

Omar : What can you do to help them ?

Ali : (4) ..... .

Omar : Can I join this charity ?

Ali : (5) ..... .

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Teenagers have many problems. They spend much time on social media. They may face bullying. They prefer living alone. They need more help to feel happy. They should try new sports, they need to make new friends, they also should be respected. Teenagers need to go outside to relax and enjoy the nature. Going to the park helps **them** feel happy. They need a lot of sleep. Young people who sleep eight to ten hours a night are much happier! People need each other. Spend time with their family makes them feel happy.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to .....  
a. people      b. family      c. teenagers      d. friends
- A teenager is a person who is between ..... years.  
a. 13 : 19      b. 5 : 10      c. 30 : 40      d. 50 : 60
- ..... is a big problem which faces the youth.  
a. Sports      b. Bullying      c. Nature      d. Pollution

#### B. Answer the following questions :

- Give a suitable title to this passage.  
.....

- What should teenagers do to feel happy ?  
.....

- What problems do they have ?  
.....

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- This is the village ..... I was born.  
a. which      b. where      c. that      d. when
- His handwriting is bad. He should learn .....  
a. biography      b. painting      c. maths      d. calligraphy
- You need to ..... your computer. It doesn't work.  
a. mind      b. damage      c. bring      d. repair
- ..... people can't speak or hear.  
a. Blind      b. Deaf      c. Disabled      d. Brave

## DAYS 5,6&7

5. There is a ..... because there is a lot of rain.  
a. flood      b. drought      c. paper      d. fire
6. A ..... is a piece of jewellery she wears around her neck.  
a. mask      b. vase      c. ring      d. necklace
7. That bird is flying very .....  
a. careful      b. good      c. fast      d. quick
8. As I was playing, the light ..... out.  
a. gone      b. went      c. goes      d. go
9. This story is ..... You should read it.  
a. ugly      b. weak      c. fantastic      d. story
10. To be ..... means not being with other people.  
a. happy      b. busy      c. worried      d. alone

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The letter ..... (write) by Ahmed two days ago.
2. When ..... (do) he get up every day ?
3. I can't go out now because I ..... (do) my homework.
4. You ..... (should) drink fizzy drinks.

### 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

*"Helping the environment"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 10 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate

Desouk Educational Directorate

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. The ..... handball team are heroes.  
a. French      b. Arab      c. Egyptian      d. English
2. They won the handball ..... Cup of Nations in 2020.  
a. Africa      b. World      c. Europe      d. Arab
3. The final match was against .....  
a. Egypt      b. Sudan      c. Algeria      d. Tunisia
4. Our team scored ..... goals.  
a. 24      b. 22      c. 27      d. 29

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

*Tamer and Ramez are talking about charities.*

**Tamer** : Hello, Ramez. Where are you going this weekend ?

**Ramez** : Hello, Tamer. (1) .....

**Tamer** : A charity! (2) ..... ?

**Ramez** : Because I want to help the disabled old people.

**Tamer** : (3) ..... ?

**Ramez** : I will wash their clothes and give them medicine .

**Tamer** : How often do you go there ?

**Ramez** : (4) .....

**Tamer** : Can I work for this charity with you ?

**Ramez** : (5) .....

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

We know how Ancient Egyptian doctors helped their patients because they wrote down their ideas thousands of years ago. Ancient Egyptian doctors understood that the heart pumps blood around the body. However, they used to think that the heart also pumps air to lungs! They were also the first people to understand some of the things the brain does, but they did not know how important it was. Doctors used to use plants to help people with burns and to stop infections. We still use some of these plants today. They also knew how to mend broken bones and sew cuts.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....  
 a. eye                      b. hair                      c. ear                      d. brain
- The underlined word "infections" means .....  
 a. happiness              b. sadness              c. illness              d. health
- The ancient Egyptian doctors knew how to sew .....  
 a. cuts                      b. hearts                      c. lungs                      d. bones

### B. Answer the following questions :

- Give a suitable title to the passage.  
 .....
- How do you know that Ancient Egyptian doctors helped their patients?  
 .....
- What did they use to know about the heart ?  
 .....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- Magda walks ..... to her work.  
a.slow      b.slowly      c.slower      d.slowest
- The ..... are people without enough money to live on.  
a.rich      b.young      c.poor      d.brave
- It is important to learn about ..... places around the world.  
a.historic      b.history      c.funny      d.historian
- Did he ..... ride his bike ?  
a.use      b.used      c.used to      d.use to
- Magdy stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time .....  
a.ago      b.yesterday      c.last      d.lost
- My parents ..... money to a charity that helps old people.  
a.earn      b.donate      c.win      d.gain
- The building is very tall, but we can go to the top in the .....  
a.stairs      b.left      c.lift      d.attic
- ..... take in air and help us to breathe.  
a.Brains      b.Hearts      c.Legs      d.Lungs
- Hany was reading a story ..... his mom entered.  
a.while      b.as      c.because      d.when
- An earthquake is a natural .....  
a.kindness      b.disorder      c.disaster      d.infection

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

- Where are these shoes ..... (sell) ?
- Alexandria is the place ..... (when) I love so much.
- It ..... (be) cold yesterday.
- Trains are ..... (comfortable) than cars.

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

*"The charity work I like most"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# 11 Damietta Governorate

Kafr Saad Educational Directorate

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

- Malek's father had a new ..... and moved to a new town.  
a. shirt      b. job      c. flat      d. shop
- In the new ....., Malek had new friends.  
a. street      b. village      c. room      d. school
- Malek is going on the school trip to .....  
a. Fayoum      b. Cairo      c. Luxor      d. Aswan
- On the school trip, Malek is going to visit ..... places.  
a. amazing      b. terrible      c. weak      d. careful

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

*Omar is talking to Yaseen about teenagers.*

**Omar** : What are you doing, Yaseen ?

**Yaseen** : (1) .....

**Omar** : What is the book about ?

**Yaseen** : (2) .....

**Omar** : Teenagers! (3) ..... ?

**Yaseen** : Teenagers are people aged from 13 to 19.

**Omar** : What should teenagers do to feel happy ?

**Yaseen** : (4) .....

**Omar** : (5) ..... ?

**Yaseen** : Teenagers should sleep eight hours a night.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

A zoo is a place where we can see animals from different countries. There is usually at least one zoo in every country. In Egypt, there is one zoo in every big city or town. The biggest is in Giza. Some people do not like zoos. They think that it is **cruel** to keep wild animals not free and put them in cages. Other people think that if the cage is large, the animals will be happy.

The animals have good food every day and if they are ill, they are given medicine. **They** do not have to worry about enemies. Most children enjoy visiting the zoo. They usually prefer to look at the large animals. Sometimes visitors are very unkind to the animals. They throw things at them.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to .....  
a. animals      b. things      c. people      d. children
2. The underlined word "**cruel**" in the passage means .....  
a. long      b. unreal      c. tall      d. unkind
3. Some visitors ..... things at animals.  
a. enjoy      b. prefer      c. throw      d. see

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title to the passage.  
.....
5. What happens to the animals if they are ill ?  
.....
6. Do you think it is good or bad to have a zoo in every country ?  
Why / Why not ?  
.....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Can you ..... my mother for me because my phone is not working ?  
a. come      b. text      c. like      d. talk
2. We are sitting ..... on the rocks because they are very sharp.  
a. careful than      b. careful      c. carefully      d. as careful
3. In 2019, the ..... Egyptian team won the under-19 World Cup.  
a. junior      b. senior      c. general      d. easy
4. In a museum, you ..... touch the objects.  
a. must      b. have to      c. mustn't      d. don't have to
5. A/An ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.  
a. volunteer      b. emergency      c. scientist      d. work
6. Their new house is in the country near a railway .....  
a. tap      b. line      c. sofa      d. routine
7. It is usually easy to ..... with people in other countries if you speak English.  
a. communicate      b. repair      c. make      d. visit
8. It was raining for days and then there was a ..... , so people used boats to leave their homes  
a. flood      b. rubbish      c. drought      d. pollution
9. They gave the footballer a/an ..... test to check his health.  
a. kind      b. dirty      c. old      d. random
10. This is the bird ..... lives in the desert.  
a. that      b. who      c. when      d. where

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Fady ..... (wear) a jacket at the moment because it is very cold.
2. Bikes are ..... (green) than cars.
3. While Rania ..... (take) photos of the animals, she lost her phone.
4. My grandfather ..... (use) to play football when he was young.

## 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"A trip to the Pyramids."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 12 Port Said Governorate

Port Said Educational Directorate

### • Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Ali thinks that the girl that came to his shop was a .....  
 a. student      b. teacher      c. servant      d. doctor
2. The ..... usually asks for money.  
 a. girl      b. beggar      c. baker      d. princess
3. The girl gave the beggar most of her .....  
 a. money      b. clothes      c. gold      d. cakes
4. The girl ..... like a princess.  
 a. swam      b. behaved      c. ran      d. walked

### • Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

*Ayman is watching a programme about climate change :*

**Father** : Ayman, what are you doing ?

**Ayman** : (5) .....

- |                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| a. I'm reading a book.      | b. I'm watching a programme |
| c. I'm writing a paragraph. | d. I'm doing a project.     |

**Father** : What is the programme about ?

**Ayman** : (6) .....

- |                              |                                  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a. It's about climate change | b. It's about animals            |
| c. It's about plants         | d. It's about life in the desert |

**Father** : (7) ..... ?

- |                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| a. What does it do     | b. What does it work |
| c. When does it happen | d. What does it mean |

**Ayman** : It means that the weather changes and becomes hotter.

**Father** : Is it dangerous ?

**Ayman** : (8) .....

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| a. Yes, of course | b. I'm not sure  |
| c. No, it isn't   | d. I don't agree |

**Father** : (9) ..... ?

- |                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| a. How much is it      | b. How long does it take |
| c. Why is it dangerous | d. Why is it difficult   |

**Ayman** : It is dangerous because it damages the environment.

• **A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

10. This ..... helps me to read in bed at night.  
a. lamb                      b. lamp                      c. basin                      d. curtain
11. At the weekend, Ziad's usually ..... lazy.  
a. quiet                      b. quit                      c. quite                      d. quickly
12. Samira Moussa was Egypt's first ..... nuclear scientist.  
a. male                      b. female                      c. girl                      d. daughter
13. The ..... at the Karnak Temple are amazing.  
a. ruin                      b. ruins                      c. rules                      d. roles
14. " ..... " means something is happening without a plan.  
a. Random                      b. Full                      c. Friendly                      d. Tidy
15. Port Said is ..... to Suez by the Suez Canal.  
a. located                      b. connected                      c. caught                      d. grown
16. Al Azhar Park is a/an ..... place. Children like playing there.  
a. terrible                      b. bad                      c. ugly                      d. attractive
17. I can't help you. I ..... for the exam now.  
a. studied                      b. studying                      c. am studying                      d. was studying
18. .... he use to be the captain of the football team ?  
a. Did                      b. Does                      c. Is                      d. Was
19. In the museum, you ..... touch the objects.  
a. must                      b. can                      c. mustn't                      d. don't have

**B. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:**

20. Lots of birds ..... (fly) in the sky as we were sitting.  
a. will fly                      b. can fly                      c. were flying                      d. are flying

21. My uncle Hany is a person ..... (which) is always very kind to me.  
 a. who                      b. whose                      c. where                      d. when
22. This new phone is ..... (bad) than my old one.  
 a. good                      b. nice                      c. worse                      d. worst
23. Giza ..... (know) for its ancient pyramids.  
 a. knowing                      b. knew                      c. is known                      d. known

• **Read the following text, then answer the questions :**

Many animals in the world today are endangered. People always kill animals for their meat or their skin. Others are killed because they are harmful for farmers. Some animals such as tigers and elephants used to live in great numbers in India. But people have hunted them so much that there aren't many left alive. In South Africa, many different birds and animals have lost **their** habitat in the forest because thousands of trees have been cut down or burnt. People then use the land for farming or for building roads and towns. We are too late to save some animals however; there are now some organizations to protect endangered animals.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

24. The underlined word "**their**" refers to .....  
 a. animals                      b. birds                      c. birds and animals                      d. people
25. The text is talking about .....  
 a. pollution                      b. endangered animals  
 c. sports                      d. holidays
26. Tigers lived in great numbers in .....  
 a. China                      b. Egypt                      c. France                      d. India

**B. Answer the following questions :**

27. Why do people kill animals ?

.....

28. What happened when people cut down trees ?

.....

29. Do you think that we can save the lives of animals ? Why ? Why not ?

.....

**30. Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

*"Your home city"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 13 Ismailia Governorate

Ismailia Educational Directorate

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- The text is about .....  
 a. Minya                      b. Tanta                      c. Cairo                      d. Port Said
- Where is the city located ? - It's located in the ..... of Egypt.  
 a. north                      b. south                      c. east                      d. west
- The city is known for its .....  
 a. temples                      b. ancient monuments  
 c. delicious sweets                      d. Pyramids
- What is grown there ? - .....  
 a. Cotton                      b. Rice                      c. Wheat                      d. Sugar

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mona asks Ola about her visit to Alexandria.

**Mona:** Ola, where did you go last Friday ?

**Ola :** (1) .....

**Mona:** Why did you go to Alexandria ?

**Ola :** (2) .....

**Mona:** How often do you visit your uncle there ?

**Ola :** (3) .....

**Mona:** (4) ..... ?

**Ola :** He is a doctor.

**Mona:** (5) ..... ?

**Ola :** I stayed there for a week.

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

We don't know who made tea for the first time, but we have heard and read many stories about that. **Nearly** five thousand years ago, the king of China boiled his drinking water under a tree. Some of the leaves fell into the pot. When he drank the water, he liked the taste very much. He thought that the taste came from the leaves of the tree. People drink tea because they think **it** helps them stay awake for a long time. We all know that tea is grown in China and India. Many people like to drink tea with milk. Others like to have it with lemon when they feel tired. People usually have tea in the morning and after lunch.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- The underlined pronoun "**Nearly**" means .....  
a. opposite    b. almost    c. nearby    d. far
- People usually drink tea with ..... when they are tired.  
a. milk    b. orange    c. lemon    d. leaves
- Tea is grown in .....  
a. Japan    b. China    c. India    d. both b and c

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. Why do people drink tea ?

.....

5. When do people usually drink tea ?

.....

6. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to ?

.....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.  
a. hero    b. surgeon    c. police officer    d. sports coach
- A/An ..... does experiments to study and find out about how things work.  
a. event    b. scientist    c. worker    d. hero
- A ..... is an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something.  
a. team    b. charity    c. coach    d. competition
- A/An ..... is something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about.  
a. crescent    b. emergency    c. charity    d. organisation
- The ..... is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature.  
a. mountain    b. earthquake    c. countryside    d. crescent
- Most big shops and supermarkets are found in the city .....  
a. corner    b. centre    c. border    d. wall
- My mother often ..... me to get my school bag ready before I sleep.  
a. reminds    b. remembers    c. writes    d. shows
- Birds always ..... in the early morning.  
a. singing    b. to singing    c. sing    d. sings
- You ..... eat fast food every day. It's very bad for you.  
a. must    b. have to    c. don't have    d. shouldn't

## DAYS 5,6&7

10. Alexandria ..... in the north of Egypt.  
 a. located      b. is locating      c. is located      d. locates

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. It isn't ..... (rain) outside, but it's a bit cloudy.
2. Yasser's grandmother ..... (use to) work in a hospital.
3. Tennis is a sport ..... (who) my sister plays every week.
4. The canal is ..... (polluted) than it was before.

### 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

*"Your favourite hobby"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 14 Fayoum Governorate

Al-Sideeq Educational Directorate

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Mr Othman is my .....  
 a. friend      b. neighbour      c. teacher      d. uncle
2. Mr Othman helped me pass my ..... exam.  
 a. English      b. maths      c. history      d. geography
3. Mr Othman was teaching at a ..... school.  
 a. secondary      b. nursery      c. primary      d. preparatory
4. He used his old ..... to help his students.  
 a. school books      b. diaries      c. stories      d. tools

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

*Salma and Nada are talking about the summer holiday.*

**Salma** : Where did you go last summer ?

**Nada** : (1) .....

**Salma** : Where did you stay ?

**Nada** : (2) .....

**Salma** : (3) ..... ?

**Nada** : We travelled by car.

**Salma** : Did you swim in the sea ?

Nada : (4) .....

Salma : (5) .....

Mada : We stayed there for a week.

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Last week, Samy decided to spend his weekend in Alexandria with his cousin Adel who lives there. He got up early and drove before it was busy on the road. When he arrived **there**, he met Adel at a café where they had something cold to drink as it was very hot on that day. His cousin Adel is a great doctor. First, they went to the beach where they had a delicious meal of fish. When the sun was high, they swam for some time in the sea. At the sunset, they left the beach and went shopping in a **large** mall in the centre of the town. Samy bought a very expensive mobile for his wife and a lot of toys for his children.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The underlined word "**large**" means .....  
a. big                      b. bad                      c. small                      d. tiny
- The underlined word "**there**" refers to .....  
a. the café                      b. the beach                      c. the mall                      d. Alexandria
- Adel spent ..... in Alexandria.  
a. a week                      b. a day                      c. a fortnight                      d. an hour

#### B. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the passage about ?

5. Where did Samy and his cousin have a meal of fish ?

6. Do you think Samy is rich ? Why ?

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Mohammed Ali was the ..... of Egypt in the past. He was very important.  
a. roller                      b. ruler                      c. baker                      d. waiter
- He lives on the 17<sup>th</sup> floor. He always takes the .....  
a. lift                      b. steps                      c. ladder                      d. bike
- Pieces of equipment that you can use to make or repair things are called .....  
a. pools                      b. roles                      c. tools                      d. poles
- We put up some new ..... on the window of the living room.  
a. cushions                      b. carpets                      c. mirrors                      d. curtains

## DAYS 5,6&7

5. A ..... is a person who can show you round a place.  
a. cook      b. waiter      c. tourist      d. guide
6. Please, turn the ..... off. I want to sleep.  
a. cupboard      b. sofa      c. lamp      d. desk
7. This book is very interesting. I ..... it to you.  
a. recommend      b. tell      c. say      d. warn
8. Students ..... follow their school rules.  
a. are      b. have      c. must      d. had
9. This is the doctor ..... examined my brother.  
a. where      b. who      c. which      d. when
10. My friend ..... to school early.  
a. go always      b. goes always      c. always goes      d. always go

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. My uncle is a good driver. He drives ..... (careful).
2. While I ..... (take) a bath, the light went out.
3. Maths is ..... (difficult) than science.
4. When I was ten, I used to ..... (was) funny.

### 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

*"The job you prefer"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 15 Beni Suef Governorate

El Fashn Educational Directorate

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. What does Noha like ? - Her .....  
a. bedroom      b. school      c. home      d. bank
2. There's always ..... when she opens the curtains.  
a. wind      b. sunlight      c. storms      d. moonlight
3. How is her wardrobe ?  
a. Small      b. Long      c. Big      d. Tall
4. What hasn't Noha got in her room ?  
a. Wardrobe      b. Sofa      c. Vase      d. Basin

**2 Complete the following dialogue :**

*Mona and Heba are talking about a famous footballer.*

**Mona :** Do you like sports, Heba ?

**Heba :** (1) .....

**Mona :** (2) ..... ?

**Heba :** Mohammed Salah, he's a great footballer.

**Mona :** Does he score a lot of goals ?

**Heba :** (3) .....

**Mona :** (4) ..... ?

**Heba :** He's short and has got curly hair.

**Mona :** Which country is Mohammed Salah from ?

**Heba :** (5) .....

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions :**

Egypt is a great country in the Middle East. Its capital is Cairo city. The main language is Arabic. The weather in Egypt is fine all the year, so many tourists come from all over the world to enjoy it. When **they** come, they enjoy its ancient places such as the Egyptian Museum to see the ancient statues. They also visit Luxor and Aswan to enjoy and see Luxor Temples and The High Dam in Aswan. Also they visit the Cairo Tower where they can have a look on the whole city of Cairo. It is a beautiful view. Tourists can have delicious meals at the restaurants in Cairo.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- The main language in Egypt is .....  
 a. Arabic      b. French      c. Japanese      d. Turkish
- The weather in Egypt is ..... all the year.  
 a. cold      b. fine      c. bad      d. very hot
- The underlined word "**they**" refers to .....  
 a. status      b. temples      c. tourists      d. fans

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

5. What is the capital of Egypt ?

6. Why do you think tourists like to visit Egypt ?

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- My daily ..... starts when I get up at seven.  
 a. way      b. time      c. routine      d. subject

2. We need a computer engineer to ..... our computer.  
a. repair      b. prepare      c. care      d. rare
3. The ..... take in air and help us to breathe.  
a. brains      b. lungs      c. hearts      d. legs
4. A ..... gives you light.  
a. lake      b. lamb      c. lamp      d. leave
5. Hossam lives in a big ..... of flats in Giza.  
a. way      b. block      c. black      d. lock
6. We need more rain or there might be a .....  
a. drought      b. flood      c. rubbish      d. fuel
7. It is ..... to get worried or feel sad sometimes.  
a. unusual      b. normal      c. strange      d. abnormal
8. Why is Amal ..... tired ?  
a. felt      b. feels      c. feeling      d. feel
9. In a museum, you ..... touch the objects.  
a. must      b. mustn't      c. have to      d. has to
10. .... your father got a computer ?  
a. Do      b. Has      c. Can      d. Have

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. .... (Does) you ready to play ?
2. That bird is flying very ..... (faster)
3. This is the school ..... (who) the country built last year.
4. Figs are ..... (delicious) as chocolate.

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

*"A job you want to do"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**16**

**Minya Governorate**

**Abu Kurkas Educational Directorate**

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. When did Nabil go to Al Azhar Park ?  
a. On Friday      b. On Monday      c. On Sunday      d. On Tuesday

2. Who did they see ?  
a. A nurse  
b. A doctor  
c. A street-food seller  
d. A teacher
3. When did they go home ?  
a. Early  
b. Late  
c. At 5:00  
d. At : 7:00
4. How was the food ?  
a. Rotten  
b. Bad  
c. Funny  
d. Delicious

**2 Complete the following dialogue :**

**Hana and Nada are talking about the summer holiday in Alexandria.**

**Hana** : Where did you go last summer ?

**Nada** : (1) .....

**Hana** : Where did you stay?

**Nada** : (2) .....

**Hana** : (3) ..... ?

**Nada** : We travelled by car.

**Hana** : Did you swim in the sea ?

Nada : (4) .....

**Hana** : (5) ..... ?

**Nada** : We stayed there for a week.

**3** Read the following, then answer the questions :

One day, Nabil went to town to buy new clothes. First, he tried on a pair of **trousers**. He didn't like the trousers, so he gave them back to the shopkeeper. Then, he tried a jacket which had the same price as the trousers. Nabil was pleased with the jacket, and **he** left the shop. Before he drove home, the shopkeeper ran out. "You didn't pay the jacket!" said the shopkeeper. "But I gave you the trousers in exchange for the jacket, didn't I?" replied Nabil. "Yes, you didn't pay for the trousers, either!" said the shopkeeper. "But I didn't buy the trousers," replied Nabil. "I am not so stupid to pay for something which I never bought."

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Nabil was pleased with the .....  
a. trousers      b. hat      c. jacket      d. shoes
2. The underlined word "**trousers**" is the same meaning as .....  
a. shoes      b. pants      c. skirts      d. shirts
3. Nabil gave the ..... back to the shopkeeper.  
a. shop      b. jacket      c. money      d. trousers

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. What is this passage about ?

5. What does the underlined word "he" refer to ?

6. What do you think of Nabil ?

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- We should protect the ..... . That's the place where we live.  
a. school      b. environment      c. climate      d. presentation
- A ..... is a place where we can go for picnics.  
a. park      b. bark      c. mark      d. cinema
- My room ..... every day.  
a. cleaned      b. is cleaning      c. is cleaned      d. cleans
- Someone opened the door while I ..... .  
a. was sleeping      b. was slept      c. sleeping      d. slept
- Ahmed is a ..... . He works for no money.  
a. volunteer      b. voluntary      c. pioneer      d. charity
- Minia is ..... in the south of Egypt.  
a. caught      b. made      c. located      d. grown
- My grandparents live in a ..... of flats.  
a. house      b. black      c. block      d. chest
- We need more rain or there might be ..... .  
a. flood      b. rubbish      c. drought      d. fuel
- The heart ..... blood around the body.  
a. cooks      b. pumps      c. takes      d. gives
- Which is ..... , the train or the plane ?  
a. fast      b. faster      c. fastest      d. as fast as

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

- Figs are ..... (delicious) as chocolate.
- Mr Adel is the teacher ..... (where) taught my sister.
- He didn't use to ..... (had) a big car.
- What ..... (you have) got in your bag ?

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

*"A person that you are proud of"*

**17****Assiut Governorate**

Sahel Selim Educational Directorate

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

- Salma is ..... years old.  
a. eleven      b. ten      c. thirteen      d. twelve
- What's Salma's favourite subject ?  
a. Maths      b. English      c. History      d. Arabic
- Salma goes to a ..... school.  
a. preparatory      b. primary      c. secondary      d. technical
- What sport does Salma like ?  
a. Basketball      b. Football      c. Karate      d. Tennis

**2 Complete the following dialogue :**

Tamer is asking Maher about his father's job.

Tamer : Hi, Maher. How are you ?

Maher : (1) .....

Tamer : What's your father's job ?

Maher : (2) .....

Tamer : (3) ..... ?

Maher : He works in a hospital in Cairo.

Tamer : (4) ..... ?

Maher : He works for eight hours a day.

Tamer : Does he like helping sick people ?

Maher : (5) .....

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions :**

Last Summer, Tarek wanted to go on a holiday. He decided to stay for a week on his uncle's farm and another week on the beach in Hurghada. First, he travelled with his parents to Hurghada by train. They stayed at a nice hotel. In the morning, they went swimming and enjoyed the beach. In the evening, they used to do the shopping. After this week, Tarek left his parents in Hurghada and travelled to his uncle's farm. **There**, he spent a very good day. He spent it with his cousins. In the morning, they ate boiled eggs for breakfast. In the afternoon, they enjoyed walking in the fields and the nice weather.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- Tarek went to Hurghada with his .....  
a. friends      b. parents      c. sister      d. brother

2. In Hurghada, Tarek's family stayed at a nice .....  
 a. hotel      b. house      c. castle      d. tower
3. The underlined pronoun **There** refers to .....  
 a. Hurghada      b. beach      c. shopping      d. the farm

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. When did Tarek go to his uncle's farm ?  
 .....

5. How did Tarek go to Hurghada ?  
 .....

6. Do you think Tarek spent a nice holiday ?  
 .....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. There's a brown ..... on the floor in the living room.  
 a. card      b. carpet      c. curtain      d. dinner
2. A ..... is a pot used for holding flowers.  
 a. necklace      b. mask      c. vase      d. tool
3. .... are pieces of money made of metal.  
 a. Coins      b. Pots      c. Blocks      d. Masks
4. Hala is very ....., she never puts her toys away.  
 a. loudly      b. messy      c. lucky      d. quickly
5. He works as a ..... for a charity.  
 a. servant      b. teacher      c. volunteer      d. tourist
6. We use ..... for making clothes.  
 a. wheat      b. corn      c. rice      d. cotton
7. The ..... pumps blood around the body.  
 a. heart      b. brain      c. lungs      d. nose
8. While I ....., the phone rang.  
 a. was slept      b. is sleeping      c. was sleeping      d. slept
9. We ..... touch things in the museum.  
 a. haven't      b. mustn't      c. should      d. must
10. Africa is ..... than Europe.  
 a. hot      b. hottest      c. hotter      d. as hot

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. Amr ..... (watch) TV now.
2. The boy ..... (which) is sitting next to me is very kind.
3. Mai ..... (have) to wear a uniform at school.
4. .... (Do) you use to live in a house ?

## 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"A hero you are proud of"

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 18

### Sohag Governorate

### Juhainah Educational Directorate

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- Ali is a/an ..... .  
a. doctor                      b. nurse                      c. teacher                      d. engineer
- Ali works in a ..... .  
a. hospital                      b. school                      c. station                      d. factory
- Ali has ..... children.  
a. two                      b. three                      c. four                      d. no
- Ali goes to work ..... .  
a. by car                      b. by bus                      c. on foot                      d. by train

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

*Sama and Malak are talking about a trip.*

**Sama :** Hello, Malak. How are you ?

**Malak :** I'm fine. How was your trip, Sama ?

**Sama :** (1) .....

**Malak :** Wow ! (2) ..... ?

**Sama :** No, I went with my friends. We visited nice places.

**Malak :** Did you buy any souvenirs ?

**Sama :** (3) .....

**Malak :** (4) ..... ?

**Sama :** We went by the school bus.

**Malak :** When did you come back ?

**Sama :** (5) .....

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Goha used to go to the village market to sell donkeys. One day, on his way home with his donkeys, he felt tired. He decided to ride one of the donkeys. He counted the donkeys but there were only nine donkeys. He got off the donkey and counted them again. This time there were

ten donkeys. He got back on his donkey and counted them again once more. He was surprised there were only nine donkeys. He decided to get off his donkey. He preferred to walk with ten donkeys rather than ride with nine donkeys.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- Goha used to go to ..... to sell donkeys.  
a. school      b. hospital      c. factory      d. village market
- There were ..... donkeys with Goha.  
a. eight      b. nine      c. ten      d. eleven
- Goha's story is .....  
a. funny      b. amazed      c. bored      d. noisy

**B. Answer the following questions :**

- What did Goha decide to do ?  
.....
- In your opinion, what do you think of Goha ?  
.....
- What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to ?  
.....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- The ..... team won the under 19 World Cup Final against Germany  
a. senior      b. junior      c. lazy      d. greedy
- Dina ..... the room with her sister.  
a. sings      b. shares      c. jumps      d. eats
- We use ..... on windows to keep the light out.  
a. curtains      b. carpets      c. basin      d. armchair
- Magdy Yacoub is a heart ....., he helps people with heart problems.  
a. nurse      b. seller      c. surgeon      d. police officer
- Manal is learning traditional Arabic ..... to improve her handwriting.  
a. music      b. English      c. geography      d. calligraphy
- A ..... act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone for no reason.  
a. dangerous      b. distance      c. random      d. forget
- I help to look ..... my little sister when my parents are busy.  
a. after      b. from      c. on      d. to
- ..... you got a watermelon, Grandma ?  
a. Are      b. Have      c. Do      d. will
- He ..... goes to school on Friday. It's a holiday.  
a. don't      b. doesn't      c. never      d. isn't

10. Sameera Moussa was born ..... 1917.

- a. at                      b. in                      c. on                      d. for

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. My sister is smiling ..... (happy) at her birthday party.
2. As we ..... (walk) into the museum, we saw some huge statues.
3. You must ..... (is) quiet in the library.
4. The girl ..... (which) came to my baker's today wasn't a servant.

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

*"Your daily routine"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**19 Qena Governorate**

Qeft Educational Directorate

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. How old is Kareem ?  
a. three                      b. thirty                      c. twenty                      d. thirteen
2. Kareem likes visiting .....  
a. parks                      b. historical places  
c. stadiums                      d. clubs
3. What's Kareem's favourite hobby ?  
a. Reading                      b. Running                      c. Swimming                      d. Drawing
4. Kareem's friends are .....  
a. cruel                      b. brave                      c. kind                      d. noisy

**2 Complete the following dialogue :**

*Mariam wants to visit Luxor Museum. She is calling for information.*

**Woman :** Hello. How can I help you ?

**Mariam :** I want to visit Luxor museum. (1) ..... ?

**Woman :** Certainly. You can ask any questions.

**Mariam :** When can I visit the museum ?

**Woman :** (2) .....

**Mariam :** (3) ..... ?

**Woman :** Online or at the ticket office outside the museum.

**Mariam :** How much does a ticket cost ?

## DAYS 5,6&7

Woman : (4) .....

Mariam : (5) .....

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Once, three friends were travelling to a town. They were very rich. They carried gold coins and jewels with them. On their way, they passed a village. The people of the village looked very poor. They didn't have enough clothes or food and they were thin. The three friends felt sad. One of them came out of his car and gave some of his gold coins and jewels to the poor people. The second one thought the gold and jewels would not help the poor people so he gave them his food and drinks. The two friends waited for the third friend to go and help. He did not do that. He drove the car and continued the journey. On the way, the third friend thought how he could help those poor people better. Then he had an idea. When they reached the town, he bought farming tools and seeds. When they returned from their journey, the third friend stopped the car and gave the tools and seeds to the poor people. The other two friends were surprised and felt sorry. The poor people used the tools and seeds to farm their land. They grew crops and were happy to find real help.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The main idea of the passage is .....  
 a. helping people                      b. driving cars  
 c. selling jewels                        d. buying food
- The underlined word "They" refers to the .....  
 a. poor people    b. three friends    c. jewels                      d. coins
- The word "reached" means .....  
 a. parked                      b. arrived at                      c. damaged                      d. recycled

#### B. Answer the following questions :

- How do we know that the people of the village were poor ?  
 .....
- What did the second friend give the poor people ?  
 .....
- Do you think the people of the village will be poor on the next days?  
 Why ? Why not ?  
 .....

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I can't phone dad when he is at work, but I can ..... him.  
 a. listen                      b. meet                      c. text                      d. feed

2. We are ..... of the ancient Egyptians. They were great people.  
a. careless      b. messy      c. proud      d. attractive
3. Our teacher ..... her job ten years ago.  
a. start      b. started      c. starts      d. starting
4. Good people ..... well.  
a. damage      b. pump      c. win      d. behave
5. .... exercise is useful for young people and old people as well.  
a. Doing      b. Making      c. Having      d. Getting
6. Hazem ..... up at seven o'clock every morning.  
a. get      b. is getting      c. gets      d. getting
7. .... people communicate with others using sign language.  
a. Deaf      b. Old      c. Healthy      d. Poor
8. My grandfather lives in a ..... house. It has five rooms.  
a. fat      b. little      c. young      d. large
9. While I ..... around the garden, I saw some beautiful flowers.  
a. walk      b. walked      c. was walking      d. is walking
10. I think this woman is a ..... . She is asking people about the way.  
a. patron      b. stranger      c. princess      d. volunteer

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. Elephants walk ..... (lazy).
2. Huda is as ..... (taller) as Maha.
3. You ..... (shouldn't) be careful when you cross a busy street.
4. She ..... (use to) tell us stories when we were young.

**6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to your friend John telling him about your daily routines. Your name is Omar and Your email address is omar@mail.com. Your friend's email address is : john@mail.com.**

From

To

Subject

..... ,

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**20**

**Luxor Governorate**

Luxor Educational Directorate

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

- Fareeda Rashwan is ..... years old.  
a. 32                      b. 33                      c. 23                      d. 22
- Fareeda Rashwan is a/an .....  
a. engineer              b. doctor                  c. teacher                  d. businesswoman
- She donated two ..... pounds to charities in her city.  
a. thousand              b. hundred                  c. million                  d. billion
- She wanted the charities to use the money to help ..... who need it.  
a. people                  b. animals                  c. things                  d. subjects

**2 Complete the following dialogue :**

*Ahmed is asking Samy about his hero.*

**Ahmed :** Who is your hero, Samy ?

**Samy :** (1) .....

**Ahmed :** What was your great – grandfather's job ?

**Samy :** (2) .....

**Ahmed :** Great : (3) .....

**Samy :** He worked in a big hospital in Cairo.

**Ahmed :** (4) .....

**Samy :** Yes, he was a great surgeon.

**Ahmed :** Are you proud of him ?

**Samy :** (5) .....

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions :**

I'm Ali. I live with my family in a small house. It's very beautiful. It has a garden. I like to work in the garden and collect the vegetables which my father plants. My sister doesn't like to work in the garden. She likes to read stories. I give all of the vegetables to mum. She cooks **delicious** food in our small kitchen. I like eating vegetables, but my sister doesn't. My family always has breakfast and dinner together. My sister washes up. At night, dad works on the computer. Mum likes to listen to music. I watch TV and my sister reads. Soon we go to bed.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to .....  
a. food                      b. breakfast                  c. house                      d. computer
- Ali gives all of the vegetables to his .....  
a. dad                      b. mum                      c. sister                      d. brother

3. The underlined word "**delicious**" means .....  
 a. terrible      b. bad      c. horrible      d. nice

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. What does Ali like to do in the garden ?

5. What does Ali's sister prefer to do ?

6. Do you think that Ali's family is happy ?

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- I'm sorry, I can't meet you today. I'm too .....  
 a. free      b. empty      c. busy      d. helpful
- Shady usually ..... up at 6:45.  
 a. get      b. to get      c. getting      d. gets
- Cairo and Alexandria are big .....  
 a. seas      b. countries      c. cities      d. lakes
- We study many ..... at school.  
 a. objects      b. subjects      c. grades      d. jobs
- ..... is the subject for learning about cooking and skills for the home.  
 a. English      b. Home economics  
 c. Religion      d. Science
- You should be ..... when you visit the library.  
 a. fun      b. wonderful      c. quick      d. quiet
- Heba has got ..... hair.  
 a. long      b. tall      c. friendly      d. kind
- He loves nature. He likes ..... the trees and animals.  
 a. watching      b. watches      c. watch      d. is watching
- A ..... is a kind of small computer.  
 a. radio      b. laptop      c. drum      d. tap
- She is ..... an apple now.  
 a. eating      b. eats      c. eaten      d. ate

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

- What did you ..... (ate) for dinner last night ?
- I'm not good at ..... (run). I'm very slow.
- My sister Noha ..... (have got) a big smile.
- This is ..... (mine) school bag.

**6** Write a paragraph of about **NINETY (90)** words on :  
**"Your family"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**21** **Aswan Governorate**

Daraw Educational Directorate

**1** Listen and choose the correct answer from **a, b, c or d** :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

- Cleopatra's Needle is in .....  
 a. New York      b. London      c. Paris      d. Cairo
- It arrived in England in .....  
 a. 1878      b. 1877      c. 1879      d. 1880
- It has a beautiful .....  
 a. view      b. shape      c. form      d. design
- It ..... for Thutmose III.  
 a. is built      b. built      c. was built      d. builds

**2** Complete the following dialogue :

*Ali and Hany are talking about the weekend.*

**Ali** : Hello, Hany. What are you going to do this weekend ?

**Hany** : Hello, Ali. (1) .....

**Ali** : Why are you going to that charity ?

**Hany** : (2) .....

**Ali** : Great! What do you do to help poor people ?

**Hany** : (3) .....

**Ali** : (4) ..... ?

**Hany** : Yes, there are many disabled people.

**Ali** : (5) ..... ?

**Hany** : I go there every weekend.

**3** Read the following, then answer the questions :

Reading is very helpful. It gives us new ideas and improves our language. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place. It is better to wear your reading glasses if it is necessary. You should read different topics. To remember what you read, it is a good idea to have a pen in

your hand to underline or circle the important points. Try to discuss what you have read with your friends. People read for different goals. Some people read for **enjoyment** just to feel happy and spend a nice time. **Others** read for work. Students read for their study or research. All of us read the news and the weather report. We also read messages, emails, and letters that we get.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The word "**Others**" refers to .....  
a. goals      b. people      c. points      d. glasses
2. The underlined word "**enjoyment**" means .....  
a. discussion      b. mysteries      c. sadness      d. pleasure
3. Reading gives us new ideas and improves our .....  
a. language      b. reports      c. research      d. letters

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?  
.....
5. Why do you think you need to read in a quiet place ?  
.....
6. How can you remember what you read ?  
.....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. .... is a game for two people.  
a. Football      b. Handball      c. Chess      d. Volleyball
2. Shady is deaf, but he understands us because we use .....  
a. food stall      b. colors      c. sign language      d. sports
3. The Egyptian player won the gold medal, he's a real .....  
a. teacher      b. junior      c. hero      d. trainer
4. This building became ..... after an earthquake.  
a. statues      b. ruins      c. castles      d. mosques
5. A ..... school is a school where students study and live all the time.  
a. boarding      b. board      c. broad      d. abroad
6. Don't leave your ..... here. You should take it to the nearest bin.  
a. rubbish      b. children      c. tools      d. experiments
7. My favourite school ..... is Arabic.  
a. sport      b. subject      c. day      d. number

## DAYS 5,6&7

8. On Saturdays, I always ..... up at 11 o'clock.  
a. getting      b. gets      c. get      d. got
9. The children ..... with their toys now.  
a. is playing      b. playing      c. are playing      d. play
10. While I was watching TV, I ..... to my sister.  
a. listened      b. was listening      c. listens      d. listening

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The city ..... (know) for its beautiful buildings.
2. Nader doesn't ..... (has) to get up early.
3. My grandmother ..... (use to) work in a hospital in the past.
4. Science is the subject ..... (who) I like most.

### 6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to your friend Hassan to tell him about your "Daily Routines. Your name is Mariam. Your email address is mariam@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is : hassan@gmail.com.

From

To

Subject

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Sample tests for Al-Azhar students

اختبارات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1

Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

Alexandria zone

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... and bowls for making food.  
a. dots      b. pots      c. tables      d. mirrors

2. These objectives were made of .....  
 a. plastic      b. metal      c. clay      d. copper

**2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :**

Ali : Where do you live ?

Tamer : (1) .....

Ali : (2) ..... ?

Tamer : I live with my family.

Ali : (3) ..... ?

Tamer : I go to school by car.

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- We get clean water at home from .....  
 a. tips      b. taps      c. tapes      d. tops
- Boys ..... football on holidays.  
 a. plays usually      b. usually plays  
 c. play usually      d. usually play
- Menna went to the baker's ..... she could get bread.  
 a. who      b. when      c. where      d. which
- Mrs Zynab is very ..... , she never gets nervous.  
 a. patient      b. bad      c. careful      d. ill
- On holiday, we spend much time ..... films and programmes.  
 a. watched      b. watch      c. to watch      d. watching

**4 Read the following, then answer the questions :**

English is an international language. People all over the world speak it. Many people use English in their work. Students need English to get a place at the university. Many subjects are taught in English. Tourism is very important for Egypt because many tourists spend their money here. Lots of tour guides need to learn English well to speak to tourists. Businessmen should speak English well to communicate with other people in different countries. It is better for you to know English well and master computer skills to get a good job.

**A. Answer the following questions :**

1. Where do people speak English ?

.....

2. Why do students need English ?

.....

3. Who do tour guides speak English to ?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

4. You need to learn English to get a ..... job.  
 a. best                      b. well                      c. good                      d. bad
5. The underlined pronoun "it" refer to .....  
 a. people                      b. English                      c. Tourist                      d. Computer

**5 Reorder the following words to form correct sentences :**

1. a museum – the – objects – You – touch – mustn't – in.
2. always – to – donate – Kind – to – poor – the – people – help – charities.
3. is – crowded – Aswan – more – Cairo – than.
4. use – again – things – To – is – recycle – to.

**6 Write a paragraph of 5 sentences about :**

*"Your dream job"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**2**

**Al-Azhar Al-Sharif**

Menoufia Zone

**1 Listen to the text and choose the correct answer :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. My hero is my .....  
 a. father                      b. mother                      c. aunt                      d. grandmother
2. She works in a .....  
 a. school                      b. bank                      c. hospital                      d. charity

**2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :**

**Eman** : The problem is that we all use too much water.

**Dina** : (1) ..... We should do something about that.

**Eman** : Certainly. We could use less water.

**Dina** : That's great. So, (2) ..... ?

**Eman** : Well, why don't we try recycling water ?

**Dina** : (3) .....

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Amira is a clever student. She .....comes to school late.  
a. doesn't      b. isn't      c. didn't      d. never
2. I'm very ..... for all your help.  
a. helpful      b. grateful      c. useful      d. frightened
3. My father used to be fat, but now he ..... thin.  
a. is      b. does      c. doesn't      d. isn't
4. Mirrors were made of metal with interesting ..... on them.  
a. ingredients      b. bowls      c. designs      d. pots
5. The charity ..... my father works for, looks after the sick animals.  
a. when      b. where      c. who      d. which

**4 Read the following passage then answer the questions :**

Reading is a useful and important habit in our life. It gives us the chance to think and dream. It provides us with a lot of information that helps our life better. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place. It is better to wear your reading glasses if it is necessary. To remember what you read it is a good idea to have a pen in your hand to underline or circle the important points. Try to discuss what you read with your friends. People read for different reasons. Some people read for **enjoyment**, just to feel happy and spend a nice time. **Others** read for work. Students read for their study or research. All of us read the news and the weather reports. We also read the messages and the emails that we receive.

**A. Answer the following questions :**

1. Why is reading important and useful ?

.....

2. Why do students read ?

.....

3. How can you remember what you read ?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer :**

4. The word "**Others**" refers to .....  
a. goals      b. people      c. points      d. glasses
5. The underlined word "**enjoyment**" means .....  
a. discussion      b. fun      c. sadness      d. reading

**5 Reorder the following to make correct sentences :**

1. selfie – as – **Heba** – usual – taking – is – a.
2. bowl – mixed – a – in – big – **Mum** – ingredients – the.

3. many – is – by – museum – **The** – visited – tourists.  
 4. should – Magdy Yacoub – **We** – be – of – proud.

**6 Write a paragraph of five 5 sentences on :**

*"A school trip with your friends"*

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

**3 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif**

Beheira zone

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Samira Moussa studied ..... at Cairo University.  
 a. history      b. science      c. engineering      d. history  
 2. Samira Moussa is a/an .....  
 a. scientist      b. doctor      c. engineer      d. surgeon

**2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :**

*Dalia and her father are talking about her school project.*

**Dalia :** Hi Dad, I'm doing a school project about our family history.

Can I ask you some questions ?

**Dad :** Of course, what do you want to know ?

**Dalia :** (1) ..... ?

**Dad :** I used to live in a village in Luxor.

**Dalia :** Oh, I see. Who did you live with ?

**Dad :** (2) ..... .

**Dalia :** What time did you usually get up ?

**Dad :** Very early ! On a school day, I got up about 4.30 a.m. !

**Dalia :** Really ? (3) ..... ?

**Dad :** Because my school was very far from where my parents lived.  
 It took me an hour to get there.

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. I am looking forward to ..... home.  
 a. go      b. going      c. went      d. goes  
 2. A/An ..... is a person who works for no money to help people.  
 a. emergency      b. charity      c. volunteer      d. proud

3. The ed-ending in the verb "helped" sounds like .....  
 a. /d/      b. /id/      c. /f/      d. /t/
4. The city ..... for its beautiful buildings.  
 a. know      b. knows      c. is known      d. knew
5. The books ..... he used to help me were his old school books.  
 a. which      b. who      c. where      d. when

#### 4 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Cities are very busy places. Lots of people live and work in them and there is always lots of traffic and noise. This makes people feel worried and unhappy. When people feel like this, it is a good idea to go outside and experience nature. In Cairo, many people like going to Al-Azhar Park. Here, they walk slowly around the gardens and look at the many fountains and flowers. This makes them calm in the middle of a very big city.

In other parts of Egypt, people can experience nature in many different ways. This is Lamia and she lives in Aswan. Today, she is sailing happily on the river with her father on a felucca. She likes doing this because she likes the different birds that she can see, like herons and geese. We all feel good when we go outside.

#### A. Answer the following questions :

1. Why do some people feel worried and unhappy in cities ?

.....

2. What is the name of the park that is mentioned in the text ?

.....

3. Where does Lamia live ?

.....

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. People feel ..... after visiting Al-Azhar Park.  
 a. worried      b. calm      c. unhappy      d. busy
5. There is a lot of traffic and noise in the .....  
 a. Al-Azhar Park      b. deserts      c. river      d. cities

#### 5 Reorder the following words to form correct sentences :

1. watches – in – TV – Mariam – bed – often.
2. hope – I – better – he'll – soon – be.
3. mustn't – the objects – touch – You – the museum – in.
4. did – Where – World Cup Final – win – the – they ?

**6 Write a paragraph of five 5 sentences on :**

*"What you and your family usually do on holidays"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**4 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif**

Fayoum zone

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

- Dr. Magdy Yacoub is a .....  
 a. dentist      b. surgeon      c. vet      d. teacher
- He became a doctor like his .....  
 a. mother      b. uncle      c. brother      d. father

**2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :**

**Omar :** Hello, Ramy. How are you ?

**Ramy :** Hello, Omar. (1) .....

**Omar :** When (2) ..... ?

**Ramy :** I get up early at 6:30 am.

**Omar :** What's your favourite sport ?

**Ramy :** (3) .....

**Omar :** I also like football.

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- A lot of Muslims go to ..... to pray.  
 a. churches      b. castles      c. mosques      d. markets
- Eiffel Tower is ..... than Cairo Tower.  
 a. taller      b. tall      c. as tall      d. tallest
- You ..... eat or drink in a museum.  
 a. can      b. must      c. mustn't      d. should
- A ..... is the daughter of a king or queen.  
 a. prince      b. beggar      c. farmer      d. princess
- While he was ....., he fell down.  
 a. run      b. ran      c. runs      d. running

**4 Read the following passage then answer the questions :**

Ahmed and Soha were in the dinning room and their parents were at work. They were doing their homework. They thought their sister Salma was playing with her toys. Soha saw some water. It was coming through the floor. Ahmed and Soha went to the bathroom, they found Salma. She was playing with her toys. There was a lot of water on the bathroom floor and it was running into the dining room. They talked about the water and decided to dry the floor. They used some of their father's old newspapers. They decided to phone their mother and father and tell them about the water.

**A. Answer the following questions :**

1. Where was Salma playing with her toys ?

.....

2. How did Ahmed and Soha dry the floor ?

.....

3. How many persons are there in the family ?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the .....

- a. floor                      b. vapour                      c. dining room                      d. water

5. While Ahmed and Soha were in the dining room, their parents were at .....

- a. school                      b. home                      c. work                      d. bedroom

**5 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences :**

1. your – Who – hero – is ?

2. taller – Amr – is – me – than.

3. hard – study – to get – You – marks – should – high.

4. used to – tennis – My grandfather – play.

**6 Write a paragraph not less than FIVE sentences about :**

*"Your day at school"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## An Exam for Inclusive Students

اختبار لطلاب الدمج

**Cairo Governorate**

West Cairo Directorate

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

**Interviewer** : Now, you're looking for a job here, aren't you ?

**Sandy** : Yes, I'm.

**Interviewer** : (1) .....

- a. When did you leave school ?
- b. Where did you go to school ?
- c. When do you leave school ?
- d. Where do you go to school ?

**Sandy** : I left school last year.

**Interviewer** : How many languages can you speak ?

**Sandy** : (2) .....

- a. I can run.
- b. I can speak three languages.
- c. I can do karate.
- d. I can ride a bike.

**Interviewer** : All right. Do you have any work experience ?

**Sandy** : Well. After I left school, (3) .....

- a. I slept early.
- b. I live in Helwan.
- c. I worked in a restaurant.
- d. I like Arabic.

**Interviewer** : (3) .....

- a. Where did you live ?
- b. Where do you go ?
- c. Where did you go ?
- d. Where do you live ?

**Sandy** : I live in Helwan.

**Interviewer** : Well. I think you can get the job.

**Sandy** : Thank you.

**Interviewer** : Do you like hard work ?

**Sandy** : (4) .....

- a. Yes, I did.
- b. Yes, I can.
- c. Yes, I have.
- d. Yes, I do.

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Our life is going **fast** now because of the latest technology. A lot of people do their businesses online. Others use smartphones. They communicate with each other using social media. Technology helps us get information easily. You can find out about the latest technology online. It's important to learn about the latest developments. I love

technology. My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play **them** on my laptop but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone. I'd like to spend all day playing video games, but I have to go to school. My favourite lesson is computer studies. At break, I look at websites for new video games.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- The text is mainly about .....  
a. sports      b. healthy food      c. technology      d. fast food
- The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to .....  
a. video games      b. businesses      c. phones      d. websites
- Technology helps us get .....  
a. married      b. food      c. lost      d. information
- The writer spends all day playing .....  
a. chess      b. video games      c. squash      d. tennis
- The writer's favourite subject is .....  
a. science      b. computer studies  
c. P.E      d. art
- The underlined word "**fast**" here means .....  
a. fat      b. quickly      c. slow      d. wide

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- Look! The birds ..... in the sky.  
a. flies      b. fly      c. is flying      d. are flying
- Noha plays the piano .....  
a. good      b. bad      c. well      d. sad
- While ....., I fell down.  
a. running      b. ran      c. runs      d. run
- Rice is ..... by farmers.  
a. grow      b. grown      c. grew      d. grows
- You ..... touch the statues in the museum.  
a. must      b. could      c. should      d. mustn't

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- There's a brown ..... on the floor in our living room.  
a. card      b. carpet      c. curtain      d. drawer
- Sama always tidies ..... the kitchen after cooking.  
a. off      b. down      c. away      d. up
- A/An ..... is a model of a person.  
a. figure      b. mask      c. necklace      d. arch

DAYS **5,6&7**

4. Which sport do you like to ..... ?  
 a. do                      b. make                      c. stay                      d. be
5. If there is a problem with your computer system, you can call  
 a .....  
 a. doctor                      b. computer engineer  
 c. shop worker                      d. nurse
6. .... causes bad fires in Australia.  
 a. Flood                      b. Drought                      c. Earthquake                      d. Cold
7. The nurse is a ..... She saves a lot of people.  
 a. hero                      b. beggar                      c. manager                      d. servant
8. The ..... pumps blood around the body.  
 a. liver                      b. lung                      c. heart                      d. brain

**5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d :**

- a. We arrived there in the morning. Yesterday, we went to the museum. We went back home in the evening. We bought tickets and saw statues.
- b. We went back home in the evening. We bought tickets and saw statues. We arrived there in the morning. Yesterday, we went to the museum.
- c. Yesterday, we went to the museum. We went back home in the evening. We bought tickets and saw statues. We arrived there in the morning.
- d. Yesterday, we went to the museum. We arrived there in the morning. We bought tickets and saw statues. We went back home in the evening.

# Listening Texts

## نصوص استماع

### Listening (Day 1):

- A.** Omar was born in 1994. When he was 22, a shark attacked him and he lost his leg. Now, Omar is an important coach.
- B.** Dr Magdy Yacoub was born in Egypt. He helps people with heart problems. He stopped his work as a surgeon a long time ago. He opened a new hospital in Aswan.

#### Accumulative Tests

### Units 1, 2 & 3:

Last Friday, Samy visited Al-Azhar Park. He went by bus. He went there with his friends. They walked slowly around the garden. They had a nice day.

### Units 4, 5 & 6:

Port Said is located in the north-east of Egypt. It is known for its ships. Ships come and go from around the world. Many fish are caught in the sea near the Suez Canal.

#### End of Term Practice

**Speaker:** Aya is 13 and lives in a village in India. Her father is a street-food seller and her mother is a shop worker. They have to work every day, so Aya must stay at home to look after her younger brothers and sisters.

Aya goes to school in the evening. Aya always feels very tired when she gets home, but she is grateful for being able to learn.

**1**

#### Cairo Governorate

El Maadi Educational Directorate

I'm Mona. I'm fourteen years old. I always get up at 6:30 in the morning. I go to school by bus with my friend, Dalia. My parents work at the hospital. In the evening, I do my homework.

**2**

#### Giza Governorate

Zayed Educational Directorate

My hero is Omar Abdelkader. He was born in 1994. When Omar was 22, a shark attacked him and he lost a leg. Now he helps other people with similar problems and he is an important coach.

**3**

#### Alexandria Governorate

Burj Al Arab Educational Directorate

On Friday, Tamer went to Al-Azhar Park. On the way, he saw a street-food seller. The food was delicious. He went home at 5 o'clock.

**4**

#### Qalyoubia Governorate

East Shoubra El-Kheima Educational Directorate

I am Mustafa. I've got lots of books, and I like to sit and read in the big armchair. I keep some clothes in the chest of drawers. I have a basin in my room, where I can wash my hands before I eat.

**5**

#### Sharkia Governorate

Diarb Nigm Educational Directorate

Dr. Magdy Yacoub was born in Egypt. He helps people with heart problems. He stopped his work as a surgeon a long time ago. He opened a new hospital in Aswan.

**6 Menofia Governorate**

Menouf Educational Directorate

Samir works for a charity. The charity looks after animals. The animals that are old or sick cannot work anymore. People donate money to buy food for animals and look after them.

**7 Gharbia Governorate**

Samanoud Educational Directorate

Today, I'm going on a ride. The weather is very hot today. So, I have to wear a hat and my sunglasses. I can see many cars in the streets.

**8 Dakahlia Governorate**

East Mansoura Educational Directorate

Aya was born in Minya. Minya is a nice city near the Nile. Minya is famous for black honey. Cotton and sugarcane are grown in Minya.

**9 Beheira Governorate**

Damanhour Educational Directorate

The Ancient Egyptian doctors helped people with burns. They understood that the heart pumps blood around the body. They used some plants to stop infections. These plants are still used today. They also knew how to mend broken bones and sew cuts.

**10 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate**

Desouk Educational Directorate

The Egyptian handball team are heroes. They won the handball Africa Cup of Nations in 2020. The final match was against Tunisia. Our team scored 27 goals.

**11 Damietta Governorate**

Kafr Saad Educational Directorate

I'm Malek. My father had a new job, so we moved to a new town. I went to a new school and had new friends. I'm going on the school trip to Cairo to visit amazing places.

**12 Port Said Governorate**

Port Said Educational Directorate

Ali thinks that the girl who came into his baker's shop was a servant because she didn't have very new clothes. The money that she had was enough to buy a few cakes. I often see a beggar in the street where I work. He usually asks for money, but when the young girl left my shop, she gave him most of her cakes! I was very surprised. I feel that this servant girl behaved like a princess.

**13 Ismailia Governorate**

Ismailia Educational Directorate

Tanta is located in the north of Egypt. The city is known for its delicious sweets. Lots of cotton is grown in the area.

**14 Fayoum Governorate**

Al-Sideeq Educational Directorate

Mr Othman is our neighbour. He helped me pass my English exams. He was a teacher at a preparatory school. He used his old school books to help me.

**15 Beni Suef Governorate**

El Fashn Educational Directorate

My name is Noha. I like my bedroom. When I open the curtains, there is always lots of sunlight in the room. In front of the bed, I have a big

wardrobe. I don't have a basin in my room because the bathroom is next to the room.

### 16 Minya Governorate

Abu Kurkas Educational Directorate

On Friday, Nabil and his family went to Al Azhar Park. They saw a street - food seller. The food was delicious. They went home at 7 o'clock.

### 17 Assiut Governorate

Sahel Selim Educational Directorate

Salma is thirteen years old. Her favourite subject is English. She goes to a preparatory school. She likes tennis.

### 18 Sohag Governorate

Juhainah Educational Directorate

Ali is a teacher. He works in a big school. He goes to work by car. He has three children. He is kind and helpful.

### 19 Qena Governorate

Qeft Educational Directorate

Kareem is thirteen years old. He likes visiting historical places. His favourite hobby is reading. Kareem's friends are brave.

### 20 Luxor Governorate

Luxor Educational Directorate

Fareeda Rashwan is 32 years old. She is a businesswoman. She donated two million pounds to charities in her city to help people who need it. She is very kind and helpful.

### 21 Aswan Governorate

Daraw Educational Directorate

Cleopatra's Needle is in London. It arrived in England in 1878. It has a beautiful design. It was built for Thutmose III.

### Sample tests for Al-Azhar students

#### 1. Alexandria Zone :

The Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food. Pots were made of clay. Clay was taken from the River Nile. The Ancient Egyptians were very clever.

#### 2. Menoufia Zone :

My mother is my hero. She is a nurse. She works in a big hospital. She looks after sick children. She is also a good cook. She makes delicious food. She always helps me do my homework.

#### 3. Beheira Zone :

Samira Moussa was born in 1917 and studied science at Cairo University. She was Egypt's first female nuclear scientist.

#### 4. Fayoum Zone :

Dr. Magdy Yacoub was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but the family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy became an important heart surgeon.